
MS320 for Windows

2.00.121

MiniSoft, Inc.
1024 First street
Snohomish, WA 98290
U.S.A.

MiniSoft Marketing AG
Papiermuhleweg 1
Postfach 107
Ch-6048 Horw
Switzerland

1-800-682-0200
360-568-6602
Fax: 360-568-2923

Phone: +41-41-340 23 20
Fax: +41-41-340 38 66
CompuServe: 100046,450
minisoftag@centralnet.ch

Internet access:

sales@minisoft.com
support@minisoft.com
<http://www.minisoft.com>
<ftp://ftp.minisoft.com>

Disclaimer

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

MiniSoft, Inc. makes no warranty of any kind with regard to this material, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. MiniSoft, Inc. or its agents shall not be liable for errors contained herein or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishings, performance, or use of this material.

This document contains proprietary information which is protected by copyright. All rights are reserved. No part of this document may be photocopied, reproduced, or translated to another programming language without the prior written consent of MiniSoft, Inc.

©1991 by MiniSoft, Inc.

© DCSi

All product names and services identified in this document are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies and are used throughout this document in editorial fashion only and are not intended to convey an endorsement or other affiliation with MiniSoft, Inc.

License Agreement

In return for payment of a onetime fee for this software product, the Customer receives from MiniSoft, Inc. a license to use the product subject to the following terms and conditions:

- The product may be used on one computer system at a time: i.e., its use is not limited to a particular machine or user but to one machine at a time.
- The software may be copied for archive purposes, program error verification, or to replace defective media. All copies must bear copyright notices contained in the original copy.
- The software may not be installed on a network server for access by more than one personal computer without written permission from MiniSoft, Inc.

Purchase of this license does not transfer any right, title, or interest in the software product to the Customer except as specifically set forth in the License Agreement, and Customer is on notice that the software product is protected under the copyright laws.

90-Day Limited Warranty

MiniSoft, Inc. warrants that this product will execute its programming instructions when properly installed on a properly configured personal computer for which it is intended. MiniSoft, Inc. does not warrant that the operation of the software will be uninterrupted or error free. In the event that this software product fails to execute its programming instructions, Customer's exclusive remedy shall be to return the product to MiniSoft, Inc. to obtain replacement. Should MiniSoft, Inc. be unable to replace the product within a reasonable amount of time, Customer shall be entitled to a refund of the purchase price upon the return of the product and all copies. MiniSoft, Inc. warrants the medium upon which this product is recorded to be free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use for a period of 90 days from the date of purchase. During the warranty period MiniSoft, Inc. will replace media which prove to be defective. Customer's exclusive remedy for any media which proves to be defective shall be to return the media to MiniSoft, Inc. for replacement.

ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS IS LIMITED TO THE 90-DAY DURATION OF THIS WRITTEN WARRANTY. Some states or provinces do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state or province to province.

LIMITATION OF WARRANTY: MiniSoft, Inc. makes no other warranty expressed or implied with respect to this product. MiniSoft, Inc. specifically disclaims the implied warranty of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose.

EXCLUSIVE REMEDIES: The remedies herein are Customer's sole and exclusive remedies. In no event shall MiniSoft, Inc. be liable for any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages, whether based on contract, tort, or any other legal theory.



TABLE OF CONTENTS

| | | |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| CHAPTER 1 | INTRODUCTION | 11 |
| | 1.1 DOCUMENTATION LAYOUT | 12 |
| | 1.1.1 Notation | 13 |
| | 1.1.2 Examples | 13 |
| | 1.1.3 Emulator Commands | 13 |
| | 1.2 EMULATOR AND VT320 FUNCTION KEYS | 14 |
| | 1.3 APPLICATION WINDOW | 15 |
| | 1.4 LINE RECALL AND EDITING | 16 |
| | 1.4.1 Command Line Editing | 16 |
| CHAPTER 2 | GETTING STARTED | 17 |
| | 2.1 PACKAGE CONTENTS | 18 |
| | 2.2 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS | 18 |
| | 2.3 REGISTRATION | 18 |
| | 2.4 INSTALLATION | 18 |
| | 2.4.1 Creating an Icon | 19 |
| | 2.5 Emulator Application Window | 19 |
| | 2.6 CONNECTING | 20 |
| | 2.6.1 Connections | 20 |
| | 2.6.2 Session Manager | 21 |
| | 2.6.2.1 Creating Sessions | 23 |
| | 2.6.2.2 Copying Sessions | 24 |
| | 2.6.2.3 Deleting Sessions | 24 |
| | 2.6.2.4 Switching Sessions | 25 |
| | 2.6.2.5 Exiting Sessions Remotely | 25 |
| | 2.6.3 Windows Sockets | 26 |
| | 2.6.3.1 Windows Sockets Setup | 27 |
| | 2.6.3.2 Edit Node List | 28 |

| | | |
|---------|----------------------------------|----|
| 2.6.4 | Modem (TAPI) | 29 |
| 2.6.4.1 | Edit Phone List | 30 |
| 2.6.5 | Poly/LAT-32 | 31 |
| 2.6.6 | Serial | 32 |
| 2.6.6.1 | Serial Setup | 33 |
| 2.7 | WINDOW SIZING AND LOCATION | 34 |
| 2.7.1 | Number of Emulation Lines | 34 |
| 2.7.2 | Maximize Workspace | 35 |
| 2.8 | SCREEN SCROLLBACK | 35 |
| 2.9 | VIDEO ATTRIBUTE TO COLOR MAPPING | 35 |
| 2.10 | CHARACTER SETS | 36 |
| 2.11 | PRINTER SUPPORT | 36 |
| 2.12 | COMPOSE CHARACTERS | 37 |
| 2.13 | COMMON PROBLEMS | 39 |
| 2.14 | TECHNICAL SUPPORT | 40 |

CHAPTER 3 DROP DOWN MENUS 41

| | | |
|---------|-----------------------------|----|
| 3.1 | EDIT | 42 |
| 3.1.1 | Copy | 42 |
| 3.1.2 | Paste | 42 |
| 3.1.3 | Send | 42 |
| 3.1.4 | Select All | 42 |
| 3.1.5 | Select Screen | 42 |
| 3.2 | EXECUTE | 43 |
| 3.2.1 | Abort | 43 |
| 3.2.2 | Break (short) | 43 |
| 3.2.3 | Break (long) | 43 |
| 3.2.4 | Command Line | 43 |
| 3.2.5 | Clear Communications | 43 |
| 3.2.6 | DDE Command Builder | 43 |
| 3.2.7 | Drop DTR | 43 |
| 3.2.8 | Reset | 44 |
| 3.2.9 | Send Answerback | 44 |
| 3.2.10 | WordPerfect 5.x Mode | 44 |
| 3.3 | FILE | 44 |
| 3.3.1 | Edit Command File Selection | 45 |
| 3.3.2 | Run Command File Selection | 46 |
| 3.3.3 | Capture Text to File | 47 |
| 3.3.4 | Record Log File Selection | 48 |
| 3.3.5 | Replay Log File Selection | 49 |
| 3.3.6 | Receive | 49 |
| 3.3.7 | Send | 49 |
| 3.3.8 | Print | 50 |
| 3.3.9 | Page Setup | 51 |
| 3.3.9.1 | Page Setup Options | 52 |
| 3.3.10 | Exit | 53 |
| 3.4 | HELP | 54 |
| 3.4.1 | Index | 54 |
| 3.4.2 | Using Help | 54 |
| 3.4.3 | About | 54 |
| 3.4.3.1 | General | 54 |
| 3.4.3.2 | Version | 55 |
| 3.5 | SETUP | 55 |

| | | |
|-----------|---|----|
| 3.5.1 | Customizable Toolbars | 56 |
| 3.5.2 | Keyboard Mapper | 56 |
| 3.5.3 | Mouse Mapper | 56 |
| 3.5.4 | File Transfer | 56 |
| 3.5.5 | General | 56 |
| 3.5.5.1 | DDE | 56 |
| 3.5.5.2 | Directories | 57 |
| 3.5.5.3 | Log File Replay | 58 |
| 3.5.6 | Terminal Setup | 59 |
| 3.5.6.1 | Display | 59 |
| 3.5.6.1.1 | Color Setup | 61 |
| 3.5.6.2 | Keyboard | 62 |
| 3.5.6.2.1 | Default Enhanced Keyboard Key Assignments | 64 |
| 3.5.6.2.2 | Default AT Keyboard Key Assignments | 66 |
| 3.5.6.3 | Terminal Tabs | 68 |
| 3.5.6.3.1 | Terminal Tab Options | 69 |
| 3.6 | VIEW | 71 |
| 3.6.1 | Menu | 71 |
| 3.6.2 | Status Line | 71 |
| 3.6.3 | Centered | 71 |
| 3.6.4 | Framed | 71 |
| 3.6.5 | Maximize Workspace | 71 |
| 3.6.6 | Scrollbar | 71 |
| 3.6.7 | File Transfer Messages | 71 |
| 3.6.8 | Message History | 72 |
| 3.6.9 | Toolbars | 72 |
| 3.6.9.1 | Default Toolbar Descriptions | 73 |

CHAPTER 4 KEYBOARD, MOUSE & TOOLBAR 75

| | | |
|---------|--------------------------------------|----|
| 4.1 | KEYBOARD MAPPING | 76 |
| 4.1.1 | Creating a New Key Map | 77 |
| 4.1.2 | Defining a Key | 78 |
| 4.1.3 | Changing a Key Definition | 81 |
| 4.1.4 | Deleting a Key Definition | 81 |
| 4.2 | MOUSE MAPPING | 82 |
| 4.2.1 | Creating a New Mouse Map | 83 |
| 4.2.2 | Defining a Mouse Button | 84 |
| 4.2.3 | Changing a Mouse Button Definition | 88 |
| 4.2.4 | Deleting a Mouse Button Definition | 88 |
| 4.3 | CUSTOMIZE TOOLBARS | 89 |
| 4.3.1 | Creating a New Toolbar | 89 |
| 4.3.2 | Properties Tab | 89 |
| 4.3.3 | Buttons Tab | 91 |
| 4.3.4 | Button Editor Tab | 92 |
| 4.3.4.1 | Defining a Toolbar Button | 94 |
| 4.3.4.2 | Changing a Toolbar Button Definition | 97 |
| 4.3.4.3 | Deleting a Toolbar Button Definition | 97 |
| 4.3.4.4 | Renaming a Toolbar Button Definition | 97 |

| | | |
|------------------|---|------------|
| CHAPTER 5 | EXTENDED FEATURES | 99 |
| 5.1 | LOG FILES | 100 |
| 5.1.1 | Record Log File | 100 |
| 5.1.2 | Replay Log File | 101 |
| 5.1.2.1 | Keyboard Instructions | 101 |
| 5.1.3 | Replay Options | 101 |
| 5.1.3.1 | Replay Rate | 102 |
| 5.1.3.2 | Pause on Clear Screen | 102 |
| 5.1.3.3 | Pause on Every Page | 102 |
| 5.1.3.4 | Pause on Text | 102 |
| 5.1.4 | Replay Pauses | 102 |
| 5.1.5 | Programming Considerations | 102 |
| 5.1.5.1 | Menu Driven Applications | 102 |
| 5.2 | ONLINE HELP | 103 |
| 5.3 | WORDPERFECT MODE | 103 |
| 5.3.1 | Entering WordPerfect Mode | 103 |
| 5.3.2 | Terminating WordPerfect Mode | 103 |
| 5.3.3 | Operation of WordPerfect Mode | 103 |
| 5.3.4 | WordPerfect Mode - Transmit Codes | 104 |
| | | |
| CHAPTER 6 | FILE TRANSFER | 105 |
| 6.1 | FILE TRANSFER SETUP | 106 |
| 6.1.1 | Common Setup | 107 |
| 6.1.2 | Kermit Protocol Setup | 107 |
| 6.1.3 | XMODEM Protocol Setup | 109 |
| 6.1.4 | YMODEM Protocol Setup | 109 |
| 6.1.5 | ZMODEM Protocol Setup | 110 |
| 6.1.6 | ASCII Protocol Setup | 111 |
| 6.1.6.1 | Additional Information | 112 |
| 6.1.7 | Auto Command Mode Setup | 113 |
| 6.1.7.1 | ASCII Protocol - Additional Information | 114 |
| 6.1.7.1.1 | Send Command Strings | 114 |
| 6.1.7.1.2 | Receive Command Strings | 115 |
| 6.2 | PERFORMING FILE TRANSFERS | 115 |
| 6.2.1 | File Transfer Directory | 115 |
| 6.2.2 | Sending Files | 116 |
| 6.2.2.1 | Kermit Transfers - Additional Information | 118 |
| 6.2.2.2 | Kermit File Formats | 119 |
| 6.2.2.3 | ZMODEM Transfers - Additional Information | 119 |
| 6.2.3 | Receiving Files | 119 |
| 6.2.3.1 | Kermit Transfers - Additional Information | 122 |
| 6.2.3.2 | Kermit File Formats | 122 |
| 6.2.3.3 | ZMODEM Transfers - Additional Information | 122 |
| 6.2.4 | File Transfers Using the Command Line | 123 |
| 6.2.5 | Emulator Kermit Commands | 123 |
| 6.2.6 | Transferring Files Using Kermit | 123 |
| 6.2.6.1 | Send/Server Mode | 123 |
| 6.2.6.2 | Send/Non-Server Mode | 123 |
| 6.2.6.3 | Receive/Server Mode | 124 |
| 6.2.6.4 | Receive/Non-Server Mode | 124 |
| 6.2.6.5 | Send File Examples | 124 |
| 6.2.6.6 | Receive File Examples | 125 |
| 6.2.6.7 | Aborting Transfers | 126 |

| | | |
|------------------|--|------------|
| CHAPTER 7 | COMMAND LANGUAGE | 127 |
| 7.1 | COMMAND SYNTAX | 128 |
| 7.2 | COMMAND EXECUTION | 128 |
| 7.2.1 | Command Line Execution | 128 |
| 7.2.1.1 | Entering Multiple Commands | 129 |
| 7.2.2 | Executing from the Host | 129 |
| 7.3 | COMMAND FILES | 129 |
| 7.3.1 | Specifying a Command File | 129 |
| 7.3.2 | Default Command File | 130 |
| 7.3.3 | Command Line Execution | 130 |
| 7.3.4 | Executing from the Host | 130 |
| 7.3.5 | Nested Command Files | 130 |
| 7.3.6 | Comments | 131 |
| 7.4 | ABORTING COMMANDS | 131 |
| 7.5 | EMULATOR COMMAND LIST | 132 |
| 7.5.1 | Emulator Command Descriptions | 134 |
| | | |
| CHAPTER 8 | COMMAND FILE PROGRAMMING | 175 |
| 8.1 | DOCUMENTING COMMAND FILES | 176 |
| 8.2 | PASSING PARAMETERS | 176 |
| 8.3 | SYMBOLS | 177 |
| 8.3.1 | Symbol Types | 177 |
| 8.3.1.1 | Permanent Global Symbols | 177 |
| 8.3.2 | Assigning Symbol Values | 178 |
| 8.3.2.1 | Implied String Assignments | 178 |
| 8.4 | LABELS | 179 |
| 8.5 | EXPRESSION EVALUATION | 180 |
| 8.5.1 | String to Integer Conversion | 180 |
| 8.5.2 | String Expressions | 180 |
| 8.5.3 | Integer Expressions | 181 |
| 8.5.4 | Expression Substitution | 181 |
| 8.6 | OPERATORS IN EXPRESSIONS | 182 |
| 8.6.1 | String Operations | 183 |
| 8.6.2 | Arithmetic Operations | 183 |
| 8.6.3 | Logical Operations | 184 |
| 8.6.4 | String Comparisons | 184 |
| 8.6.5 | Arithmetic Comparisons | 185 |
| 8.6.6 | Radix Operators | 185 |
| 8.7 | SPECIAL CHARACTERS | 186 |
| 8.7.1 | Input Conversion | 186 |
| 8.7.2 | Output Conversion | 187 |
| 8.8 | FOREIGN COMMANDS | 188 |
| 8.9 | LEXICALS | 189 |
| 8.10 | DISPLAY LEXICALS | 192 |
| 8.11 | SYMLEXES | 193 |
| 8.11.1 | Defining a Symlex | 193 |
| 8.12 | SYMBOL AND LEXICAL SUBSTITUTION | 195 |
| 8.12.1 | Automatic Symbol Substitution | 195 |
| 8.12.2 | Substitution Using Apostrophes | 195 |
| 8.12.3 | Substitution Using Ampersands | 196 |
| 8.12.4 | Three Phases of Symbol Substitution | 197 |
| 8.12.4.1 | Iterative Substitution Using Apostrophes | 198 |

| | | |
|----------|---|-----|
| 8.12.4.2 | Iterative Substitution Using Command Synonyms | 198 |
| 8.12.4.3 | Iterative Substitution in Expressions | 199 |
| 8.12.4.4 | Substitution of Undefined Symbols | 199 |
| 8.13 | ERROR FACILITY | 200 |
| 8.13.1 | \$STATUS Conditional Codes | 201 |
| 8.13.2 | DOS ERROR LEVEL | 203 |
| 8.13.3 | Messages | 203 |

CHAPTER 9 VT320 PROGRAMMING 207

| | | |
|----------|--------------------------------------|-----|
| 9.1 | QUICK REFERENCE TABLES | 208 |
| 9.1.1 | Character Sets | 208 |
| 9.1.2 | Transmitted Codes | 209 |
| 9.1.3 | Received Codes | 211 |
| 9.1.3.1 | VT320 Control Sequences | 211 |
| 9.1.3.2 | VT100 Escape Sequences | 215 |
| 9.1.3.3 | VT52 Escape Sequences | 217 |
| 9.1.4 | Reports | 218 |
| 9.1.4.1 | VT320 Reports | 218 |
| 9.1.4.2 | VT100 Reports | 221 |
| 9.2 | CHARACTER ENCODING | 222 |
| 9.2.1 | 7-Bit ASCII Codes | 223 |
| 9.2.2 | 8-Bit ASCII Codes | 224 |
| 9.2.3 | Control Functions | 226 |
| 9.2.3.1 | Control Sequences | 226 |
| 9.2.3.2 | Escape Sequences | 226 |
| 9.2.3.3 | Device Control Strings | 227 |
| 9.3 | CHARACTER SETS | 227 |
| 9.3.1 | DEC Multinational | 228 |
| 9.3.2 | ISO Latin-1 | 230 |
| 9.3.3 | DEC Special Graphics | 231 |
| 9.3.4 | National Replacement Character | 232 |
| 9.3.5 | Character Set Selection | 232 |
| 9.3.6 | Mapping Character Sets | 234 |
| 9.4 | TRANSMITTED CODES | 236 |
| 9.4.1 | Main Keypad | 236 |
| 9.4.1.1 | Standard Keys | 236 |
| 9.4.2 | Editing Keypad | 236 |
| 9.4.3 | Auxiliary Keypad | 237 |
| 9.4.4 | Top Row Function Keys | 238 |
| 9.4.5 | Control Codes | 239 |
| 9.5 | RECEIVED CODES | 240 |
| 9.5.1 | Character Rendition and Attributes | 240 |
| 9.5.1.1 | Select Graphic Rendition | 240 |
| 9.5.1.2 | Select Attributes | 241 |
| 9.5.2 | Compatibility Level | 241 |
| 9.5.3 | Control Characters | 244 |
| 9.5.4 | Cursor Positioning | 245 |
| 9.5.5 | Editing | 246 |
| 9.5.6 | Erasing | 246 |
| 9.5.7 | Line Attributes | 247 |
| 9.5.8 | Printing | 247 |
| 9.5.9 | Scrolling Region | 247 |
| 9.5.10 | Select C1 Controls | 248 |
| 9.5.10.1 | Select 7-bit C1 Transmission (S7C1T) | 248 |

| | | |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|-----|
| 9.5.10.2 | Select 8-bit C1 Transmission (S8C1T) | 248 |
| 9.5.11 | Tab Stops | 248 |
| 9.5.12 | Terminal Modes | 248 |
| 9.5.12.1 | Reset Mode (RM) | 249 |
| 9.5.12.2 | Set Mode (SM) | 249 |
| 9.5.12.3 | ANSI/VT52 Mode (DECANM) | 250 |
| 9.5.12.4 | Auto Repeat Mode (DECARM) | 250 |
| 9.5.12.5 | Auto Wrap Mode (DECAWM) | 251 |
| 9.5.12.6 | Backarrow Key Mode (DECBKM) | 251 |
| 9.5.12.7 | Character Set Mode (DECNRCM) | 251 |
| 9.5.12.8 | Column Mode (DECCOLM) | 251 |
| 9.5.12.9 | Cursor Key Mode (DECCKM) | 252 |
| 9.5.12.10 | Insert/Replace Mode (IRM) | 252 |
| 9.5.12.11 | Keyboard Action Mode (KAM) | 252 |
| 9.5.12.12 | Keypad Mode (DECKPAM/DECKPNM) | 252 |
| 9.5.12.13 | Line Feed/New Line Mode (LNM) | 253 |
| 9.5.12.14 | Numeric Keypad Mode (DECNKM) | 253 |
| 9.5.12.15 | Origin Mode (DECOM) | 253 |
| 9.5.12.16 | Print Extent Mode (DECPEX) | 253 |
| 9.5.12.17 | Print Form Feed Mode (DECPFF) | 254 |
| 9.5.12.18 | Screen Mode (DECSCNM) | 254 |
| 9.5.12.19 | Scrolling Mode (DECSCLM) | 254 |
| 9.5.12.20 | Select Status Display (DECSASD) | 254 |
| 9.5.12.21 | Select Status Line Type (DECSSDT) | 255 |
| 9.5.12.22 | Send/Receive Mode (SRM) | 255 |
| 9.5.12.23 | Text Cursor Enable Mode (DECTCEM) | 256 |
| 9.5.13 | Terminal Reset Mode | 256 |
| 9.5.13.1 | Soft Terminal Reset | 256 |
| 9.5.13.2 | Hard Terminal Reset | 256 |
| 9.5.14 | Programming User Defined Keys (UDKs) | 257 |
| 9.5.14.1 | DECUDK DCS Format | 257 |
| 9.5.14.2 | Guidelines for Loading Keys | 258 |
| 9.5.14.3 | Examples for Using DECUDK | 258 |
| 9.5.15 | DCS Private Control Sequences | 259 |
| 9.5.15.1 | Example - DCS Private Sequence | 259 |
| 9.6 | REPORTS | 260 |
| 9.6.1 | Device Attributes | 260 |
| 9.6.1.1 | Primary Device Attributes | 260 |
| 9.6.1.2 | Secondary Device Attributes | 261 |
| 9.6.2 | Device Status Reports | 261 |
| 9.6.2.1 | Cursor Position | 261 |
| 9.6.2.2 | Keyboard Dialect | 261 |
| 9.6.2.3 | Operating Status | 261 |
| 9.6.2.4 | Printer Status | 262 |
| 9.6.2.5 | User-Defined Key (UDK) Status | 262 |
| 9.6.3 | Terminal State Reports | 263 |
| 9.6.3.1 | Restore Terminal State | 263 |
| 9.6.4 | Presentation State Reports | 264 |
| 9.6.4.1 | Request Presentation State Report | 264 |
| 9.6.4.2 | Cursor Information | 264 |
| 9.6.4.3 | Tab Stop Report | 267 |
| 9.6.4.4 | Restore Presentation State | 267 |
| 9.6.5 | Mode Settings | 267 |
| 9.6.5.1 | Request Mode | 268 |
| 9.6.5.2 | Report Mode | 269 |

| | | |
|-------------------|---|------------|
| 9.6.5.3 | Set Mode | 270 |
| 9.6.5.4 | Reset Mode | 270 |
| 9.6.6 | Save and Restore Cursor State | 271 |
| 9.6.7 | Control Function Settings | 271 |
| 9.6.8 | User-Preferred Supplemental Set | 272 |
| APPENDIX A | CABLING DIAGRAMS | 273 |
| APPENDIX B | ASCII CONTROL CODE TABLE | 275 |
| APPENDIX C | ANSI COLOR SUPPORT | 277 |
| APPENDIX D | DYNAMIC DATA EXCHANGE | 281 |
| D.1 | USING DDE | 282 |
| D.1.1 | DDE Concepts | 282 |
| D.1.2 | Service Names, Topic Names, and Item Names | 283 |
| D.1.3 | Server Topics | 283 |
| D.2 | SYSTEM TOPIC | 283 |
| D.2.1 | System Topic Items | 284 |
| D.3 | ECL TOPIC | 284 |
| D.3.1 | ECL Topic Items | 284 |
| D.3.2 | Requesting the Value of an ECL Variable | 285 |
| D.3.3 | Changing the Value of an ECL Variable | 285 |
| D.3.4 | Creating an Advise Data Link to an ECL Variable | 285 |
| D.3.5 | Executing ECL Commands or Command Files | 286 |
| D.3.6 | Settings Topic | 286 |
| D.4 | DDE COMMANDS | 286 |
| D.4.1 | DDE Server Operation | 286 |
| D.4.2 | DDE Error Facility | 287 |
| D.4.3 | Client Messages | 287 |
| D.4.4 | Server Messages | 288 |
| D.5 | DDE COMMAND BUILDER | 289 |
| D.5.1 | Copying a DDE Command to the Command Line | 289 |
| D.6 | DDE DEMO | 290 |
| APPENDIX E | SCO ANSI PROGRAMMING | 291 |
| E.1 | SCO ANSI PROGRAMMING SEQUENCES | 291 |
| E.1.1 | Character Attributes | 291 |
| E.1.2 | Character Sets | 292 |
| E.1.3 | Color Attributes | 292 |
| E.1.3.1 | ANSI Color Attributes | 292 |
| E.1.3.2 | SCO Xenix Color Attributes | 293 |
| E.1.4 | Columns | 293 |
| E.1.5 | Cursor Positioning | 294 |
| E.1.6 | Inserting | 294 |
| E.1.7 | Key Assignments | 295 |
| E.1.8 | Keyboard Control | 295 |
| E.1.9 | Report | 296 |

| | |
|-----------------|------------|
| GLOSSARY | 297 |
| INDEX | 299 |



CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

OVERVIEW

The emulator is a high quality, 32-bit, DEC VT320 emulator for IBM and IBM-compatible computer systems running *Microsoft Windows NT*, *Windows 95* and *Windows 98*. The software duplicates virtually all functions of the DEC VT320, VT220, VT102, VT100, VT52, SCO ANSI and BBS ANSI terminals.

In VT102 mode, the emulator performs all functions of a DEC VT102 terminal including scrolling regions, video attributes, double-width characters, local printer support, character insert/delete, and full keyboard emulation.

In VT320 mode, the emulator emulates the expanded VT320 keyboard, user-defined function keys, compose key, multinational character sets, and 8-bit control sequences.

The emulator offers many extended features, including:

- /// Kermit, ASCII, XMODEM, YMODEM, and ZMODEM file transfer
- /// Extensive command (script) language
- /// Keyboard mapping, Mouse mapping and Customizable Toolbars
- /// Screen scrollback
- /// Data logging and replay
- /// WordPerfect mode
- /// Color support

1.1 DOCUMENTATION LAYOUT

The *Quick Start Guide* is composed of the first four chapters listed below, while the online *Reference Manual* contains all of the following documentation.

- Chapter 1 Introduction**
Documentation overview and general description of the application window.
- Chapter 2 Getting Started**
Describes the connection process and standard emulator operating mode.
- Chapter 3 Drop Down Menus**
Describes the drop down menus, dialog boxes, and each of the menu options.
- Chapter 4 Keyboard and Mouse Mappers and Customizable Toolbars**
Describes the configuration and use of the Keyboard, Mouse and Toolbar features.
- Chapter 5 Extended Features**
Describes the emulator features not directly related to terminal emulation.
- Chapter 6 File Transfer**
Describes ASCII, Kermit, XMODEM, YMODEM, and ZMODEM file transfers.
- Chapter 7 Emulation Command Language**
Describes the use of the Emulation Command Language and each command.
- Chapter 8 Command File Programming**
Describes programming features of the Emulation Command Language.
- Chapter 9 VT320 Programming**
Describes programming control sequences for the VT320 Terminal.
- Appendixes Cabling Diagrams**
ASCII Control Code Table
ANSI Color Support
Dynamic Data Exchange

1.1.1 Notation

All emulator documentation uses the following notation:

COMMAND /OPTIONS arguments

Emulator commands appear in uppercase letters in bold text, and as user input in examples. Additional options are preceded by a forward slash (/) and also appear in uppercase letters. Arguments may or may not follow commands. A descriptive word in lowercase letters represents command arguments.

[optional]

Options or arguments appearing in square brackets are optional.

Menu - Submenu - Tab

Drop down menus and the menu fields appear in italics and are separated by hyphens.

PC

A general descriptor for all types of personal computers.

PROMPT>

Prompts appear in Courier type and are used in examples to illustrate where certain commands are given, or features used.

TOKEN

Tokens are either emulator or VT320 functions that can be remapped to different keys. They appear in uppercase, bold letters contained in a box.

USER INPUT

Input required from the user is shown in uppercase and bold letters.

Note: All instructions in this documentation assume that you are using a mouse. If you do not have a mouse, follow the Microsoft Windows instructions for accelerator keys.

1.1.2 Examples

Examples are given throughout the manual. They have the following format:

Example: **CMD> WRITE HOST**

CMD> represents the command line prompt. The command is shown as user input.

1.1.3 Emulator Commands

Throughout the manual, you will see the phrase, "Enter the xxxx command to...". Emulator commands are entered by pressing **CMD** (default is Alt C), clicking **Execute - Command Line** or by clicking the C> button on the *CMD Toolbar*. The command line CMD> prompt appears on the screen. Enter the command at the command prompt. Many functions that are not assigned to keys are available through emulator commands.

1.2 EMULATOR AND VT320 FUNCTION KEYS

The mouse activates most emulator and VT320 functions. These functions are also assigned to keys.

PC keys activate emulator functions and send VT320 control sequences to the host. Normally, when describing a function activated by a key, it can be written “Press Alt K to display the KERMIT> prompt.” However, all function key assignments in the emulator can be reassigned by the user. A function other than Kermit may have been assigned to Alt K. This creates a documentation problem.

The emulator uses the concept of keys and tokens. Keys are physical PC keys while tokens are mnemonics that represent the emulator or VT320 functions. Token names always appear boxed to distinguish them from other information in the manual.

VT320 functions exist on the VT320 keyboard and are emulated by the emulator. PF1 and Setup are examples of VT320 function keys. Emulator functions are unique to the emulator, and do not exist on a DEC VT320. For example, Kermit is an emulator function.

When describing the activation of a VT320 or emulator function, the manual refers to the function key by its token name. To locate the physical key assigned to the token, refer to the Default Key Assignments topic in Chapter 3.

Example: Press KERMIT to display the KERMIT> prompt.

1.3 APPLICATION WINDOW

The application window displays many standard *Microsoft Windows* features such as scrollbars, maximize/mini-
mize buttons, and a Control Menu icon.

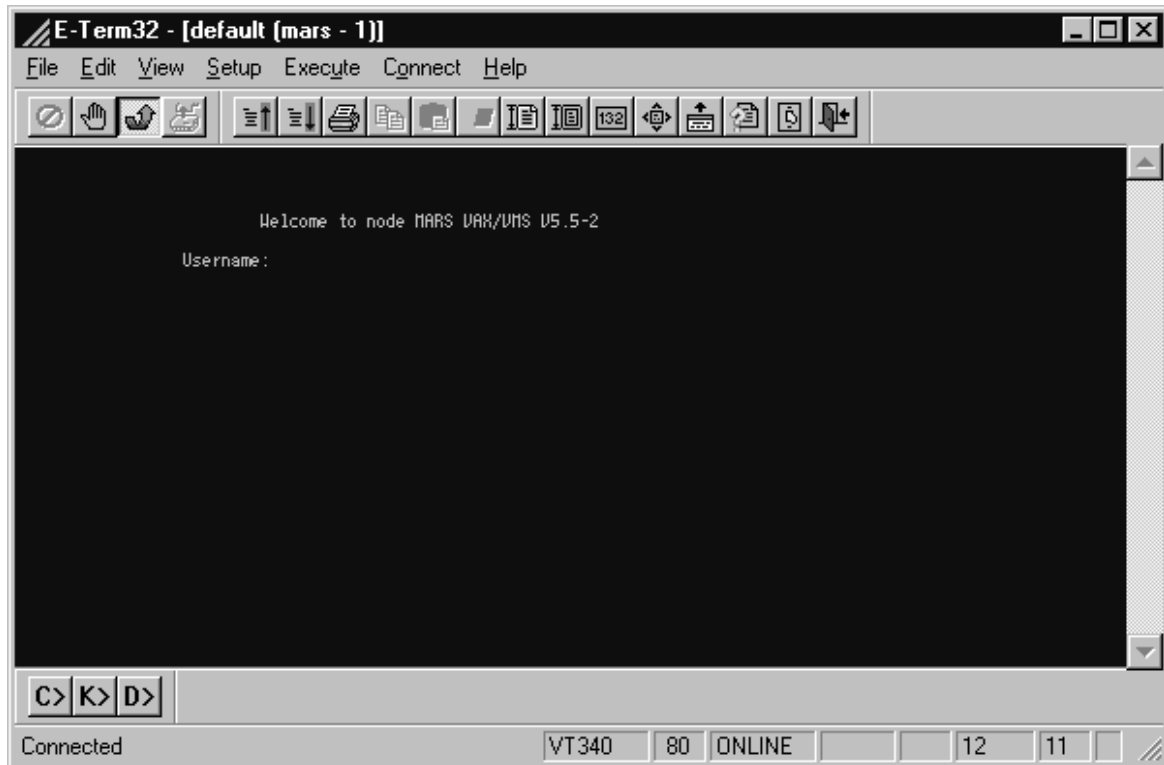


Figure 1-1 Application Window

The **Menu Bar** lists common *Microsoft Windows* features and emulator specific features. Chapter 3 (Drop Down Menus) describes the menu bar options.

The **Status Line** displays terminal settings and messages indicating active features such as LOG and PRINT. All host communications scroll through the window as they are received.

1.4 LINE RECALL AND EDITING

Input lines can be recalled and edited in the command window.

1.4.1 Command Line Editing

Command Line Editing is available on all input to emulator commands. This includes input entered in response to the CMD> prompt or emulator functions activated by function keys.

The following keys are available for Command Line Editing:

Table 1-1 Command Line Edit Keys

| Key | Function | Key | Function |
|-------------|----------------------|-----------|---------------------------------|
| Up Arrow | Recall previous line | Del | Delete character |
| Down Arrow | Recall next line | Backspace | Delete character left of cursor |
| Left Arrow | Move cursor left | Ins | Toggle Insert/Overstrike mode |
| Right Arrow | Move cursor right | Ctrl U | Delete entire line |

The number of command lines stored for recall is set to 100 lines.



CHAPTER 2 **GETTING STARTED**

OVERVIEW

The emulator is a 32-bit VT320 terminal emulation and communications package designed specifically for personal computers running *Microsoft's Windows NT, Windows 95* and *Windows 98*.

2.1 PACKAGE CONTENTS

The emulator package includes:

- /// *Getting Started* guide
- /// *Online Reference Manual*
- /// CD-ROM
- /// Registration Card

If any of these items are missing, please call DCSi at (303) 447-9251.

2.2 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS

- /// 486 or Pentium processor
- /// *Microsoft's Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows NT 4.0 or Windows NT 3.51 with Service Pack 5*
- /// 8 MB Memory (*Windows 95* only) 16 MB recommended. *NT* requires 16 MB
- /// 15 MB Hard Disk space
- /// A Mouse
- /// One of the following: a) serial port directly connected to host; b) serial port connected to modem; c) network connection to host

2.3 REGISTRATION

There is a registration number on your program disks. Please record this number for future reference, updates, and technical support.

Please take a few moments to fill out your product registration card and send it in. This will ensure that you receive prompt service and update notices.

2.4 INSTALLATION

The emulator files are stored in compressed format on the disk(s). The installation procedure decompresses the files and copies them into the correct directory.

To install the emulator, you must be running Windows, but close all other programs.

- 1) Select **Start - Run**. Select from **Browse**, or enter **A:\SETUP**. (Where **A** is the floppy drive containing the program disk.)
- 2) Click the OK button. The installation program begins.
- 3) Answer any questions that appear on the screen.

2.4.1 Creating an Icon

The Program Group and Icon are automatically created once the installation program is complete. To select a different icon follow the steps listed below.

- 1) Click the emulator icon with the right mouse button.
- 2) Select **Properties** from the drop down list.
- 3) From the *Properties* dialog box, select the *Shortcut tab*.
- 4) Click the **Change Icon...** button.
- 5) Select a new icon, then click **OK**.

2.5 Emulator Application Window

The Emulator Application Window displays whenever the emulator is started, unless the emulator is configured to start as an icon.

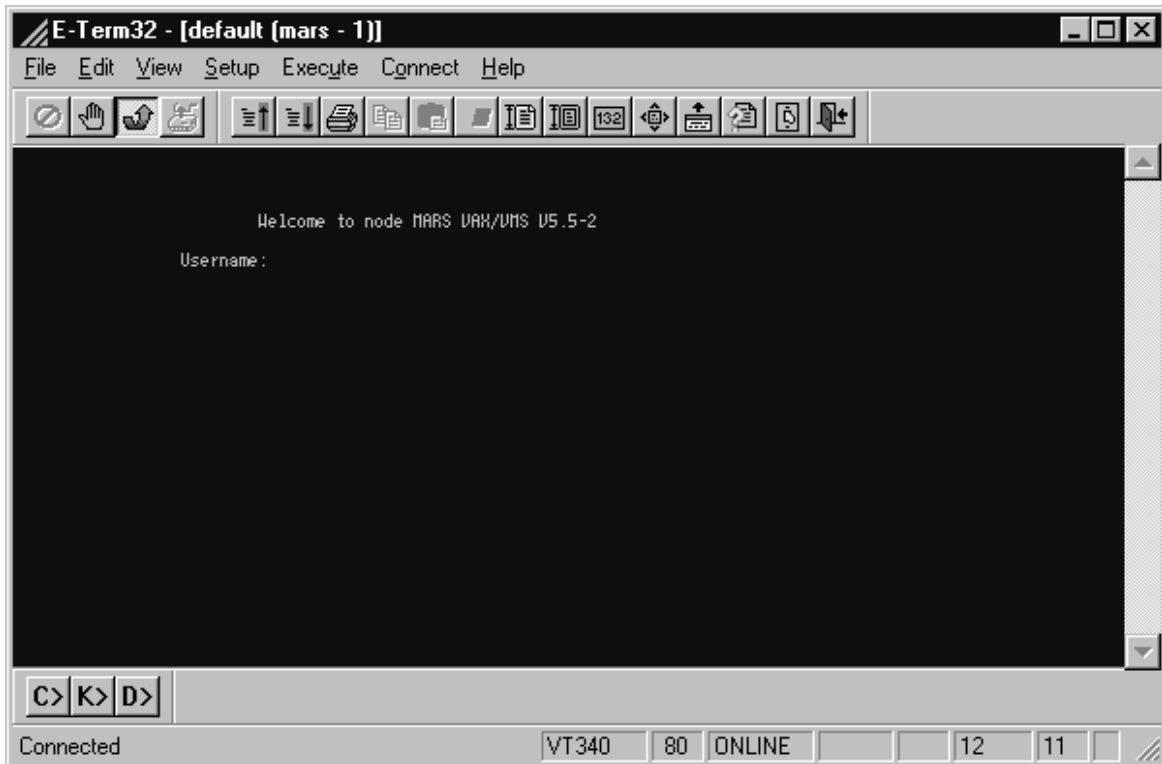


Figure 2-1 Emulator Application Window

2.6 CONNECTING

There are two ways to connect; through the Connections dialog box or through the Session Manager.

2.6.1 Connections

To make connection through the Connections dialog box:

- 1) Click on **Connect - Connect**. The Connections dialog box appears.

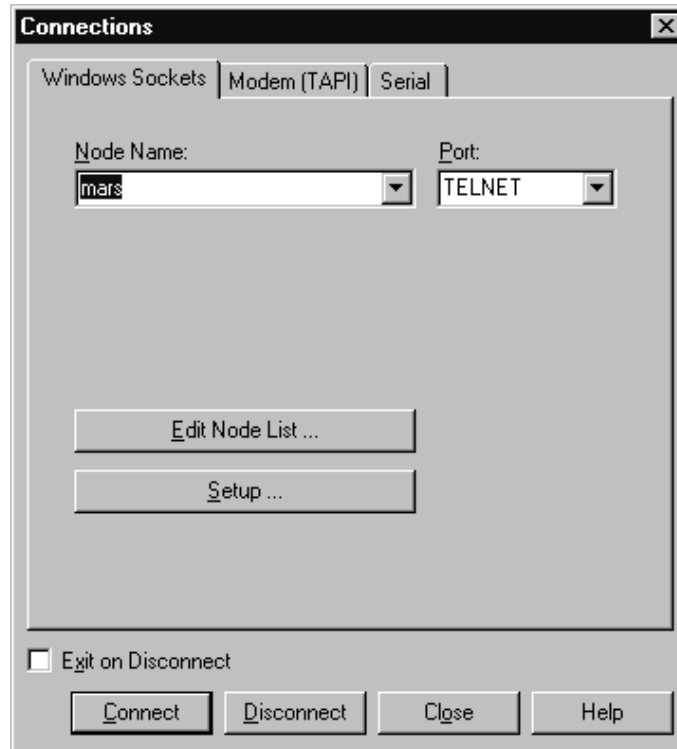


Figure 2-2 Connect

- 2) Select the tab defining the desired mode of connection to the host.
- 3) Enter a **Node Name**, a **Phone Number** or select a serial port, depending on the tab selected.
- 4) Click the **Setup...** button if available. Make any desired parameter changes, then click **OK**.
- 5) Click the **Connect** button. Status messages regarding the progress of the connection appear on the status line.

2.6.2 Session Manager

The emulator provides a Session Manager which allows you to set the Properties of different sessions for the emulator and set up an automatic connection to the desired host. For example, you can save multiple network sessions that have different connection requirements, and save them with each assigned a unique name. Similarly, you can set up Modem (TAPI) connections as well as Serial port connections. Connecting is simply a matter of selecting a session from the list and then clicking the **Start** button. Each connection type is assigned an identifying icon so for example, you can easily distinguish between say, a network connection and a modem connection.

Click on **Connect - Session Manager** to display the *Session Manager* dialog box.



Figure 2-3 Session Manager - Create Sessions

Create Sessions

Displays a list of available sessions for opening, copying, or setting up as specified by the options below

- All** Displays all the sessions.
- Modem** Displays the modem sessions.
- Network** Displays the network sessions.
- Serial** Displays the COM Port sessions.

Show Active Sessions

Displays the Show Active Sessions dialog box.

Start Button

Starts a session.

Close Button

Closes the dialog box.

Help Button

Displays Help on the Session Manager dialog box. Click on any field to find helpful information.

New Button

Creates a new session, and launches the Properties page allowing you to select the session and its parameters.

Properties... Button

Displays the Properties page for the selected session.

Copy Button

Creates a copy of the selected session, and launches the Properties page to allow you to set its options.

Delete Button

Deletes the session from the list.

Add to Favorites

Add the currently selected session to the Windows *Favorites* Folder.

2.6.2.1 Creating Sessions

To create a new session:

- 1) Click on **Connect - Session Manager**.
- 2) Click the **New** button. The Properties dialog box for the new session is displayed.

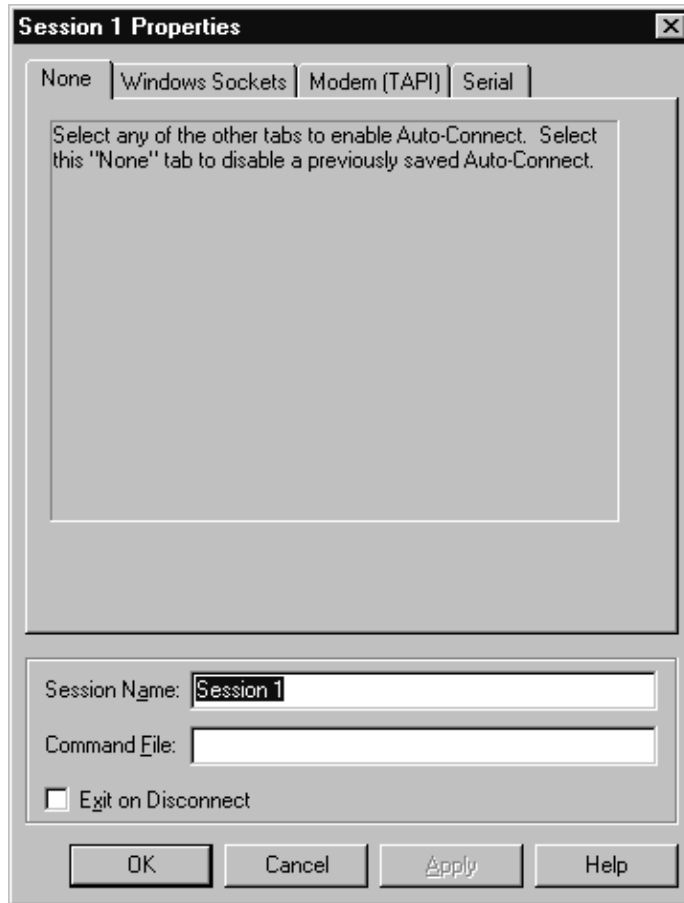


Figure 2-4 Session Manager - Default Properties

The following options are available on the Properties page:

Session Name

The emulator automatically assigns a **Session Name** to each new or copied session. However, the default name can be changed.

Command File

A **Command File** name can be entered which will automatically be executed when the session is launched.

Exit on Disconnect

Exits the emulator when the session is disconnected.

OK Button

Saves the Properties page and returns to the *Session Manager*. New sessions and copied sessions will appear in the **Create Sessions** list.

Cancel Button

Cancels any changes made to the Properties page and returns to the *Session Manager* without creating a new or copied session.

- 3) Enter a new **Session Name** if desired. Otherwise a default name, “**Session X**”, is assigned.
- 4) Select the type of connection from the available tabs.
- 5) Adjust property parameters as necessary. For more information, refer to the following sections.
- 6) Click **OK**. The new session name displays in the **Create Sessions** list.

2.6.2.2 Copying Sessions

The Copy feature is a quick way to create sessions of a similar type. For example, if connecting to both VMS and UNIX systems, a VMS version and a UNIX version connection can be created. These base versions can then be copied when making multiple sessions for a given type.

To copy a session:

- 1) Click on **Connect - Session Manager**.
- 2) Select a session to copy.
- 3) Click the **Copy** button. The Properties dialog box for the new session displays.
- 3) Enter a new **Session Name** if desired. Otherwise a default name, “**Copy X**”, is assigned.
- 4) Select the type of connection from the available tabs.
- 5) Adjust property parameters as necessary. For more information, refer to the following sections.
- 6) Click **OK**. The new **Session Name** displays in the **Create Session** list.

2.6.2.3 Deleting Sessions

To delete a session:

- 1) Click on **Connect - Session Manager**.
- 2) Select a session to delete.
- 3) Click the **Delete** button.

2.6.2.4 Switching Sessions

To switch between sessions:

- 1) Click on **Connect - Session Manager**.
- 2) Click the **Show Active Sessions...** button. The Session Manager switches to the *Session Manager - Active Sessions* dialog box.

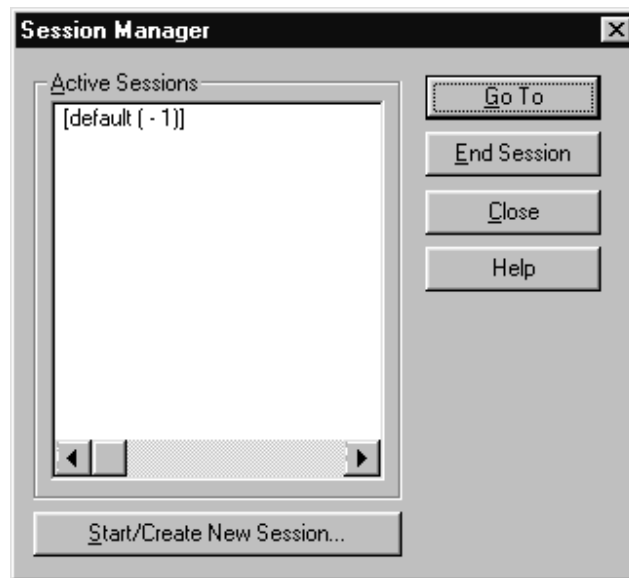


Figure 2-5 Session Manager - Active Sessions

- 3) Select a session to switch to from the **Active Sessions** window.
- 4) Click the **Go To** button.

2.6.2.5 Exiting Sessions Remotely

To exit a session remotely:

- 1) Click on **Connect - Session Manager**.
- 2) Click the **Show Active Sessions...** button.
- 3) Select a session to close.
- 4) Click the **End Session** button. If the session selected is the current session, a message appears warning the user that they are about to exit the session.

2.6.3 Windows Sockets

Windows Sockets (WINSOCK) provides connectivity using any of several protocols. WINSOCK is a standard network interface that many network protocol providers have available for their protocol stacks. Normally WINSOCK gives the user access to a TCP/IP stack.

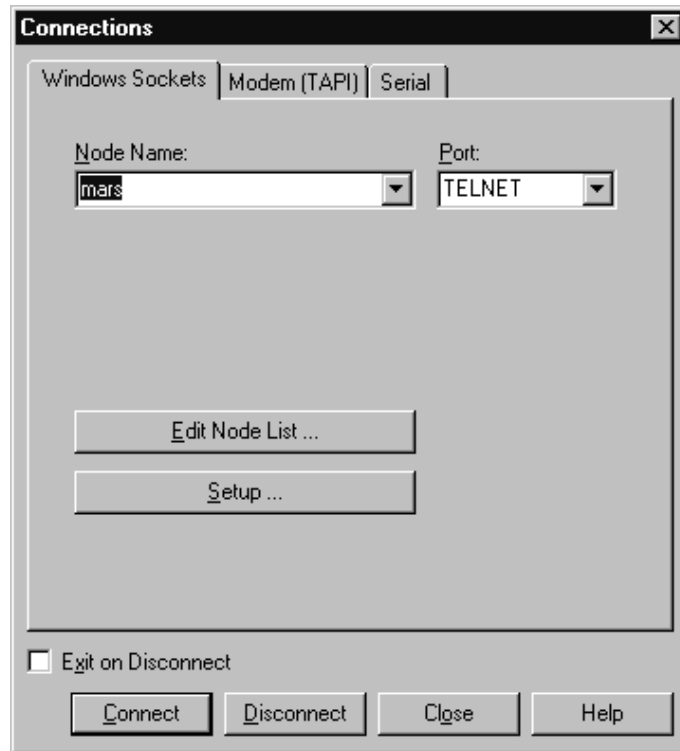


Figure 2-6 Connections - Windows Sockets

Node Name

Enter or select a node name. If a new node name is entered and the connection is successful, the node name will be added to the Node Name list.

Port

Enter or select the desired port.

Edit Node List...

Displays the *Edit Node List* dialog box.

Setup... button

Displays the *Windows Sockets Setup* dialog box.

2.6.3.1 Windows Sockets Setup

From the *Windows Sockets tab*, click the **Setup...** button. The *Windows Sockets Setup* dialog box is displayed.

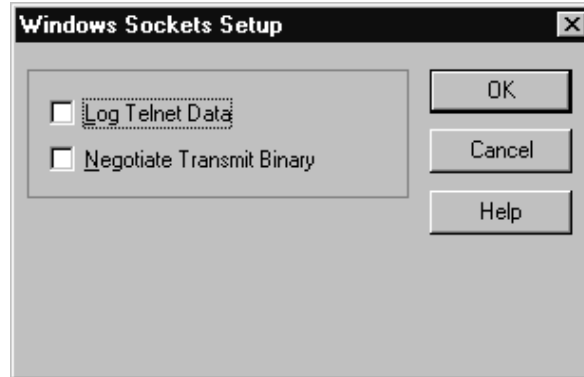


Figure 2-7 Windows Sockets Setup

Log Telnet Data

Create a special log file that includes Telnet “Interpret as Command” (IAC) negotiations along with the actual data stream.

Negotiate Transmit Binary

Transmit Binary causes the Telnet protocol to interpret characters not preceded by an IAC character (255 decimal) as 8-bit Binary data.

2.6.3.2 Edit Node List

From the *Windows Sockets* tab, click the **Edit Node List...** button. The *Edit Node List* dialog box is displayed.

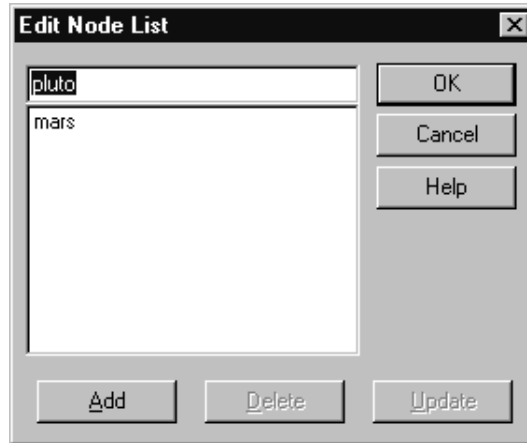


Figure 2-8 Edit Node List

Node List

Displays the list of available nodes.

Add Button

To add a node to the list, type the node name in the edit box, then click **Add**.

Delete Button

To delete a node from the list, click on the **node name** or type the name in the edit box, then click **Delete**.

Update Button

Click on a **node name**. It will appear in the edit box. Change the **node name**, then click **Update**.

2.6.4 Modem (TAPI)

TAPI is a protocol available in *Windows 95* and *Windows NT* that allows connections to modems defined in the *Windows* operating system. If the modems were not installed by *Windows* plug-and-play or manually through the *Windows* Control Panel, the modem will not be available in TAPI.

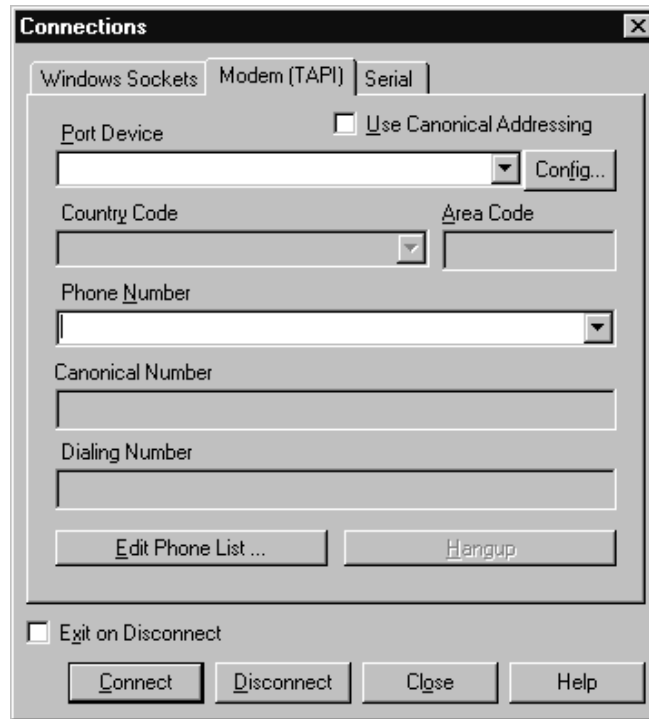


Figure 2-9 Connections - Modem

Phone Number

The number to dial. The number can include spaces or dashes for readability. The maximum length is 32 characters. If the **phone number** is not in the list, but is entered, and a successful connection is made to that location, the new number will be added to the **phone number** list.

Port Device

Displays a list of the modem(s) installed in Windows. If the list is blank, a modem must be installed before TAPI can be used.

Config... Button

Displays the *Properties* page for the selected port device.

Edit Phone List... Button

Displays the *Edit Phone List* dialog box.

Hangup

Hangs up the modem.

2.6.4.1 Edit Phone List

The *Edit Phone List* dialog box displays a list of phone numbers which can be added, deleted or updated.

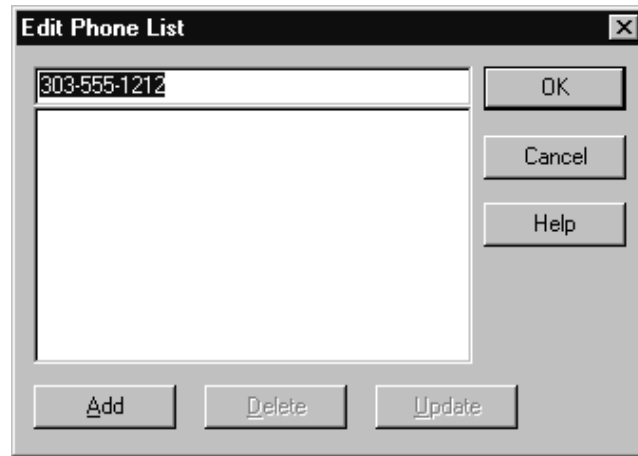


Figure 2-10 Edit Phone List

Phone List

Displays the list of available phone numbers.

Add Button

To add a phone number to the list, type the number in the edit box, then click **Add**.

Delete Button

To delete a phone number from the list, click on the number or type the number in the edit box, then click **Delete**.

Update

Click on a number. It will appear in the Phone List box. Change the number, then click **Update**.

2.6.5 Poly/LAT-32

PolyLAT/32 is a LAT protocol for DEC terminal communications. If polyLAT is installed on your system, this tab displays and DECnet terminal communications can be established.

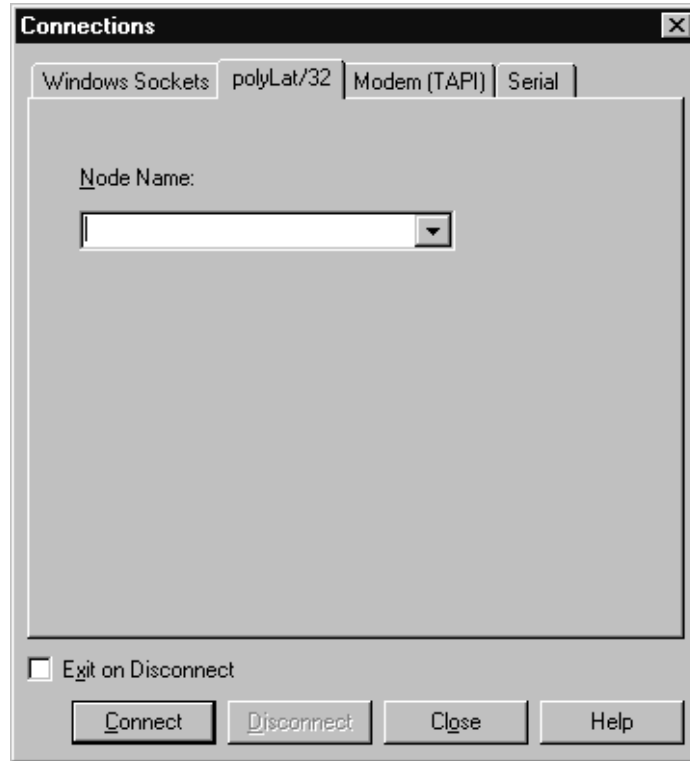


Figure 2-11 Connections - polyLAT/32

Node Name

The list of nodes is compiled by and from the network. If the desired **Node Name** does not appear in the list, contact your network administrator.

2.6.6 Serial

Serial communications are accomplished by a direct serial connection between the host and the PC. The *Serial* tab allows connection through the PC's available serial ports.

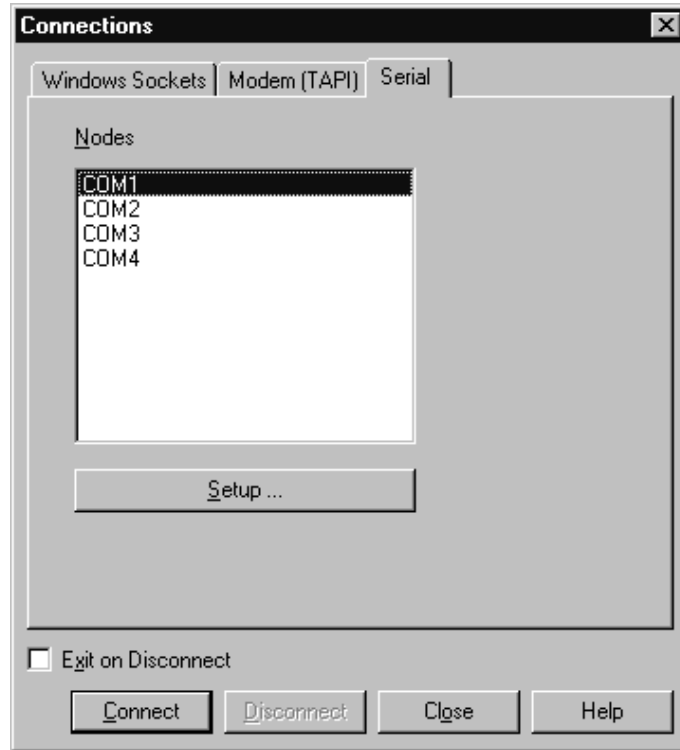


Figure 2-12 Connections - Serial

Nodes

Displays a list of the available Serial ports.

Setup... button

Displays the *Serial Setup* dialog box.

2.6.6.1 Serial Setup

The *Serial Setup* dialog box is used to configure the specified communications port.

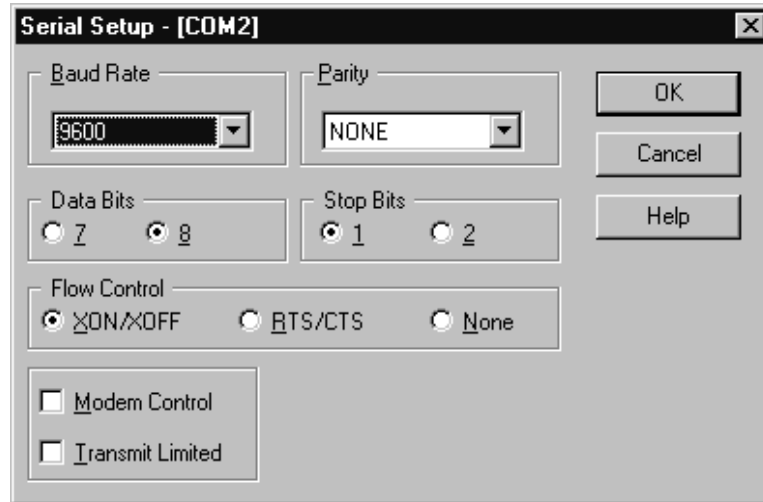


Figure 2-13 Serial Setup

Baud Rate

Selects the communications port speed.

Parity

Selects parity for the data word.

Even Even parity.

Mark Forces parity bit to one.

None No parity bit. Use this setting when operating in a full VT320 8-bit environment.

Odd Odd parity.

Space Forces parity bit to zero. Recommended for 7-bit environments not requiring odd or even parity.

Data Bits

Selects **7** or **8** data bits. Seven bits is usually required when **Parity** is set to anything other than **None**.

Stop Bits

Sets the number of stop bits for each data word to **1** or **2**. For baud rates above 110 the correct setting is **1**.

Flow Control

Selects the communications flow control protocol.

- None** Disables all receive buffer control. In this mode, characters are lost if the emulator cannot process characters fast enough to prevent the receive buffer from overflowing. The receive buffer size should not be set below 3168 characters if **None** is selected.
- RTS/CTS** Sets hardware flow control mode. When the buffer is full, the **RTS** (Request to Send) modem control signal is dropped. When space becomes available in the receive buffer, RTS is enabled. If CTS is disabled, the emulator cannot send characters.
- Xon/Xoff** The flow control method used by all DEC and most other computer systems. **Xon/Xoff** sends a DC3 (Ctrl S) character to the host when the receive buffer is full. When space becomes available in the receive buffer, a DC1 (Ctrl Q) is sent to the host.

Modem Control

If enabled, the emulator monitors the modem's carrier detect signal to determine the modem connect status. **Modem Control** should be disabled when using a direct connection to the host.

Transmit Limited

Enabling limited transmit restricts the emulator transmit speed from between 150 and 180 characters per second, regardless of the actual baud rate. This places a nominal interrupt burden on the host computer's operating system. Limited transmit may be necessary for proper communication with some half-duplex systems.

2.7 WINDOW SIZING AND LOCATION

Several options in **View** control the appearance of the emulation mode presentation. The emulation window can be toggled between framed or unframed and maximize workspace, left justified or centered.

The size of the emulation window is determined by the font selected for the presentation window size. The emulator automatically selects a font that utilizes as much of the presentation window as possible while displaying all lines and columns currently configured.

Presentation window sizing is accomplished in the typical Windows manner; use mouse button 1 to grab a border and drag it to size the window. However, the emulator will not allow you to resize the emulator smaller than the smallest font. To size the emulator without automatic font selection (so not all columns and rows are visible without scrolling), press mouse button 2 while dragging the borders.

2.7.1 Number of Emulation Lines

The number of emulation lines is configured in **Setup - Terminal - Display** and is continuously variable from 24 to 48.

2.7.2 Maximize Workspace

Maximize Workspace maximizes the emulation window (working area) by “hiding” the menu bar, message lists, status line and toolbars. Emulator drop down menus are available through the Control Menu by enabling the Menu Bar option.

There are three ways to toggle Maximize Workspace mode on and off:

- /// Click on the toolbar icon.
- /// Click on **View - Maximize Workspace**.
- /// Click on the **Control Menu** icon located in the upper-left corner of the emulator title bar (or press Alt Spacebar) and select the **Maximize Workspace** item.

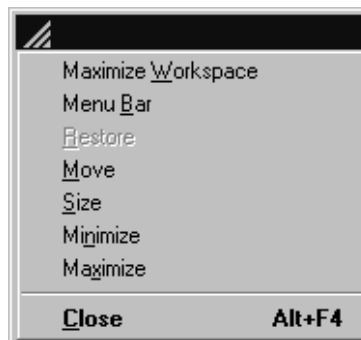


Figure 2-14 Control Menu

2.8 SCREEN SCROLLBACK

The scrollback display is manipulated through the vertical scrollbar. To move one line, click on the arrows at the ends of the scrollbar. To move a page, click in the gray area near the ends of the scrollbar.

If the scrollbar is not displayed, click on either **View - Scrollbar** or the scrollbar button on the *Hold Toolbar*.

The size of the scrollback memory can be set to a maximum of 10,000 lines.

2.9 VIDEO ATTRIBUTE TO COLOR MAPPING

Video attribute color mapping is mapping of colors to normal VT320 monochrome attributes such as bold, reverse video, and underline. Video attribute mapping is configured through the *Color Setup tab*. For more information, refer to the *Color Setup* topic in Chapter 3.

2.10 CHARACTER SETS

The emulator supports the following character sets:

- /// DEC Multinational (consists of the ASCII and DEC supplemental character sets)
- /// DEC Special Graphics
- /// ISO Latin-1
- /// National Replacement Character
- /// PC

If a DEC VT terminal is selected, then on initial load or after a terminal reset, DEC Multinational is mapped as the default terminal character set.

The ASCII set is accessed for character codes 0-127. The DEC Supplemental set is accessed for codes 128-255. During a serial connection, the DEC Supplemental set does not display properly unless the emulator is set to **8 Data Bits** and **No Parity**.

2.11 PRINTER SUPPORT

All VT100 and VT320 print modes are supported.

Table 2-10 Print Modes

| Print Mode | Function |
|--------------------|---|
| Print Screen | Sends the contents of the screen to the printer. If the screen is set to 132 columns, up to 132 columns can be sent to the printer. |
| Auto Print | Prints every line sent to the screen. Same as Continuous Print mode. |
| Printer Controller | Prints received characters without displaying them on the screen. |
| Print Cursor Line | Prints the line the cursor is on. |
| Print Extent | Prints the contents of the scrolling region. |

The following print modes can be initiated using a function key, emulator PRINT command, or by a host control sequence. Other print modes can only be selected by using control sequences. Refer to the *Printing* topic in Chapter 9 of the online *Reference Manual* for more information.

Table 2-11 Print Options

| Print Mode | Token | Command |
|------------------|---------|-------------------------|
| Print Screen | PRTSCR | PRINT SCREEN |
| Auto Print | PRTAUTO | PRINT ON/OFF |
| Controller Print | PRTCTL | PRINT/CONTROLLER ON/OFF |

2.12 COMPOSE CHARACTERS

This feature allows you to create characters that do not exist on the standard North American keyboard using compose sequences. There are two types of compose sequences; two-stroke sequences and three-stroke sequences. Since the two-stroke sequences cannot be used on a North American keyboard, the emulator supports only the three-stroke compose sequences.

Three-stroke sequences can be performed on all keyboards. First, press **COMPOSE** (default is Alt F1) then press two standard keys whose characters form a valid sequence.

To create a compose character:

- 1) Locate the character in the Compose table.
- 2) Press **COMPOSE** (the Compose indicator displays on the Status Line).
- 3) Type the two characters from the “3-Stroke Sequence” column (the Compose indicator turns off when the sequence is complete).

For example, to create a U with an umlaut (Ü), press **COMPOSE**, then type U and a double quotation mark.

Table 2-12 Compose Sequence Characters

| Resultant Character | 3-Stroke Sequence | Resultant Character | 3-Stroke Sequence |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| ¡ (inverted !) | !! | Ó (O acute) | O' |
| ¢ (cent sign) | c/ | Ô (O circumflex) | O^ |
| £ (pound sign) | l- or l= | Õ (O tilde) | O~ |
| ¥ (yen sign) | y- or y= | Ö (O umlaut) | O" or "O |
| § (section sign) | so or s! or s0 | Œ (OE ligature) | OE |
| ¤ (currency sign) | xo or x0 | Ù (U grave) | U' |
| © (copyright sign) | co or c0 | Ú (U acute) | U' |
| ^a (feminine ordinal) | a_ | Û (U circumflex) | U^ |
| « (angle quotation mark) | << | ÿ (yumlaut) | y" or "y |
| ° (degree sign) | 0^ or (sp)* | Ü (U umlaut) | U" or "U |
| +/- (plus/minus sign) | +- | ÿ (Y umlaut) | Y" or "Y |
| ² (superscript 2) | 2^ | ß (German small sharp s) | ss |
| ³ (superscript 3) | 3^ | à (a grave) | a' |
| µ (micro sign) | /u | á (a acute) | a' |
| ¶ (paragraph sign) | p! | â (a circumflex) | a^ |
| • (middle dot) | .^ | ã (a tilde) | a~ |
| ¹ (superscript 1) | 1^ | ä (a umlaut) | a" or "a |
| º (masculine ordinal) | o_ | å (a ring) | a* |
| » (angle quotation mark) | >> | æ (ae ligature) | ae |
| ¼ (fraction one-quarter) | 14 | ç (c cedilla) | c, |
| ½ (fraction one-half) | 12 | è (e grave) | e' |
| ¿ (inverted ?) | ?? | é (e acute) | e' |
| À (A grave) | A' | ê (e circumflex) | e^ |
| Á (A acute) | A' | ë (e umlaut) | e" or "e |
| Â (A circumflex) | A^ | ì (i grave) | i' |
| Ã (A tilde) | A~ | í (i acute) | i' |
| Ä (A umlaut) | A" or "A | î (i circumflex) | i^ |
| Å (A ring) | A* | ï (i umlaut) | i" or "i |
| Æ (A E ligature) | AE | ñ (n tilde) | n~ |
| Ç (C cedilla) | C, | ò (o grave) | o' |
| È (E grave) | E' | ó (o acute) | o' |
| É (E acute) | E' | ô (o circumflex) | o^ |
| Ê (E circumflex) | E^ | õ (o tilde) | o~ |
| Ë (E umlaut) | E" or "E | ö (o umlaut) | o" or "o |
| Ì (I grave) | I' | œ (oe ligature) | oe |
| Í (I acute) | I' | ø (o slash) | o/ |
| Î (I circumflex) | I^ | ù (u grave) | u' |
| Ï (I umlaut) | I" or "I | ú (u acute) | u' |
| Ñ (N tilde) | N~ | û (u circumflex) | u^ |
| Ò (O grave) | O' | ü (u umlaut) | u" or "u |

2.13 COMMON PROBLEMS

Keyboards

The backspace key doesn't appear to work

VT terminals have two backspace codes to choose from. To set these codes select the *Keyboard tab* in **Setup - Terminal**. Change the backspace setting to the other keycode. Click **OK**.

Terminal Type XXX not defined

Winsock Connections to UNIX systems only:

Be sure that the terminal type selected in **Setup - Terminal** is a terminal type recognized by the host. Logoff and logon again. Note that many UNIX systems do not recognize the terminal type VT320, but they do recognize the terminal type VT220.

Error message: Error Attempting Connect

For Winsock (TCP/IP) connections:

Check that the node name is correct and try again. Or, instead of the node name, try the IP address of the host. Certain TCP/IP configuration problems can cause names to fail while allowing IP addresses to work.

For polyLAT/32 connections:

Be sure that polyLAT/32 is installed. PolyLAT/32 is available from DCSi. Be sure that no other LAT, such as Pathworks LAT, is installed. If so, remove it or it will interfere with polyLAT/32.

For TAPI (modem) connections:

Check the phone number for accuracy. The phone line might be busy.

For Serial connections:

No Response

The port might be in use by another application. Be sure that no other copy of the emulator is connected to the port. Ensure that no FAX program is connected to the port.

Incorrect COM (serial) port selected in the *Serial Setup* dialog box.

Incorrect **baud rate** selected in the *Serial Setup* dialog box.

Flow control is off on the host system. Press Ctrl Q (Xon) to clear the flow control.

More than one serial communications interface is assigned to the same COM port. Look at the jumpers on the serial board to make sure that they are set for a unique COM port. Consult the serial board documentation.

Incorrect RS232 cable. Try another cable.

Garbage Characters Appear on the Screen

Incorrect **baud rate** selected in the *Serial Setup* dialog box.

Incorrect **parity** selection when using VT320 mode. VT320 mode interprets all eight bits. If your host system is not properly configured for full 8-bit operation, select **Space Parity** in the *Serial Setup* dialog box. Most common combinations are **8 Data Bits/No Parity** and **7 Data Bits/Space Parity**.

Dropping Characters

The host doesn't use **Xon/Xoff** flow control. Try reducing the **baud rate** in the *Serial Setup* dialog box.

The PC has a hardware problem. Try running the emulator on another PC.

More than one serial communications interface is hardware jumpered to the same COM port.

2.14 TECHNICAL SUPPORT

DCSi offers free Technical Support to all registered customers of the emulator. However, *many problems can be solved without having to make a phone call. Please consult the following first:*

- /// Help: click on **Help - Index - Troubleshooting**.
- /// Online Reference Manual
- /// Website: **http://www.dcsi.com** contains a Technical Support section for frequently asked questions.

If you are still unable to find a solution to your problem, Technical Support can be reached by:

- /// Phone: 303-447-9251
- /// FAX: 303-447-1406
- /// E-Mail: support@dcsi.com
- /// Internet: http://www.dcsi.com

Whichever option you select, please include (for telephone service, have ready) all of the following information. This will help us serve you quickly and effectively.

- 1) For telephone service, be at a computer that can duplicate the problem.
- 2) Have your registration number and the emulator version number ready. These are found on the program disk label. The version number is also located in **Help - About**.
- 3) Please have the following information for the support person:
 - /// The problem (including the exact error messages) and the steps needed to reproduce it
 - /// Type of host
 - /// Type of connection to host (i.e., Serial, Network,...)
 - /// Type of PC, keyboard, monitor and video card (display adapter)
 - /// Whether the problem occurs on more than one system (if available)
 - /// *Microsoft Windows* version

You may be requested to send the problem file by mail or courier. The mailing and delivery address is:

TECHNICAL SUPPORT
DCSi
3775 Iris Ave Ste 1B
Boulder CO 80301 USA



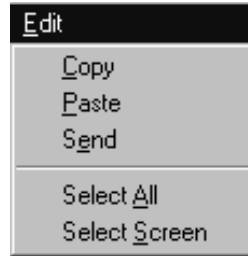
CHAPTER 3 **DROP DOWN MENUS**

OVERVIEW

The menu bar lists the drop down menus for emulator features and setup. Click on a name and a list of options will drop down. Click on the desired option to display a dialog box or to execute a command or feature.

3.1 EDIT

The *Edit* drop down menu lists the Windows Clipboard functions.



See the Microsoft Windows documentation for detailed information on the Clipboard application.

3.1.1 Copy

Copies selected text to the Clipboard.

3.1.2 Paste

Pastes a copy of the current Clipboard contents at the current cursor position.

3.1.3 Send

Sends the contents of the Clipboard to the host computer. Carriage returns are sent at the end of each line.

3.1.4 Select All

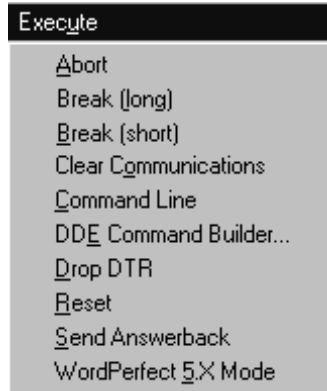
Selects the current screen and all of the scrollback data.

3.1.5 Select Screen

Selects all the text on the screen.

3.2 EXECUTE

The **Execute** drop down menu lists different emulator commands and features.



3.2.1 Abort

Click on **Execute - Abort** to abort file transfers, emulator commands, and command file execution.

3.2.2 Break (short)

Sends a 200 millisecond break to the Serial or Modem communications port.

3.2.3 Break (long)

Sends a 3.5 second break to the Serial or Modem communications port.

3.2.4 Command Line

Displays the command prompt (CMD>) for execution of emulator commands and command files.

3.2.5 Clear Communications

Releases a hold condition and sets flow control on.

3.2.6 DDE Command Builder

Displays the *DDE Command Builder* dialog box. For more detailed information on this dialog box and DDE, refer to Appendix D (Dynamic Data Exchange) in the online *Reference Manual*.

3.2.7 Drop DTR

Drops the Data Terminal Ready (DTR) and Request to Send (RTS) modem control signal.

3.2.8 Reset

Resets the terminal emulator. The following actions take place during a reset:

- /// The default character set is selected.
- /// The scrolling region is set to 24 lines.
- /// The UDKs are cleared.
- /// The screen is erased and the cursor is set to [1,1].
- /// Video attributes are set to normal.
- /// All screen characters positions are set to erasable.

3.2.9 Send Answerback

Sends the Answerback message to the host. The message is specified in the *Terminal Setup* dialog box.

3.2.10 WordPerfect 5.x Mode

Toggles WordPerfect 5.x mode on or off. A checkmark indicates that WP5 mode is enabled. In WP5 mode, the VAX/VMS WordPerfect version 5.x operates using the PC keystrokes. This features allows the user familiar with PC WordPerfect 5.x keystrokes to operate VAX/VMS WordPerfect 5.x without having to learn the VAX WordPerfect 5.x keystrokes.

3.3 FILE

The *File* drop down menu lists different features requiring filename input.



3.3.1 Edit Command File Selection

Click on **File - Edit Command File** to display the *Edit Command File Selection* dialog box.

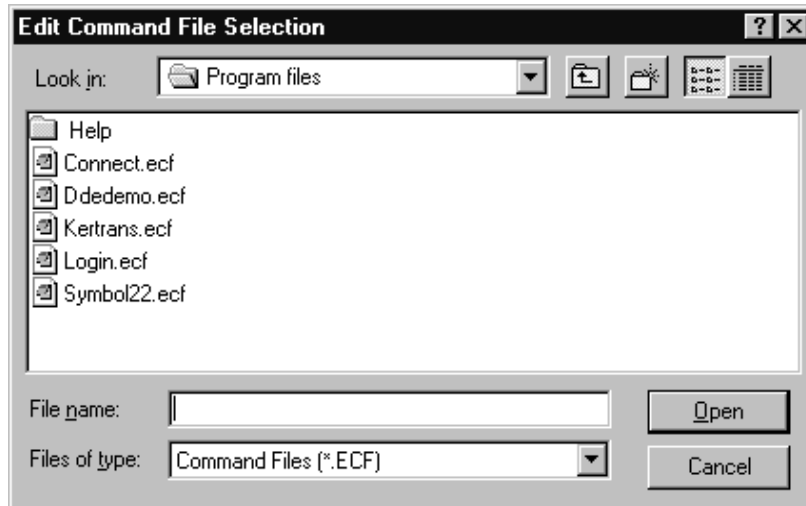


Figure 3-1 Edit Command File Selection

File Name

Select or enter the name of the command file to edit.

Open button

Launches the Notepad editor with the selected file loaded for editing.

3.3.2 Run Command File Selection

Click on **File - Run Command File** to display the *Run Command File Selection* dialog box.

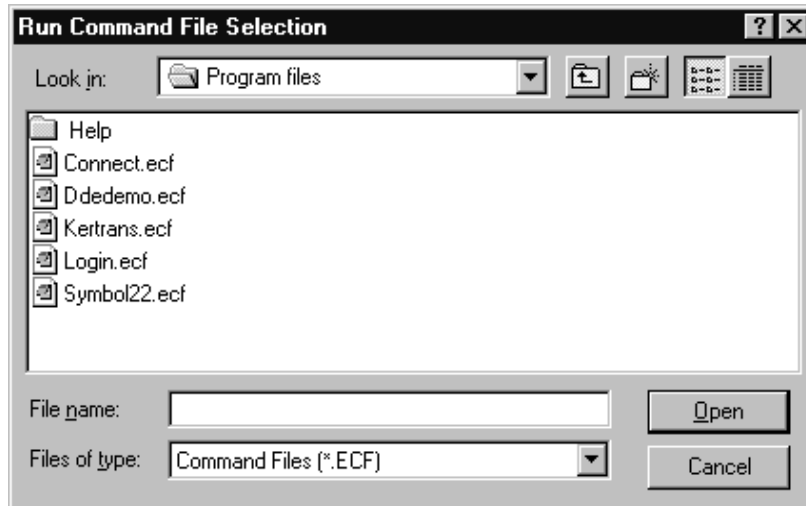


Figure 3-2 Run Command File Selection

File Name

Select or enter the name of the command file to execute.

Open button

Executes the selected command file.

3.3.3 Capture Text to File

The Capture Text to File feature records all data sent to the emulator from the host into a file on the PC. The data is first interpreted by the emulator, so it appears in the log file as it appears on the screen. Click on **File - Capture Text to File** to display the *Capture Text to File* dialog box.

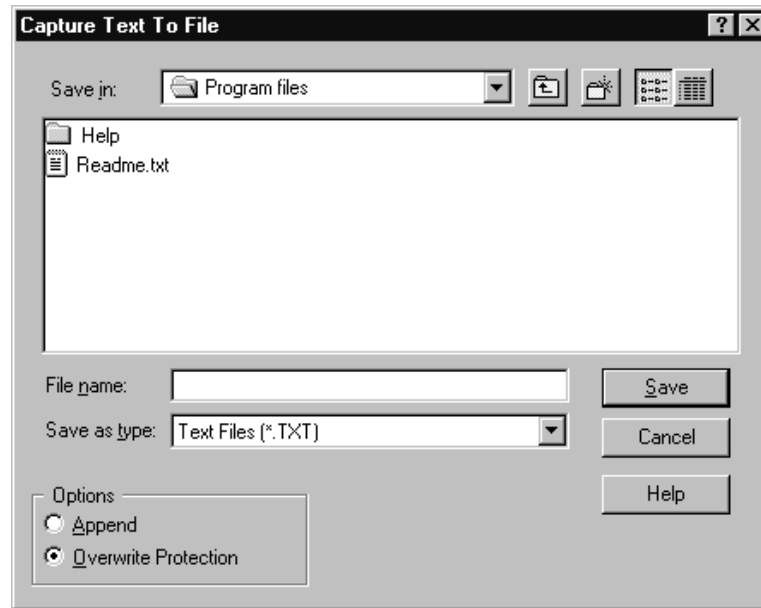


Figure 3-3 Capture Text to File

File Name

Specifies the name of the capture file where the data is recorded.

Append

Selects append mode. If selected, the data recorded is appended to the end of an existing capture file.

Overwrite Protection

When enabled, prompts for overwrite confirmation if the specified file already exists.

Save button

Opens the capture file and begins recording. To stop recording, click on **File - Stop Capturing Text to File**.

3.3.4 Record Log File Selection

Click on **File - Record Log File** to display the *Record Log File Selection* dialog box.

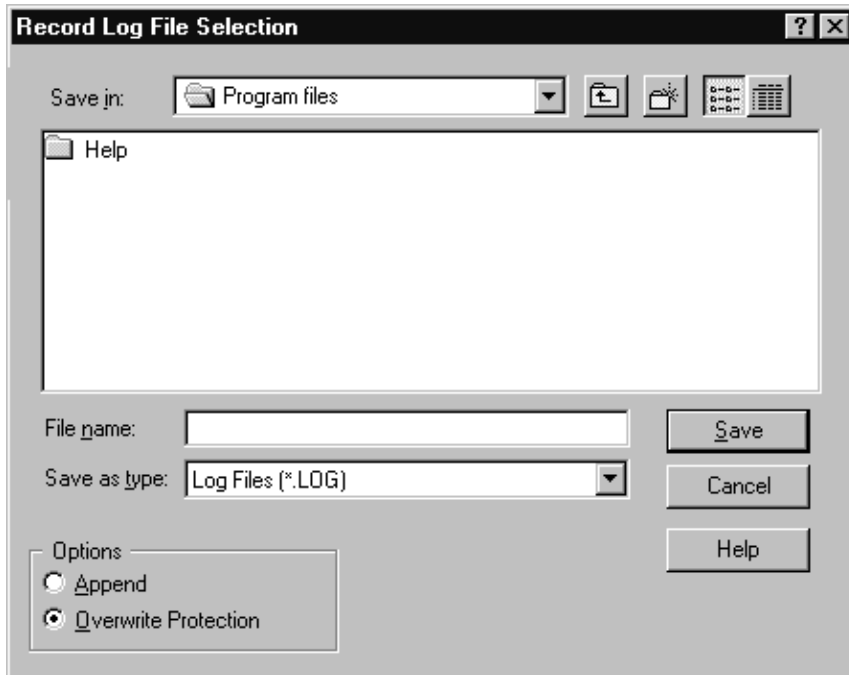


Figure 3-4 Record Log File Selection

The Log feature records all data sent to the emulator from the host into a file on the PC.

File Name

Specifies the name of the log file where the data is recorded.

Append

If selected, the data recorded is appended to the end of an existing log file.

Overwrite Protection

When enabled, prompts for overwrite confirmation if the specified file already exists. This also applies when opening a log file from the command line.

Save button

Opens the log file and enables recording. To stop recording, click on **File - Stop Recording Log File**.

3.3.5 Replay Log File Selection

Click on **File - Replay Log File** to display the *Replay Log File Selection* dialog box.

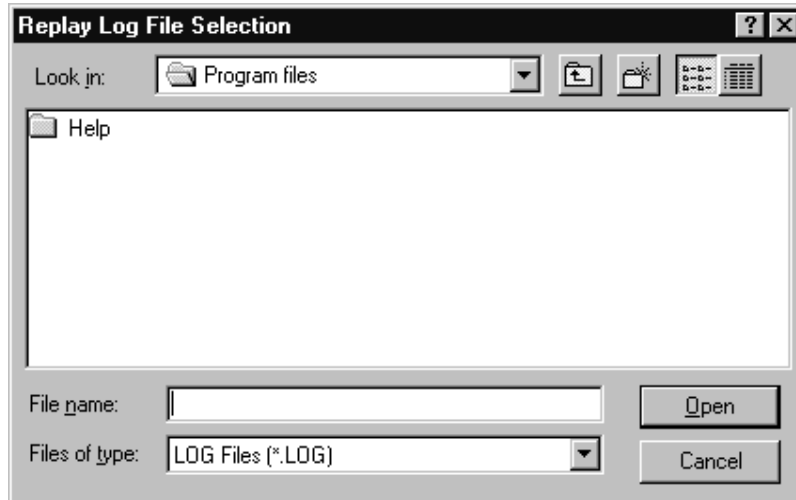


Figure 3-5 Replay Log File Selection

File Name

Select or enter the name of the log file to replay.

Open button

Replays the selected log file.

3.3.6 Receive

Click on **File - Receive** to display the *File Receive Selection* dialog box. Refer to Chapter 7 (File Transfer) in the online *Reference Manual* for detailed information on file transfer.

3.3.7 Send

Click on **File - Send** to display the *File Send Selection* dialog box. Refer to Chapter 7 (File Transfer) in the online *Reference Manual* for detailed information on file transfer.

3.3.8 Print

To enter the *Print* dialog box, click on **File - Print**.

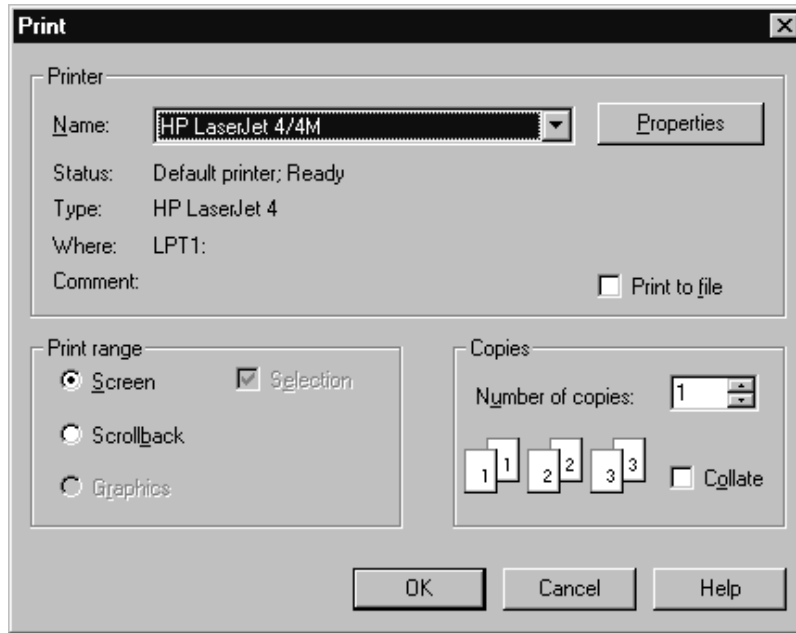


Figure 3-6 Print

Note: Changes made to this dialog box are not saved and are valid for the individual print cycle only.

Printer

Displays the name of the default printer. Click on the down arrow to select another installed printer.

Properties button

Click on this button to display the properties of the selected printer.

Print to File

When this box is enabled and **OK** is clicked, the *Print to File Selection* dialog box appears. Select or enter the name of the file. The default extension of .PRN is used.

Print Range

- Screen** Prints only the text on the screen.
- Scrollback** Prints the text on the screen and in scrollback.
- Selected** Prints only selected text. If no text is selected, this option is disabled.
- Graphics** Prints graphics. (VT340 mode only.)

Copies

Select the number of copies to print.

3.3.9 Page Setup

The *Page Setup* selects various options for the printer. Click on **File - Page Setup** to display the initial *Page Setup* dialog box.

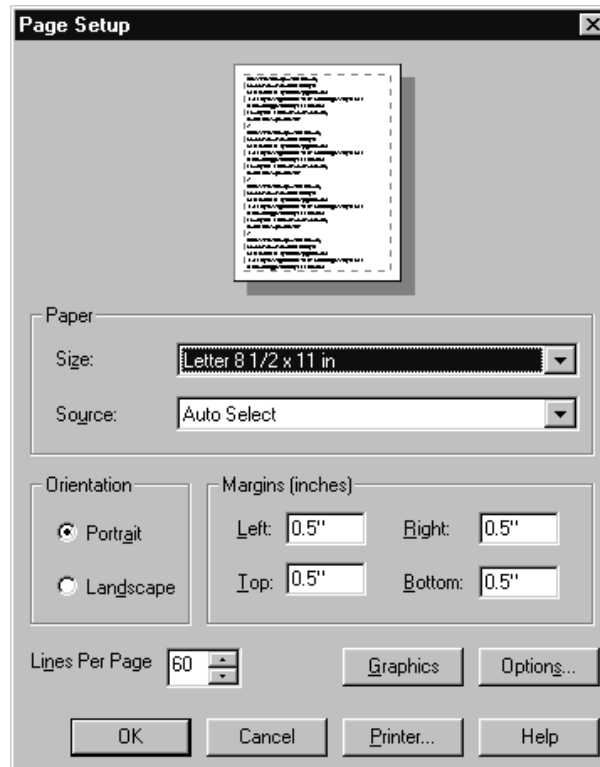


Figure 3-7 Page Setup

Note: Changes made to this dialog box are saved for all subsequent print operations.

Paper

Select the paper size and source.

Orientation

Select portrait or landscape printing mode.

Margins

Select the margins for the top, bottom, left and right sides of the page.

Lines Per Page

Select the number of lines to print per page.

Options... button

Displays the *Page Setup* options dialog box.

3.3.9.1 Page Setup Options

Click the **Options...** button in the *Page Setup* dialog box to display the *Page Setup* options dialog box.

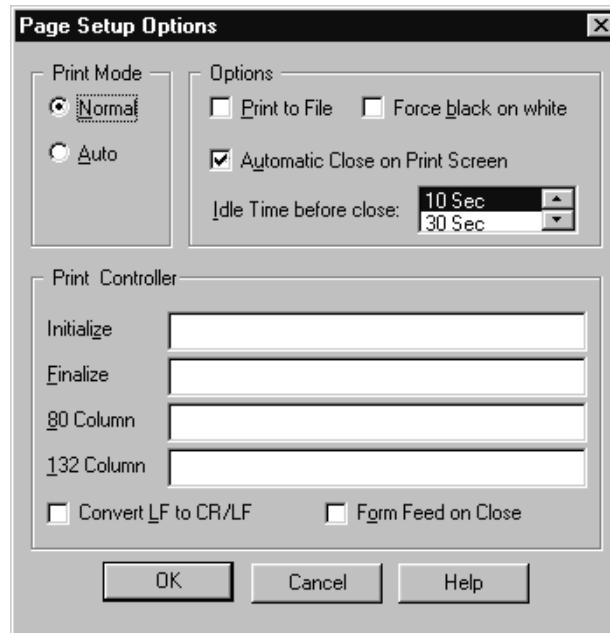


Figure 3-8 Page Setup Options

Print Mode

Normal Prints the entire contents of the screen.

Auto Sends each line of text displayed on the screen to the printer.

Options

Print to File

When this box is enabled and **OK** is clicked, the *Print to File Selection* dialog box appears. Select or enter the name of the file. The default extension of .PRN is used.

Force Black on White

This option forces the printer to reverse the printing from white text on a black background to black text on a white background.

Automatic Close on Print Screen

If checked, the printer is closed after each print screen. If this option is unchecked, the printer closes after the time specified by **Idle Time before Close** option.

Idle Time Before Close

The idle timer monitors the printer activity. When the host sends a message for the emulator to stop printing, the timer takes effect. When the timer expires, the emulator sends the **Finalize String**, closes the print job and ejects the page. The print job can be closed manually, before time runs out, by clicking the **Close Printer** button on the *Hold Toolbar*.

If the timer is set to manual, the **Close Printer** button must be used to close the print job.

Print Controller

These strings define the character strings that control various printer functions. Most printer control strings have an enable string that selects a printer feature and a disable string that deselects a printer feature.

The printer strings can include any ASCII control character. Refer to Appendix B (ASCII Control Code Table) in the online *Reference Manual* to locate the correct control character mnemonic.

Example: <ESC> <^O>(Esc S1)

Enables Condensed Print for the IBM ProPrinter. The Esc key is displayed as Ctrl [.

Initialization

The initialization string can be used to:

- /// Select a specific printer connected to a printer sharing device.
- /// Select a printer feature, such as condensed print, prior to sending the printer data.

This string is sent to the printer, at the beginning of printer output, when the print is initiated.

Finalize

The reset string is sent to the printer at the end of a print operation, and can be used to:

- /// Deselect a printer attached to a printer sharing device.
- /// Reset a printer feature that was enabled by the initialization string.

80 Column

This string is sent when the emulator is in 80 column mode. This string is sent when **Auto** print mode is selected or when the host initiates a printer mode.

132 Column

This string is sent when the emulator is in 132 column mode. This string is sent when **Auto** print mode is selected or when the host initiates a printer mode.

Table 3-1 Sample Condensed Print Escape Sequences

| Printer | Set String | Reset String |
|---------------------|---------------|--------------|
| Epson FX, MX, or LQ | <ESC><^O> | <^R> |
| HP LaserJet | <ESC>(s16.66H | <ESC>(s10H |
| IBM ProPrinter | <ESC><^O> | <^R> |

Form Feed on Close

If enabled, the printer is sent a form feed after every print screen.

Convert LF to CR/LF

If enabled, the printer is sent a carriage return in addition to each line feed it receives.

3.3.10 Exit

Exits the emulator, closes the application window, and disconnects all sessions.

3.4 HELP

The **Help** drop down menu lists the help options.



3.4.1 Index

Lists all help topics. Cross-referencing and searching is supported.

3.4.2 Using Help

Gives instructions on using *Windows Help*. See the *Microsoft Windows* documentation for more information.

3.4.3 About

3.4.3.1 General

Displays information such as the version number and release date of the emulator installed on your PC.

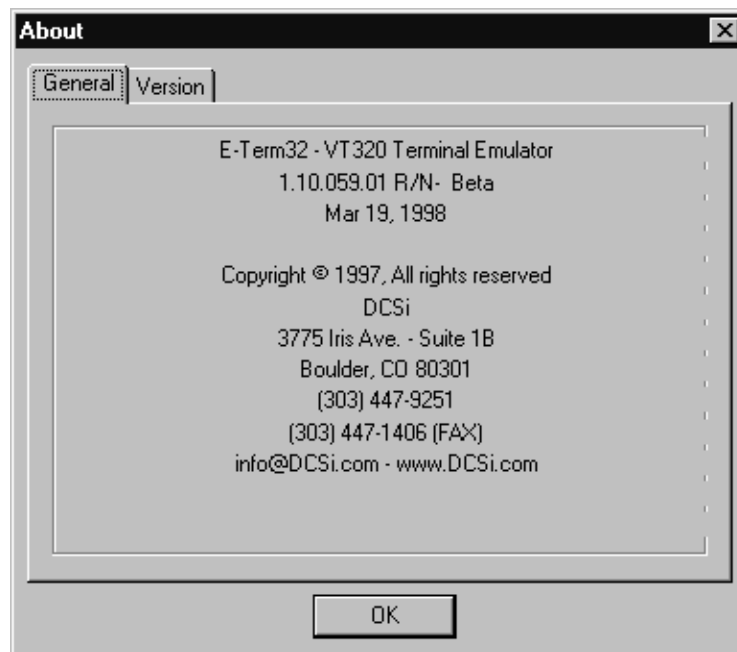


Figure 3-9 Help About General

3.4.3.2 Version

The *Version* tab displays the name, version and path to all the modules used by the emulator.

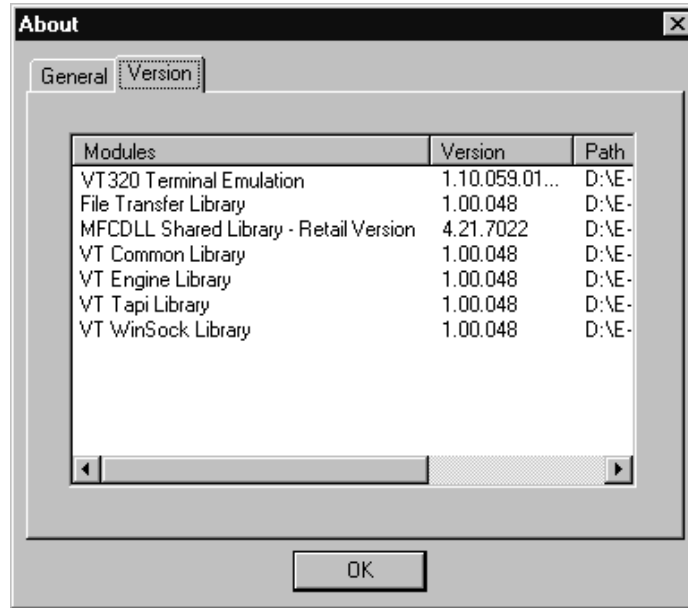


Figure 3-10 Help About Version

3.5 SETUP

The **Setup** menu lists the following categories that customize the emulator to your PC and host computer.



There are two Save options available.

- /// To save your selections immediately, click on **Save Now**.
- /// **Save on Exit** saves all configuration changes upon exiting the emulator. A checkmark indicates when this option is in effect.

3.5.1 Customizable Toolbars

The **Customizable Toolbars** feature is discussed in detail in Chapter 4 (Keyboard, Mouse and Toolbar).

3.5.2 Keyboard Mapper

The **Keyboard Mapper** is discussed in detail in Chapter 4 (Keyboard, Mouse and Toolbar).

3.5.3 Mouse Mapper

The **Mouse Mapper** is discussed in detail in Chapter 4 (Keyboard, Mouse and Toolbar).

3.5.4 File Transfer

The **File Transfer Setup** is discussed in detail in Chapter 6 (File Transfer) of the online *Reference Manual*.

3.5.5 General

The *General Settings* dialog box contains tabs for DDE, Directories and Log Replay. To display, click on **Setup - General**.

3.5.5.1 DDE

Click on **Setup - General** and then select the *DDE tab* to display the *DDE* dialog box.

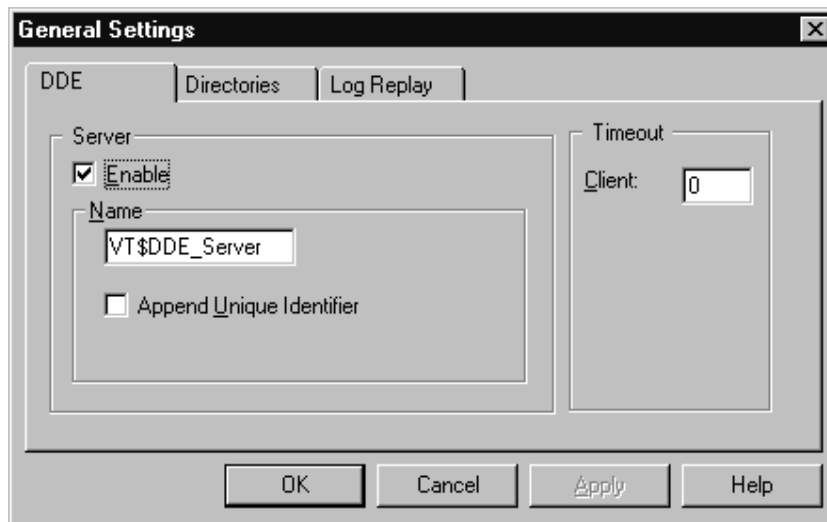


Figure 3-11 DDE

Server

Enable

Allows the emulator to act as a DDE Server. If disabled, the emulator ignores any attempt by another application to initiate a DDE conversation. This is helpful when running multiple instances, e.g., if a specific instance should be prevented from participating in a DDE conversation.

Name

The name that the emulator responds to as a DDE server. A client uses this name as the “Service Name” when performing a DDE connect transaction.

Append Unique Identifier

When enabled, appends a **Unique Identifier** to the end of the **Server Name**. This allows the execution of multiple instances of the emulator while still being able to distinguish them as servers.

Timeout

The amount of time, in seconds, that the emulator waits, after sending a message to the client, to receive an acknowledgment. An error occurs if the acknowledgment is not received within the specified time.

3.5.5.2 Directories

Click on **Setup - General** and then select the *Directories tab* to display the *Directories* dialog box.

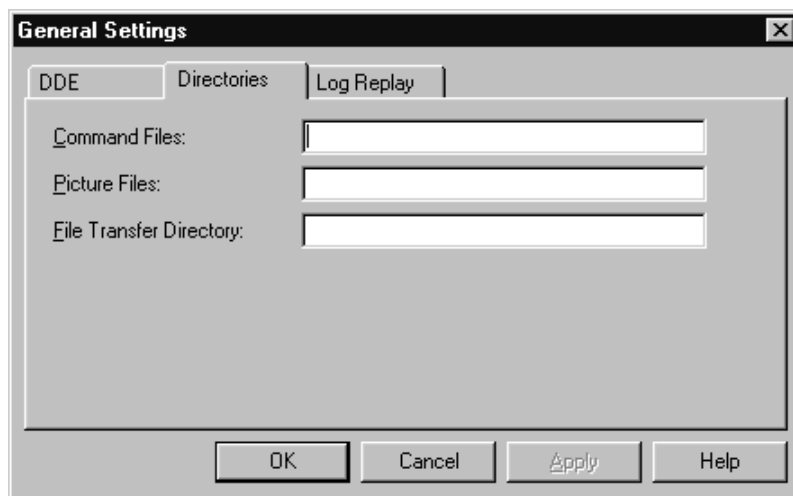


Figure 3-12 Directories

Command Files

Enter the directory paths containing command files that you wish to read from multiple locations. Separate each path name with a semi-colon.

Picture Files

(VT340 mode only.)

File Transfer Directory

Enter the directory path to be used for file transfers.

3.5.5.3 Log File Replay

Click on **Setup - General** and then select the *Log Replay* tab to display the *Log Replay* dialog box.

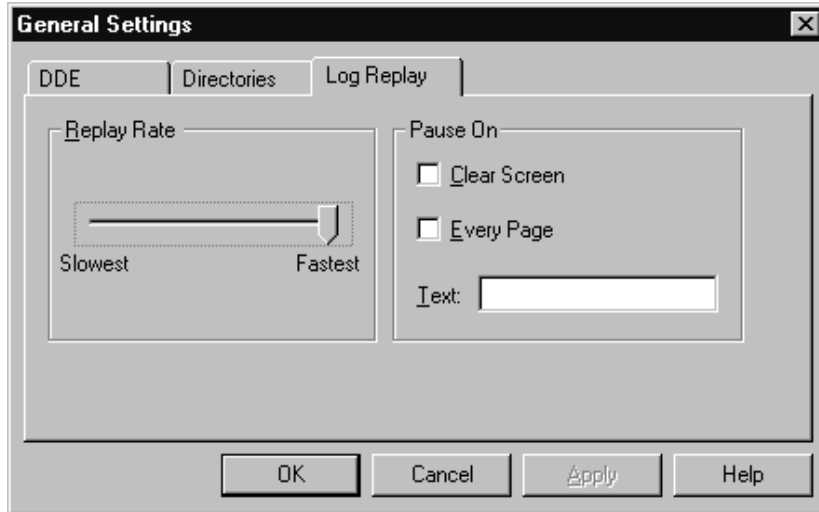


Figure 3-13 Log Replay

Replay Rate

Sets the rate of replay for log files. Incremented from slowest to fastest, the rates go from 300, 1100, 2400, 4800, 9600 to the maximum baud rate.

Pause On

Clear Screen

If enabled, causes the log file replay to pause each time the screen is cleared.

Every Page

If enabled, causes the log file replay to pause when a new page of text is scrolled onto the screen.

Text

This parameter is used to enter a comparison string. When the string is matched by data in the replay file, a replay pause occurs. The string can be up to 25 characters in length and can include control characters. To disable the comparison string, leave this field blank.

3.5.6 Terminal Setup

The *Terminal Setup* dialog box contains tabs for Display, Keyboard and the Terminal type.

3.5.6.1 Display

Click on **Setup - Terminal**, then select the *Display* tab. The *Display* setup dialog box appears.

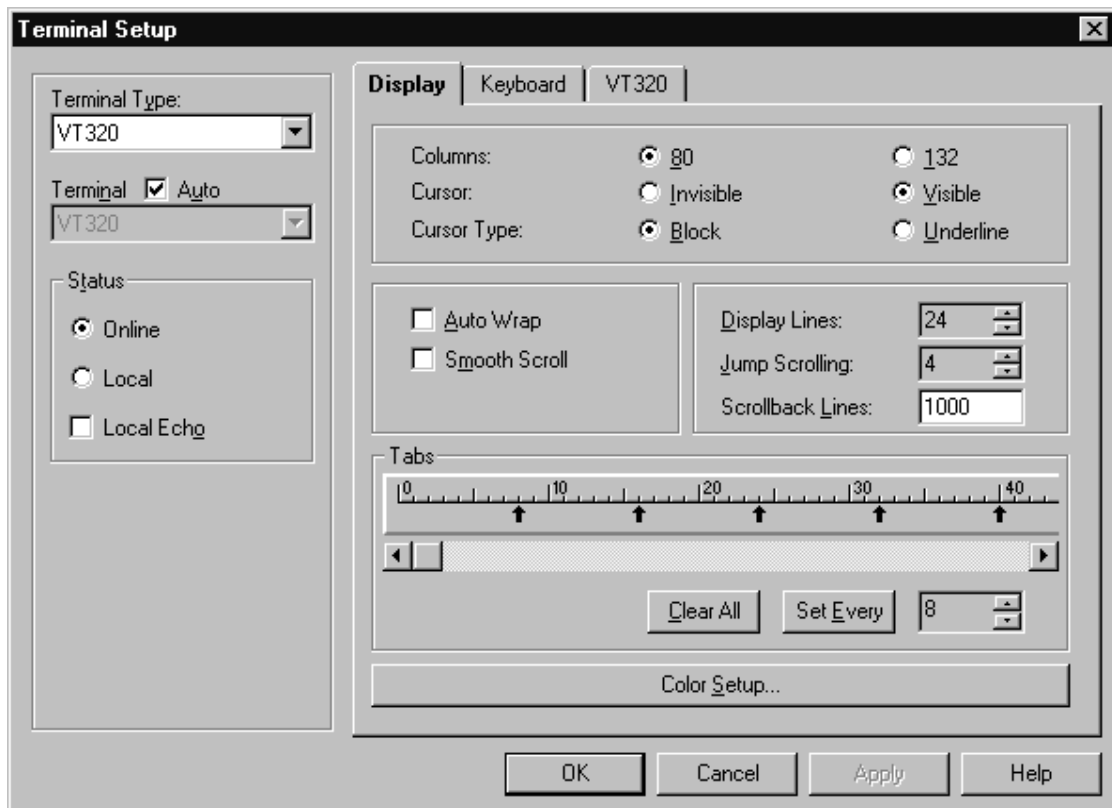


Figure 3-14 Display

Columns

Sets the display width to **80** or **132** columns. This option is typically controlled by the host.

Cursor

Selects a **visible** or **invisible** cursor.

Cursor Type

Selects a **block** or **underline** cursor.

Auto Wrap

Enables or disables **Auto Wrap**.

Disabled Characters written to the last column of the screen overwrite each other.

Enabled Wraps the next received character at the end of a full line to the beginning of the next line. Display lines are 80 or 132 columns, depending on the number of screen columns selected.

Smooth Scroll

Enables or disables smooth scrolling.

Display Lines

Selects the number of lines, from 24 through 48, that are displayed on the emulation screen.

Jump Scrolling

Determines the number of lines scrolled when updating the screen. Increasing the number of lines enables the screen to keep up with the data being received from the host.

Scrollback Lines

Sets the size of scrollback memory in lines. The maximum value is 10,000 lines.

Tabs

A small line represents each character of a 132 column line. To add a tab, click on the desired location. An arrow appears for each tab setting. To delete a tab, click on the location again and the arrow disappears.

Clear All button

Clears all tab settings.

Set Every button

Sets the tabs to every position indicated by the selected number.

3.5.6.1.1 Color Setup

Click the **Color Setup...** button in the *Display tab* to display the *Color Setup* dialog box.

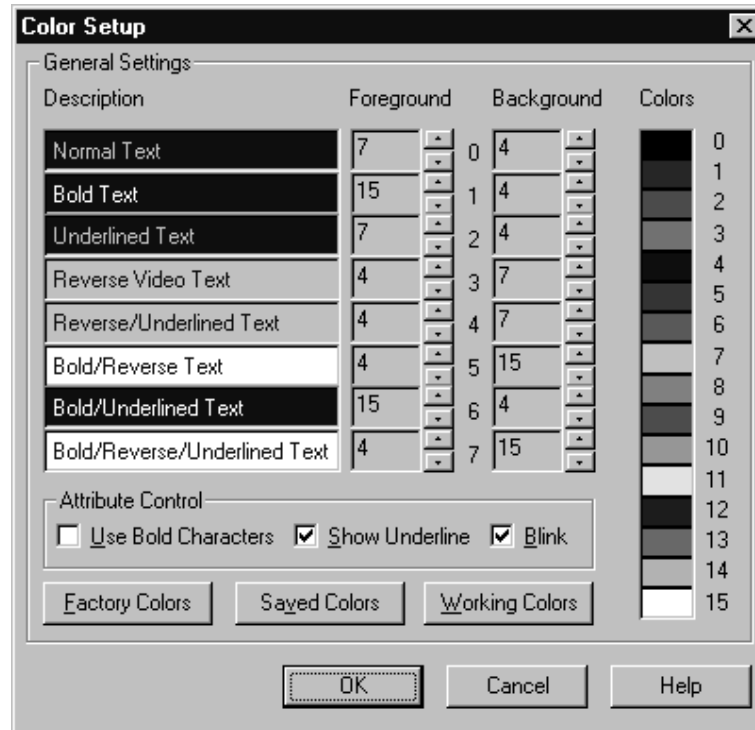


Figure 3-15 Color Setup

Description

Foreground and background colors can be selected for video text attributes such as bold, underline and reverse video, and the various combinations of these attributes.

To modify colors, select the foreground or background column of the video attribute. Click on the up or down arrow until the number matches the desired color displayed in the Colors palette. When colors are modified, existing text is unaffected. However, any new text or screen erase reflects the new selections.

Colors

The color palette shows the possible colors for text foreground and background.

Attribute Control

The following options affect both color and monochrome systems.

Use Bold Characters Bolds characters by increasing font width.

Show Underline Draws a line under the character.

Blink Blinks the character.

Factory Colors button

Clicking this button forces all color entries to the factory default colors.

Saved Colors button

At any time, the user can recall the last set of colors saved using the **Save Now** or **Save on Exit** options by clicking this button.

Working Colors button

Reverts to using the colors most recently selected in the dialog box that have not been saved using the **Save Now** or **Save on Exit** options.

3.5.6.2 Keyboard

Click on **Setup - Terminal**, then select the *Keyboard tab*. The *Keyboard* setup dialog box appears.



Figure 3-16 Keyboard

Keyboard Type

The emulator checks the system for the keyboard installed on the PC and displays a match for use with the emulator. Thus, the name may not reflect the actual keyboard name but is the appropriate configuration.

Margin/Warning Bells

- Margin Bell** If checked, the bell sounds when the cursor is eight columns from the end of the current line during keyboard input only.
- Warning Bell** If disabled, the emulator will not generate a bell tone for operating errors and receipt of a Ctrl G character.

Key Behavior

Backspace Key

- Delete** Sets the Backspace key to generate the delete (7F Hex) code and Shift Backspace to generate the backspace (08 Hex) code.
- Backspace** Sets the Backspace key to generate the backspace code and Shift Backspace to generate the delete code.

IBM Keypad (AT Keyboard only)

Uses the unshifted IBM keypad keys 2, 4, 6, and 8 (keypad arrow keys) as numeric keypad keys or arrow keys. If the NumLock key is activated, it will override this selection.

- Numeric** The keypad 2, 4, 6, and 8 keys generate the numeric key codes. The Shift 2, 4, 6, and 8 keys generate the arrow key codes.
- Arrows** The keypad 2, 4, 6, and 8 keys generate the arrow key codes. The Shift 2, 4, 6, and 8 keys generate the numeric key codes.

Return Key

Selects the characters sent to the host when the Return key is pressed.

- CR** Sends a carriage return to the host (normal setting).
- CR/LF** Sends a carriage return and line feed to the host.
- LF** Sends a line feed to the host.

Menu Bar Accelerator Key Operation

Specifies the operation of the accelerator keys.

- Off** If selected, Alt key combinations will not activate menu bar selections; you must use the mouse. All default emulator key definitions are available when this option is selected.
- Alt Key Only** Pressing and releasing the Alt key moves the cursor up to the menu bar. The arrow keys or the underlined letter can then be used to select the option of interest.
- Alt Key Plus Letter Key** Pressing the Alt key plus the underlined letter of the menu bar option displays the associated drop down menu or dialog box. Also enables Alt Key Only.

3.5.6.2.1 Default Enhanced Keyboard Key Assignments

When accelerator keys are enabled, some Alt keys are reserved to access the menu bar. To prevent this, the Accelerator Keys must be disabled.

Table 3-2 Emulator Functions - Enhanced

| Emulator Token | Key |
|----------------|-------------|
| ABORT | Alt A |
| BREAK | Alt B |
| CMD | Alt C |
| DEBUG | Alt ` |
| DROP_DTR | Alt D |
| ESC | Escape |
| KERMIT | Alt K |
| LONG BREAK | Alt Shift B |
| LOG | Alt L |
| REPLAY | Alt ; |

Table 3-3 VT320 Functions - Enhanced

| VT320 Token | Key |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| PF1 | Num Lock |
| PF2 | Keypad Slash |
| PF3 | Keypad Asterisk |
| PF4 | Keypad Minus |
| KP0 - KP9 | Keypad 0 - 9 |
| KP COMMA | Pause |
| KP ENTER | Keypad Enter |
| KP MINUS | Keypad Plus |
| KP PERIOD | Keypad Period |
| DO | Scroll Lock |
| FIND | Insert |
| INSERT HERE | Home |
| NEXT SCREEN | Page Down |
| PREVIOUS SCREEN | End |
| REMOVE | Page Up |
| SELECT | Delete |
| VT HELP | F5 |
| UP ARROW | Up Arrow |
| DOWN ARROW | Down Arrow |
| LEFT ARROW | Left Arrow |
| RIGHT ARROW | Right Arrow |
| BACKSPACE | Shift Backspace |
| COMPOSE | Alt ESC |
| DELETE | Backspace |
| HOLD SCREEN | F1 |
| LINE FEED | Shift Enter |
| PRTAUTO | Alt F2 |
| PRTSCR | F2 |
| UDK6 - UDK12 | Shift F6 - F12 |
| UDK13 - UDK20 | Alt Shift F3 - F10 |
| VTF6 - VTF12 | F6 - F12 |
| VTF13 -VTF20 | Alt F3 - F10 |
| F4 | VTF14 |
| F5 | VTF15 (Help) |
| Alt F6-Alt F10 | VTF16-VTF20 |

3.5.6.2.2 Default AT Keyboard Key Assignments

When accelerator keys are enabled, some Alt keys are reserved to access the menu bar. To prevent this, the Accelerator Keys must be disabled.

Table 3-4 Emulator Functions - AT

| Emulator Token | Key |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| ABORT | Alt A |
| BREAK | Alt B |
| CMD | Alt C |
| DEBUG | Alt F10 |
| DROP_DTR | Alt D |
| ESC | F2 |
| KERMIT | Alt K |
| LONG BREAK | Alt Shift B |
| LOG | Alt L |
| REPLAY | Alt ; |
| SCRBCK | Alt S |

Table 3-5 VT320 Functions - AT

| VT320 Token | Key |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| PF1 | Esc |
| PF2 | Num Lock |
| PF3 | Scroll Lock |
| PF4 | Sys Req |
| KP0 - KP9 | Keypad 0 - 9 |
| KP COMMA | Keypad Minus |
| KP ENTER | Keypad Plus |
| KP MINUS | PrtSc |
| KP PERIOD | Keypad Period |
| DO | Alt Scroll Lock |
| FIND | Alt Keypad 7 |
| INSERT HERE | Alt Keypad 8 |
| NEXT SCREEN | Alt Keypad 6 |
| PREVIOUS SCREEN | Alt Keypad 5 |
| REMOVE | Alt Keypad 9 |
| SELECT | Alt Keypad 4 |
| VT HELP | Alt Num Lock |
| UP ARROW | Shift Keypad 8 or F5 |
| DOWN ARROW | Shift Keypad 2 or F6 |
| LEFT ARROW | Shift Keypad 4 or F7 |
| RIGHT ARROW | Shift Keypad 6 or F8 |
| BACKSPACE | Shift Del |
| COMPOSE | Alt F1 |
| DELETE | Del |
| HOLD SCREEN | F1 |
| LINE FEED | Shift Return or F4 |
| PRTAUTO | Alt F4 |
| PRTSCR | F4 |
| UDK6 - UDK10 | Alt Shift 6 - 0 |
| UDK11 - UDK20 | Alt Shift Q - P |
| VTF6 - VTF10 | Alt 6 - 0 |
| VTF11 - VTF20 | Alt Q - P |

3.5.6.3 Terminal Tabs

Click on **Setup - Terminal**. Select a **Terminal Type**, then click on the corresponding Terminal tab.

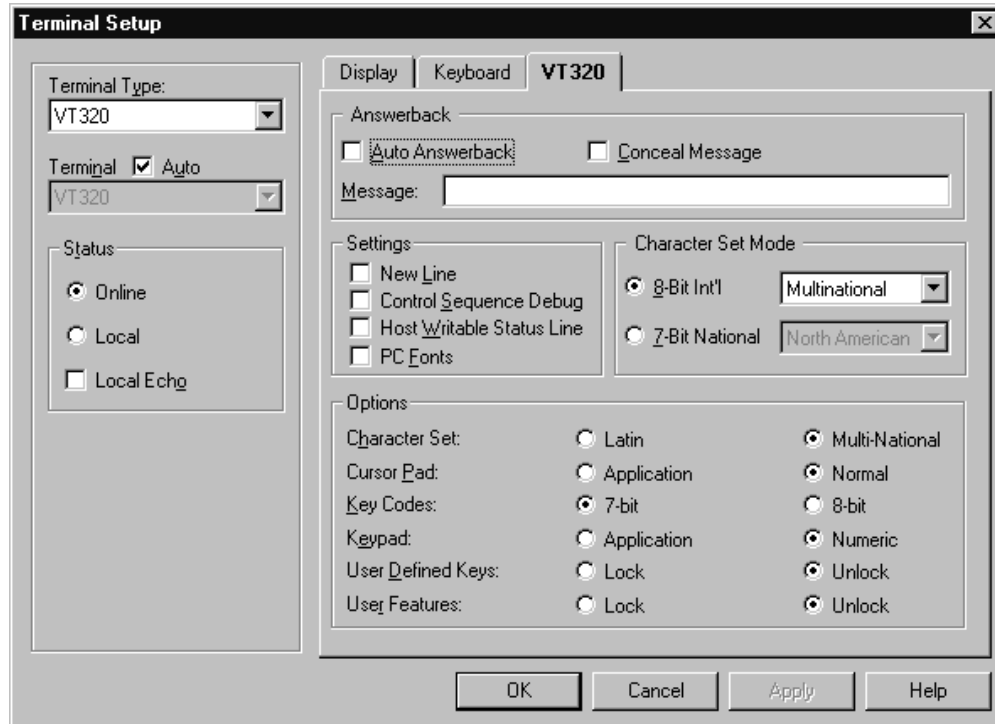


Figure 3-17 Terminal

Terminal Type/Terminal ID

- VT320** Emulates a DEC VT320 terminal. In this mode all 7 and 8-bit control sequences are interpreted and multinational characters are displayed. This mode is recommended for combined VT102/220/320 operation as it offers VT100 compatibility and provides all the VT320 features.
- VT220** Emulates a DEC VT220 terminal. When VT220 is selected, the terminal identifies itself as a VT220 instead of a VT320.
- VT102** Emulates the DEC VT102 and identifies itself as a VT102 terminal to the host. All VT102 control sequences are emulated. This mode is recommended for VT100 emulation.
- VT100** Emulates the VT102 terminal. However, it identifies itself as a VT100 with AVO and a printer. This mode is for use with programs that require the VT100 identification sequence. All VT102 control sequences are emulated in this mode.
- VT52** Emulates the older DEC VT52 terminal.
- SCOANSI** SCO ANSI is a blend of VT, ANSI color, and extensions limited to hosts running SCO. The emulator interprets the control sequences sent by the host running SCO.
- BBSANSI** Displays the ANSI characters and color sequences which are generally available through bulletin board services.

Status

Selects **Online** or **Local** mode.

Online Allows the emulator to communicate with the host system. This is the default setting.

Local The emulator does not send data to the host or process data received from the host.

Local Echo Sends the data transmitted to the host computer to the PC screen. Enable **Local Echo** when communicating with half-duplex computer systems.

3.5.6.3.1 Terminal Tab Options

Note: All the options below are found on the VT320 tab, but since each Terminal Type is different, these options will vary, depending on the selected terminal.

Answerback

Auto Answerback

Enables or disables (default) the sending of the **Answerback Message** automatically when a communication connection is established. When using **serial** communications, **Modem Control** must be enabled if **Auto Answerback** is enabled.

Conceal Message

If selected, the **Answerback Message** is not displayed on the screen. Instead, “<Concealed>” appears. Once an **Answerback Message** is concealed, it can only be made visible by entering a new message.

Message

The **Answerback Message** is sent on receipt of an ENQ code, clicking **Execute - Send Answerback**, or entering the SEND ANSWERBACK command. It is generally used as a security measure by host computer systems to identify certain terminals or users.

Settings

New Line

Sends a carriage return and line feed to the host. If a line feed is received from the host, a carriage return is added.

Control Sequence Debug

This mode is a substitute for VT320 Display Controls mode.

When debug mode is enabled, and **DEBUG** (default is Alt ‘) is pressed, VT320 control sequences display on the bottom line of the screen before they are executed. Pressing any key executes the sequence. Press **DEBUG** again to allow control sequences to execute without displaying.

Host Writable Status Line

If enabled, this option allows the host program to write information to the bottom line of the screen.

PC Fonts

Uses the IBM PC character set which includes line drawing characters.

Character Set

8-Bit Int'l Selects the DEC Multinational or the Korean character set.

7-Bit National Selects the 7-bit National Replacement Character Set. Refer to the *National Replacement Character* topic for more information.

Options

Character Set

Selects **DEC Multinational (default)** or **ISO Latin-1** as the DEC Supplemental character set.

Cursor Pad

Allows manual control of the codes generated by the VT320 cursor pad. The cursor pad is normally controlled by the host computer.

If **Normal** is selected the code for the arrows printed on the keys is generated. If **Application** is selected, the emulator generates control sequences used by application programs.

Key Codes

7-bit Sends 7-bit control sequences to the host, but still interprets 8-bit control sequences and characters.

8-bit Eight-bit control sequences are transmitted to the host computer by the emulator.

VT320 8-bit mode is not a communication setting. It is an operating environment. To select 8-bit communications, configure the emulator to 8 data bits and no parity.

Keypad

Allows manual control of the codes generated by the keypad. This is normally controlled by the host.

If **Numeric** is selected the numeric values printed on the keys are generated. If **Application** is selected the emulator generates control sequences used by application programs.

User Defined Keys (UDKs)

Locks or unlocks the user-defined keys.

Lock Locking the keys prevents downloading and protects the current key contents. UDKs can be locked by the host system but can only be unlocked through the setup menu.

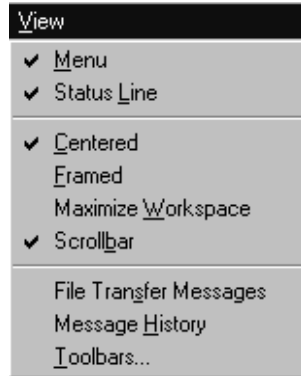
Unlock When unlocked, the host system can download the function keys with user-defined strings.

User Features

Locks or unlocks the user preference features. If locked, the emulator ignores control sequences that affect the user preference features. Slow/fast scroll and normal/reverse screen are considered user preference features.

3.6 VIEW

The **View** menu options affect the look of the emulation window.



3.6.1 Menu

Toggles the display of the menu bar.

3.6.2 Status Line

Toggles the display of the status line on the bottom of the emulation window.

3.6.3 Centered

If checked, centers the emulation window. Otherwise, the window is left-justified.

3.6.4 Framed

If checked, places a frame around the emulation window. Otherwise, the window is unframed.

3.6.5 Maximize Workspace

Toggles the Maximize Workspace mode on and off. When the workspace is maximized, the status line, menu bar and toolbars are hidden. A checkmark indicates that this option is in effect. For more information on how the Maximize Workspace feature works, refer to the Maximize Workspace topic in Chapter 2.

3.6.6 Scrollbar

Toggles the display of the scrollbar.

3.6.7 File Transfer Messages

Toggles the display of the File Transfer Messages window.

3.6.8 Message History

Toggles the display of the *Message History* window.

3.6.9 Toolbars

The display of the Toolbars is controlled in the *Toolbars* dialog box. Click on **View - Toolbars** to select the toolbars to display.

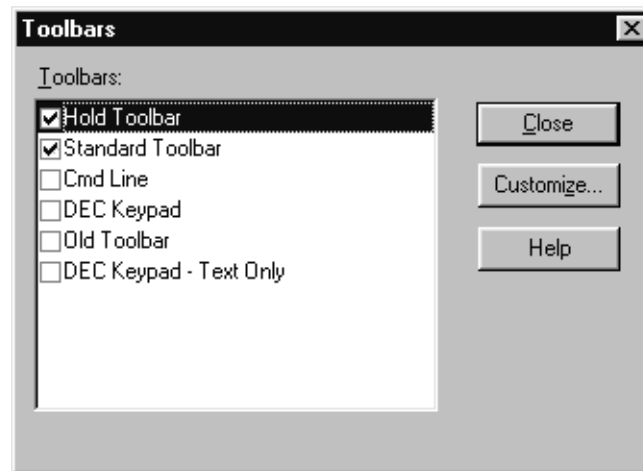


Figure 3-18 Toolbars

Toolbars

This window contains a list of available toolbars. To select or deselect, click on the white box to the left of each name, then click Close.

3.6.9.1 Default Toolbar Descriptions

The figure below shows the default Toolbar buttons and their functions.

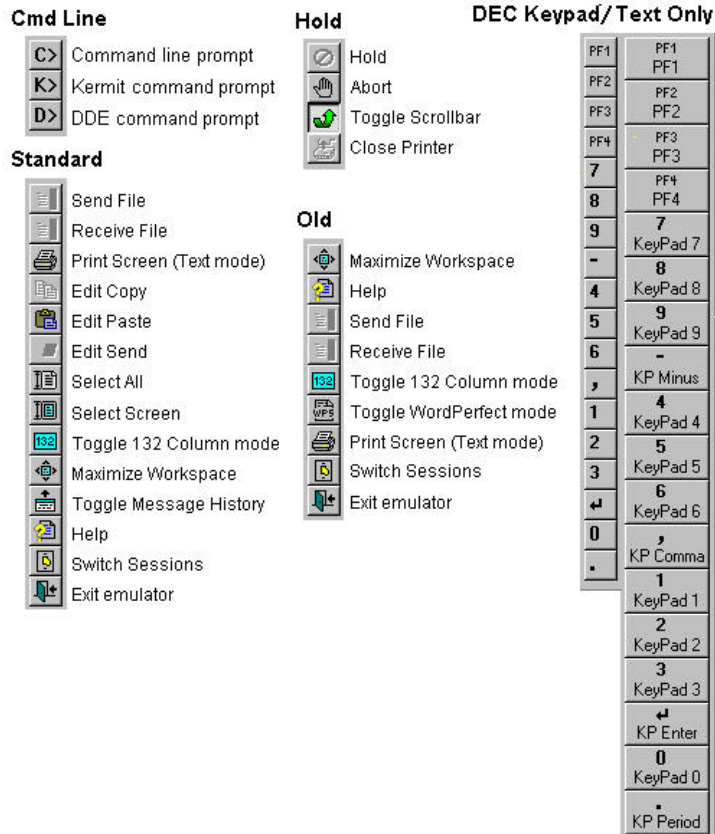


Figure 3-19 Toolbars



CHAPTER 4 **KEYBOARD, MOUSE & TOOLBAR**

OVERVIEW

The operation of the emulator can be customized using the Keyboard and Mouse mappers and the Customize Toolbars feature. Keystrokes and mouse clicks can be assigned to a wide variety of functions through these simple, easy-to-use mappers. Toolbar buttons and toolbars can be created to suit individual preferences.

4.1 KEYBOARD MAPPING

Through the *Keyboard Mapping* dialog box, the keyboard can be configured to perform many different functions. An individual key can be defined to send a string, a command, execute a command file, access a help file, and more. The emulator provides some default keymaps whose definitions can be edited, but not deleted.

To configure the keyboard, click on **Setup - Keyboard Mapper**. The *Keyboard Mapping* dialog box appears.

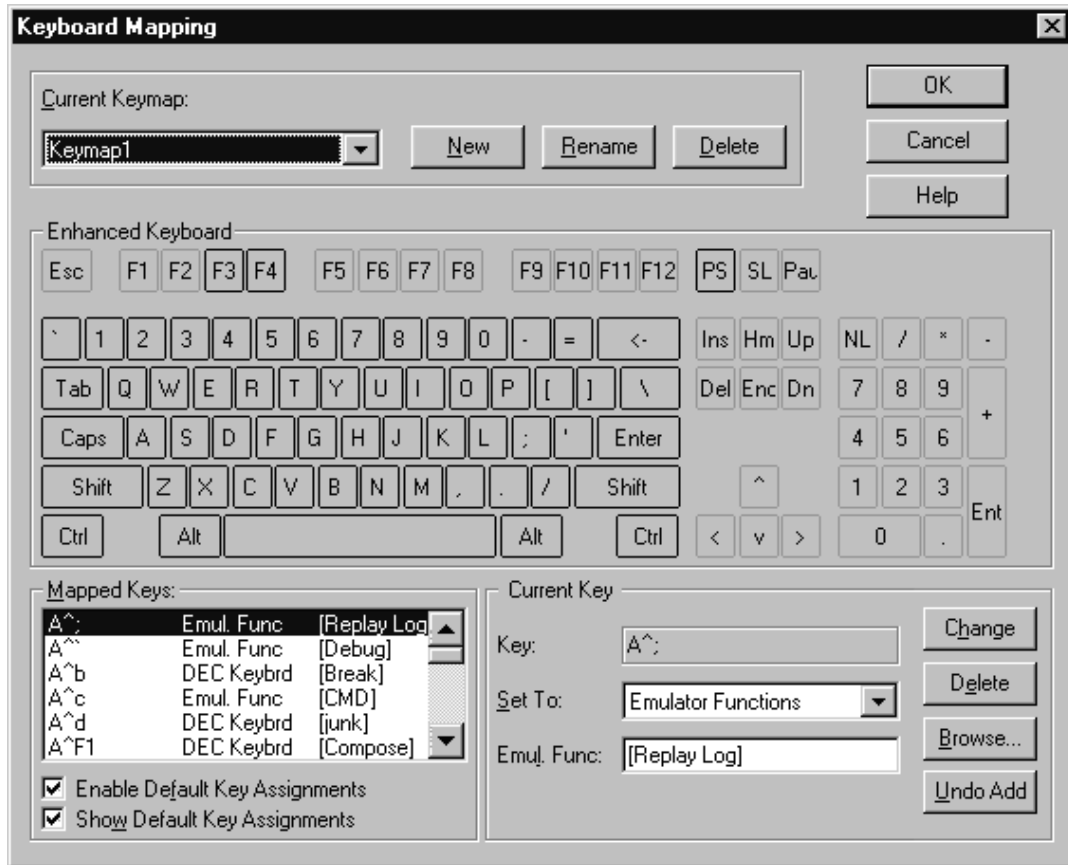


Figure 4-1 Keyboard Mapping

Current Keymap

Displays the name of the current keymap. You can select another keymap from the drop down list if available, or create a **New** keymap.

Mapped Keys

Displays a list of mapped keys with their definitions for both the default and current keymaps.

Current Key

Displays the currently highlighted key and its definition.

Enable Default Ket Assignments

Disables the default definitions of the keys. Each predefined key definition is then set to UNMAPPED.

Show Default Key Assignments

Toggles the display of the key definitions in the Mapped Keys window. This option does not disable the definitions which will still display in the **Current Key** section.

4.1.1 Creating a New Key Map

The top of the dialog box contains a section that deals with the keymaps as whole entities. The name of the current keyboard map is listed in the **Current Keymap** list box.

New button

When clicked, the *New Key Map* dialog box appears. Enter a new Key Map name, then click **OK**.



Figure 4-2 New Key Map

Rename button

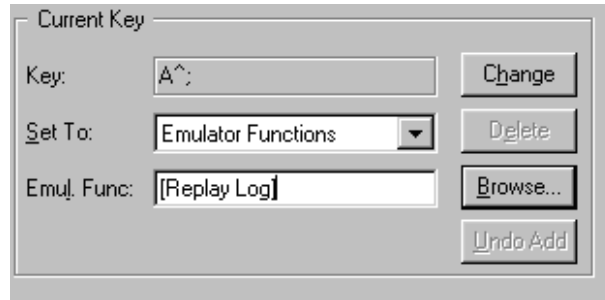
When clicked, the *New Key Map* dialog box appears. Change the Key Map name, then click **OK**.

Delete button

Deletes the currently selected Key Map.

4.1.2 Defining a Key

Key definitions are set in the **Current Key** section. Note that predefined keys displayed on the online keyboards are outlined in green, while user-defined keys are outlined in blue.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Current Key". It has four main input areas: "Key:" with a text box containing "A^", "Set To:" with a dropdown menu showing "Emulator Functions", "Emul. Func:" with a text box containing "[Replay Log]", and a "Browse..." button. To the right of each input area is a button: "Change" for the Key field, "Delete" for the Set To dropdown, and "Browse..." for the Emul. Func field. At the bottom right is an "Undo Add" button.

To define a key to perform a specific function:

- 1) Using the mouse, click on the desired keys in the order they should be pressed. For example, to map the following keystroke, **Alt+Shift+F1**, click the Alt key, then the Shift key, followed by the F1 key. The sequence displays in the **Current Key - Key** field as follows:

KEY: **A^S^F1**

Any combination of Alt, Shift, and Ctrl can be used. Note however, that these keys will always display in the Key field in the order A^, S^, and C^.

- 2) Select a function for the keystroke from the Set To list. The following Set To options are available:

Command

Defines a single ECL command to be executed when the key is pressed. Enter a valid command in the **Command** field. Refer to Chapter 7 (Command Language) in the online *Reference Manual* for more information.

Example: Command: **ERASE SCREEN**
Erases the screen when the key is pressed.

Example: Command: **DISPLAY "HELLO THERE"**
Displays **HELLO THERE** at the current cursor position.

Command File

Specifies the execution of a command file. Enter the path name of a command file in the **CMD File** field or click **Browse** to display the *Command File Selection* dialog box. Select a command file then click **OK**. See Chapter 8 (Command File Programming) in the online *Reference Manual* for more information.

DEC Keyboard

Perform a DEC keyboard function. Enter a valid name in the **DEC Keybrd** field or click **Browse** and select a function from the list. The following options are available:

Table 4-1 DEC Keyboard

| DEC Keyboard | Name | Function |
|--------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Arrow Keys | UP ARROW | Up arrow |
| | DOWN ARROW | Down arrow |
| | LEFT ARROW | Left arrow |
| | RIGHT ARROW | Right arrow |
| Edit Pad | FIND | Find |
| | INSERT HERE | Insert here |
| | NEXT SCREEN | Next screen |
| | PREV SCREEN | Previous screen |
| | REMOVE | Remove |
| | SELECT | Select |
| | F6 - F20 | F6 - F14 |
| F15 | | Help |
| F16 | | Do |
| F17 - F20 | | F17 - F20 |
| Keypad | PF1 - PF4 | PF1 - PF4 |
| | 0 - 9 | Keypad 0 - 9 |
| | COMMA | Keypad comma |
| | MINUS | Keypad minus |
| | PERIOD | Keypad period |
| | ENTER | Keypad enter |
| | Printing | PRINT AUTO |
| PRINT CLOSE | | Close the printer |
| PRINT CONTINUOUS | | Continuous print mode |
| PRINT CONTROLLER | | Controller print mode |
| PRINT SCREEN | | Print contents of the screen |
| User Defined Keys | UDK1 - UDK20 | UDK 1-20 |
| Other | BACKSPACE | Backspace |
| | BREAK | Send a short break |
| | BREAK (Long) | Send a long break |
| | COMPOSE | Compose |
| | DELETE | Delete |
| | DROP_DTR | Drops DTR for 2 seconds |
| | ESCAPE | Escape |
| | HOLD SCREEN | Hold screen |
| | LINE FEED | Line feed |
| | NULL | Null |
| | SEND ANSWERBACK | Log File |

Edit/Paste

Performs an edit/paste function. Enter a valid name in the **Edit/Paste** field or click **Browse** and select from the list. The following functions are available:

Table 4-2 Edit/Paste

| Edit/Paste | Function |
|-------------------|---|
| Copy | Copy selected text to Clipboard. |
| Paste | Paste information from Clipboard. |
| Send | Send selected text to host. |
| Select All | Select the current screen and all the scrollbar data. |
| Select Screen | Select all the text on the screen. |

Emulator Functions

Executes a VT key or emulator function. Enter a valid name in the **Emul. Func.** field or click **Browse** and select from the list. The following functions are available:

Table 4-3 Emulator Functions

| Name | Function |
|-------------------|--|
| 80/132 | Toggles between 80 and 132 column modes. |
| Abort | Performs an abort of a file transfer or command execution. |
| CMD Prompt | Displays the command prompt. |
| Command Messages | Toggles the display of the Command Messages window. |
| DDE Prompt | Displays the DDE command prompt. |
| Debug | Debug on/off. |
| Exit | Exits the emulator. |
| File Messages | Toggles the display of the File Transfer Message window. |
| File Receive | Opens the File Transfer Receive dialog box. |
| File Send | Opens the File Transfer Send dialog box. |
| Help | Opens the help file. |
| Kermit Prompt | Displays the Kermit command prompt. |
| KP Numeric Toggle | Keypad Numeric toggle. |
| KP-Set Numeric | Keypad top numeric mode. |
| KP-Set Function | Keypad top function mode. |
| Log Record | Record a log file. |
| Log Replay | Replay a log file. |
| Max Workspace | Maximizes the workspace. |
| Scrollbar | Enables or disables the display of scrollbars for scrollbar. |
| Switch Session | Switches to the next instance of the emulator (if any). |
| VT Mode | Switches to VT terminal mode. |
| WordPerfect | Toggles between normal and WordPerfect modes. |
| 4014 Mode | Switches to Tek 4014 mode (Tektronix only). |

Help File

Launches a help file. Enter the path name of a help file in the **Help File** field or click **Browse** to display the *Help File Selection* dialog box. Select a help file, then click **OK**.

Nothing

Ignores any key action (disables the key definition). Nothing can be entered in the **Nothing** field.

String

Defines a string to be sent to the host. A simple ASCII string can be entered in the **String** field. To enter special characters, enclose the ASCII value in angle brackets < >. Refer to the *Special Characters* topic and Appendix B (ASCII Control Table) in the online *Reference Manual* for more information.

Examples: String: <027>OP or String: <ESC>OP

Both examples send the escape sequence **Control [OP** (^[OP).

String:<<BELL>>

Sends <BELL>. Double angle brackets prevent conversion to numeric values.

String:<%x44>

Converts the string from its Hex value to **D**.

Unmapped

The default setting for unmapped keys. Nothing can be entered in the **Unmapped** field.

- 3) When you are satisfied with the key combination, click the **Add** button. The key definition displays in the **Mapped Keys** list box, and the keystroke combination is highlighted in blue.

If at any time while defining a key you wish to make changes, click the **Undo** button.

- 4) Save the Key Map by clicking the **OK** button.

4.1.3 Changing a Key Definition

To change the existing configuration for the currently selected keystroke.

- 1) Select the key definition to change.
- 2) Set to the desired function.
- 3) Click the **Change** button

Note: Be sure to click the **Add** or **Change** button before selecting another key definition from the keyboard map, otherwise all changes to the current keystroke will be lost.

4.1.4 Deleting a Key Definition

To delete a key definition:

- 1) Select the key definition to delete.
- 2) Click the **Delete** button.

Note: Predefined (default) keys can be edited and redefined, but can never be deleted. If you delete the user-defined definition, it will revert to the default definition.

4.2 MOUSE MAPPING

Through the *Mouse Mapping* dialog box, mouse buttons can be configured to perform many functions such as sending a string, a command, a mouse position report, a command file, perform emulator functions, and more.

Mouse clicks are only redefined while the mouse cursor is in the emulation window. If the mouse cursor is moved outside of the emulation window, the mouse buttons perform their normal *Windows* functions.

To enter the *Mouse Mapping* dialog box, click on **Setup - Mouse Mapper**.

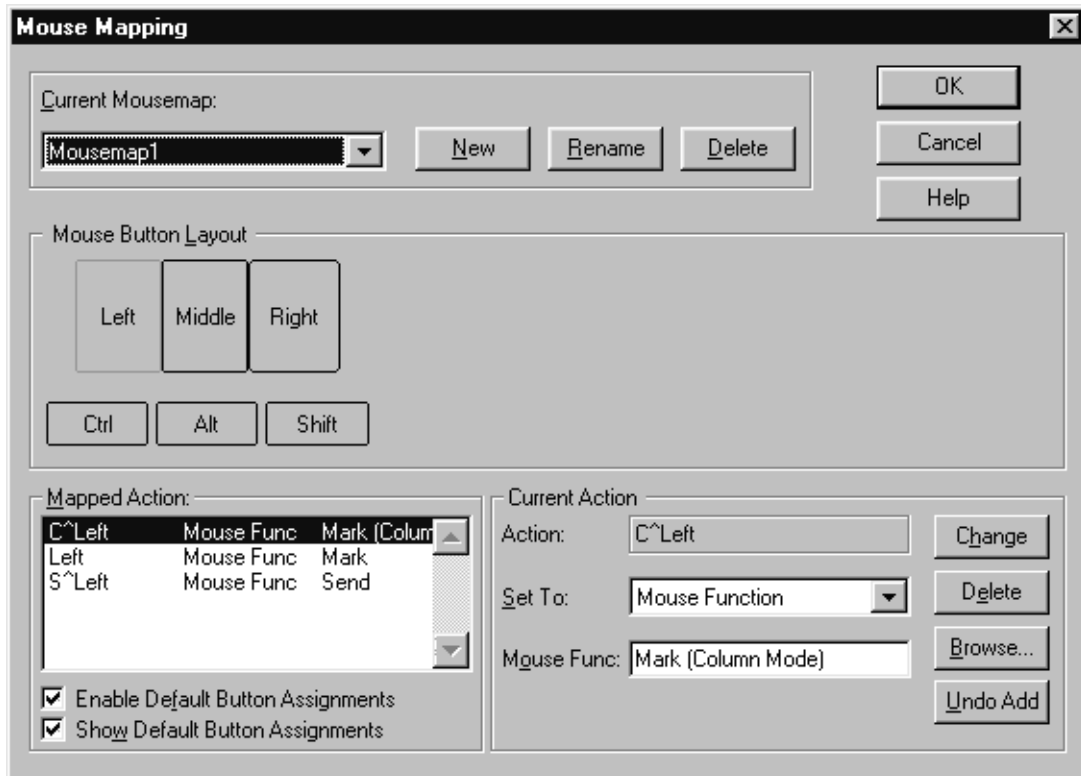


Figure 4-3 Mouse Mapping

Current Mousemap

Displays the name of the current mousemap. You can select another mousemap from the drop down list if available, or create a **New** mousemap.

Mapped Action

Displays a list of mapped mouse buttons with their definitions for both the default and current mousemaps.

Current Action

Displays the currently highlighted mouse button and its definition.

Enable Default Button Assignments

Disables the default definitions of the mouse buttons. Each predefined mouse button is then set to UNMAPPED.

Show Default Button Assignments

Toggles the display of the mouse button definitions in the **Mapped Action** window. This option does not disable the definitions which will still display in the Set To field.

4.2.1 Creating a New Mouse Map

The top of the dialog box contains a section that deals with the mouse maps as whole entities. The name of the current mouse map is listed in the **Current Keymap** list box.

New button

Creates a new mouse map. When this button is clicked, the *Mouse Map Name* dialog box appears.



Figure 4-4 New Mouse Map

Rename button

Used to change the current mouse map's name. When clicked, this button displays the *Mouse Map Name* dialog box. Change the mouse map's name, then click **OK**.

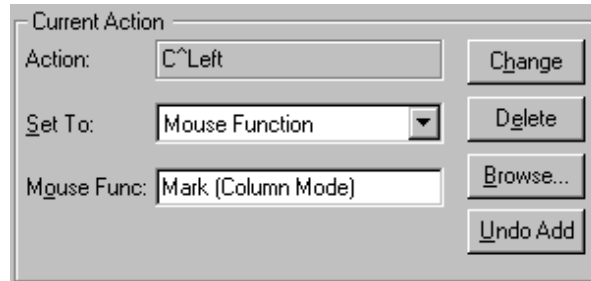
Delete button

Deletes the currently selected mouse map.

Note: The New, Rename, and Delete operations cannot be undone by clicking the **Cancel** button.

4.2.2 Defining a Mouse Button

Mouse button definitions are set in the Current Action section. Note that predefined mouse buttons displayed on the Mouse Button Layout are outlined in green, while user-defined keys are outlined in blue.



The image shows a dialog box titled "Current Action". It has four main input fields and four buttons. The "Action:" field contains the text "C^Left". To its right is a "Change" button. The "Set To:" field is a dropdown menu currently showing "Mouse Function". To its right is a "Delete" button. The "Mouse Func:" field contains the text "Mark (Column Mode)". To its right are two buttons: "Browse..." and "Undo Add".

To define a mouse button to perform a specific function:

- 1) Using the mouse, click on the desired mouse button and Alt, Shift, or Control if desired. For example, to map the following mouse button, **Alt+Right Button**, click the Alt key followed by Right. The sequence displays in the **Current Action - Action** field as follows:

ACTION: A^Right

Any combination of Alt, Shift, and Ctrl can be used. Note however, that these keys will always display in the **Action:** field in the order C^, A^, and S^.

Mouse buttons that are shown with a colored border are predefined and display in the **Mapped Action** window.

- 2) Select a function for the mouse button from the **Set To** list. The following **Set To** options are available:

Command

Defines a single ECL command to be executed when the mouse button is pressed. Enter a valid command in the **Command** field. Refer to Chapter 7 (Command Language) in the online *Reference Manual* for more information.

Example: Command: **ERASE SCREEN**

Erases the screen when the mouse button is pressed.

Example: Command: **SAVE C:\EMULATOR\SETTING3**

Saves the current settings to SETTING3.CNF in the \EMULATOR directory.

Command File

Specifies the execution of a command file. Enter the path name of a command file in the **CMD File** field or click **Browse** to display the *Command File Selection* dialog box. Select a command file then click **OK**. See Chapter 8 (Command File Programming) in the online *Reference Manual* for more information.

DEC Keyboard

Perform a DEC keyboard function. Enter a valid name in the **DEC Keybrd** field or click **Browse** and select a function from the list. The following options are available:

Table 4-4 DEC Keyboard

| DEC Keyboard | Name | Function |
|--------------------------|------------------|------------------------------|
| Arrow Keys | UP ARROW | Up arrow |
| | DOWN ARROW | Down arrow |
| | LEFT ARROW | Left arrow |
| | RIGHT ARROW | Right arrow |
| Edit Pad | FIND | Find |
| | INSERT HERE | Insert here |
| | NEXT SCREEN | Next screen |
| | PREV SCREEN | Previous screen |
| | REMOVE | Remove |
| F6 - F20 | SELECT | Select |
| | F6 - F14 | F6 - F14 |
| | F15 | Help |
| | F16 | Do |
| Keypad | F17 - F20 | F17 - F20 |
| | PF1 - PF4 | PF1 - PF4 |
| | 0 - 9 | Keypad 0 - 9 |
| | COMMA | Keypad comma |
| | MINUS | Keypad minus |
| | PERIOD | Keypad period |
| Printing | ENTER | Keypad enter |
| | PRINT AUTO | Continuous print mode (auto) |
| | PRINT CLOSE | Close the printer |
| | PRINT CONTINUOUS | Continuous print mode |
| | PRINT CONTROLLER | Controller print mode |
| User Defined Keys | PRINT SCREEN | Print contents of the screen |
| | UDK1 - UDK20 | UDK 1-20 |
| Other | BACKSPACE | Backspace |
| | BREAK | Send a short break |
| | BREAK (Long) | Send a long break |
| | COMPOSE | Compose |
| | DELETE | Delete |
| | DROP_DTR | Drops DTR for 2 seconds |
| | ESCAPE | Escape |
| | HOLD SCREEN | Hold screen |
| | LINE FEED | Line feed |
| | NULL | Null |
| | SEND ANSWERBACK | Log File |

Edit/Paste

Performs an edit/paste function. Enter a valid name in the **Edit/Paste** field or click **Browse** and select from the list. The following functions are available:

Table 4-5 Edit/Paste

| Edit/Paste | Function |
|-------------------|---|
| Copy | Copy selected text to Clipboard. |
| Paste | Paste information from Clipboard. |
| Send | Send selected text to host. |
| Select All | Select the current screen and all the scrollbar data. |
| Select Screen | Select all the text on the screen. |

Emulator Functions

Executes a VT key or emulator function. Enter a valid name in the **Emul. Func.** field or click **Browse** and select from the list. The following functions are available:

Table 4-6 Emulator Functions

| Name | Function |
|-------------------|--|
| 80/132 | Toggles between 80 and 132 column modes. |
| Abort | Performs an abort of a file transfer or command execution. |
| CMD Prompt | Displays the command prompt. |
| Command Messages | Toggles the display of the Command Messages window. |
| DDE Prompt | Displays the DDE command prompt. |
| Debug | Debug on/off. |
| Exit | Exits the emulator. |
| File Messages | Toggles the display of the File Transfer Message window. |
| File Receive | Opens the File Transfer Receive dialog box. |
| File Send | Opens the File Transfer Send dialog box. |
| Help | Opens the help file. |
| Kermit Prompt | Displays the Kermit command prompt. |
| KP Numeric Toggle | Keypad Numeric toggle. |
| KP-Set Numeric | Keypad top numeric mode. |
| KP-Set Function | Keypad top function mode. |
| Log Record | Record a log file. |
| Log Replay | Replay a log file. |
| Max Workspace | Maximizes the workspace. |
| Scrollbar | Enables or disables the display of scrollbars for scrollbar. |
| Switch Session | Switches to the next instance of the emulator (if any). |
| VT Mode | Switches to VT terminal mode. |
| WordPerfect | Toggles between normal and WordPerfect modes. |
| 4014 Mode | Switches to Tek 4014 mode (Tektronix only). |

Mouse Function

Assigns special mouse actions to a mouse button. Enter the name of a mouse function in the **Mouse Func.** field or click **Browse** to display the **Mouse Functions** list. Select a Mouse Function, then click **OK**.

Table 4-7 Mouse Functions

| Name | Function |
|-------------|--|
| Mark | Selects text by the pressing and holding of the assigned button. Release the button when finished selecting. |
| Mark Column | Marks blocks of text using column mode. |
| Send | Sends the text contained in the selected area. |

Note: Only one mouse button can be assigned to a particular mouse function. When selecting a mouse function for a button, the emulator resets all other mouse buttons with the same mouse function.

Mouse Position Report

Sends the following string to the host indicating the mouse position in alpha cursor coordinates.

Example: **ESC P[row;column] CR**

The **Mouse Pos.** field is disabled for this selection. Nothing can be entered.

Extended Mouse Report

Sends the following string to the host indicating the cursor position, mouse button, and the shift keys:

ESC M(A1 A1 A3 B) [row;column] CR

Where: **A1** is "A" if Alt key is down - blank if not.

A1 is "C" if Control key is down - blank if not.

A1 is "S" if Shift key is down - blank if not.

B is "L(left), M(middle), or R(right) for the button pressed.

Example: **ESC M(A L)[1;1] CR**

Results: Keys = A SPACE SPACE Alt key

 Button = L Left

 Position = 1;2 Row 1, Column 2

 The possible key combinations are: Control, Shift, Shift Control, and Alt.

The **Ext. Mouse** field is disabled for this selection. Nothing can be entered.

Nothing

Ignores any mouse button action (disables the mouse button definition). Nothing can be entered in the **Nothing** field.

String

Defines a string to be sent to the host. A simple ASCII string can be entered in the **String** field. To enter special characters, enclose the ASCII value in angle brackets < >. Refer to the *Special Characters* topic and Appendix B (ASCII Control Table) in the online *Reference Manual* for more information.

Examples: String: <027>OP or String: <ESC>OP

Both examples send the escape sequence **Control [OP** (^[OP).

String:<<BELL>>

Sends <BELL>. Double angle brackets prevent conversion to numeric values.

String:<%x44>

Converts the string from its Hex value to **D**.

Unmapped

The default setting for unmapped mouse buttons. Nothing can be entered in the **Unmapped** field.

- 3) When you are satisfied with the mouse button combination, click the **Add** button. The mouse button action displays in the **Mapped Action** window, and the mouse button combination is highlighted.
If at any time while defining a mouse button you wish to make changes, click the **Undo** button.
- 4) Save the Mouse Map by clicking the **OK** button.

4.2.3 Changing a Mouse Button Definition

To change the existing configuration for the currently selected mouse button.

- 1) Select the mouse button definition to change.
- 2) Set to the desired function.
- 3) Click the **Change** button.

Note: Be sure to click the **Add** or **Change** button before selecting another mouse button definition from the Mouse Button Layout, otherwise all changes to the current mouse button will be lost.

4.2.4 Deleting a Mouse Button Definition

To delete a mouse button definition:

- 1) Select the mouse button definition to delete.
- 2) Click the **Delete** button.

Note: Predefined (default) mouse buttons can be edited and redefined, but can never be deleted. If you delete the user-defined definition, it will revert to the default definition.

4.3 CUSTOMIZE TOOLBARS

To create a toolbar or edit an existing toolbar, click on **Setup - Customize Toolbars**. The *Properties* tab displays.

4.3.1 Creating a New Toolbar

To create a new toolbar, in the *Properties* tab, click on the **New...** button. The *New Toolbar* dialog box displays. Enter a new **Toolbar Name** and then click **OK**.

4.3.2 Properties Tab

The options selected in the *Properties* tab determine the way the toolbars display on the screen. You can also create a new toolbar or rename a new toolbar in this tab.

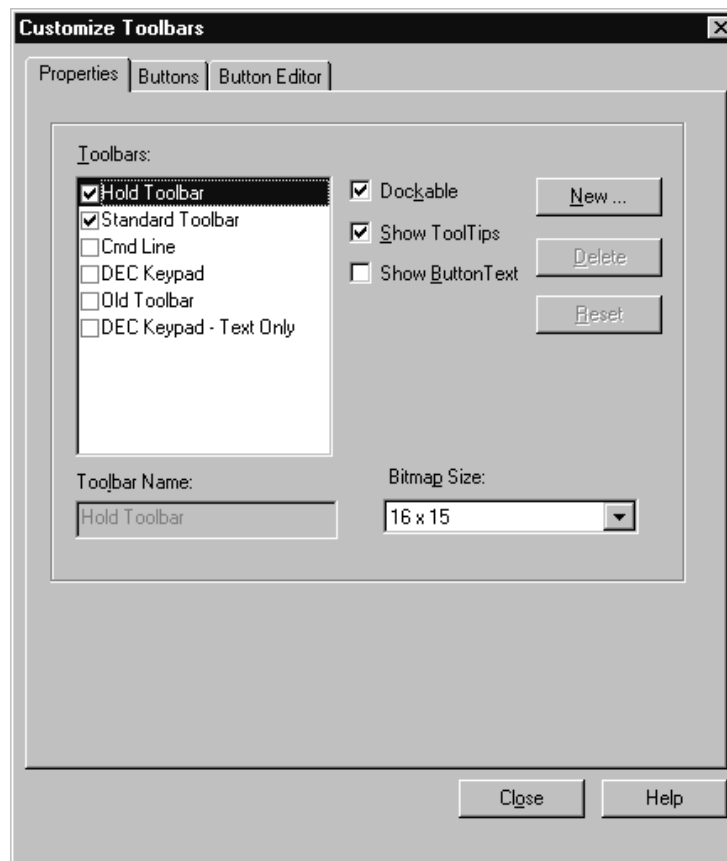


Figure 4-5 Properties

Toolbars

Lists the available toolbars. A checkmark toggles the display of the toolbar on the screen. Note that clicking the **X** in the upper right corner of the Floating Toolbar will turn the display of the toolbar off.

Dockable

If selected for the toolbar, the toolbar will dock (attach to a permanent location) to the frame where it is placed. If this option is not selected, the toolbar will “float” in any location.

Show Tool Tips

Displays a brief description of the toolbar button when the mouse cursor is placed over the button and held in place for a moment.

Show Button Text

Displays the user-specified button text. Note that the button size may automatically adjust to accommodate the text length, regardless of the **Bitmap Size** selected.

New...

Displays the *New Toolbar* dialog box. Enter a unique name for the new toolbar.

Delete

Deletes the selected toolbar. Default toolbars cannot be deleted.

Reset

If a change is made to a toolbar, such as changing a button function or adding a button to the toolbar, these changes can be undone by clicking **Reset**. If the Reset button is disabled, there are no changes to be undone.

Toolbar Name

Displays the name of the currently selected toolbar. In this field any new toolbar name can be edited. Note that the default toolbar names cannot be edited.

Bitmap Size

Determines the size of the bitmap displayed on the button. Choose from one of the four predefined sizes.

4.3.3 Buttons Tab

Create a new toolbar or add buttons to an existing toolbar through the *Buttons* tab. Select a category, then click on a button to display its description. Drag the desired button to an existing toolbar.

To create a new button with a toolbar function, click on the *Button Editor* tab.

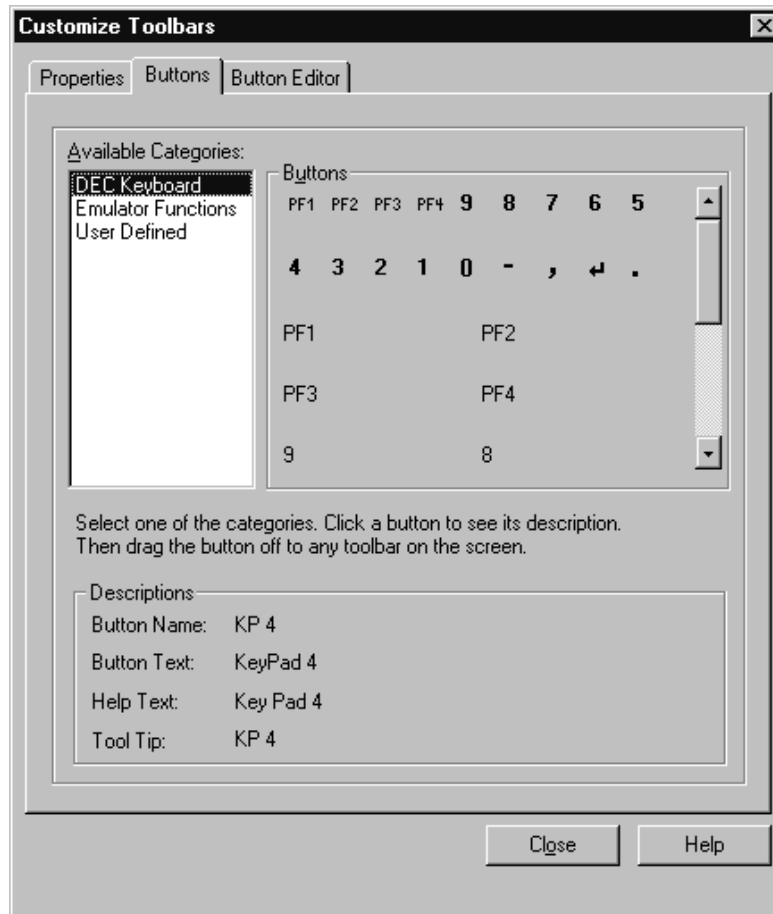


Figure 4-6 Buttons

Available Categories

Displays the buttons based on their designated function. Click on a Category and the corresponding buttons display in the Buttons field. Any new button created with the Button Editor is placed in the **User Defined** category.

Buttons

Displays the available buttons for the selected category. When a button is clicked once, its properties display in the Descriptions field. To add a button to a toolbar, click on it once and drag and drop to the desired toolbar.

Descriptions

Displays the properties of the button as specified in the *Button Editor* tab.

Button Name Determines the action performed when the button is clicked.

Button Text Identifying text that displays on the button.

Help Text A description of the button's function that displays on the status line when the button is clicked.

Tool Tip A brief description of the button's function that displays when the mouse cursor is held over the button for a moment.

4.3.4 Button Editor Tab

Toolbar button definitions are set in the *Button Editor* tab.

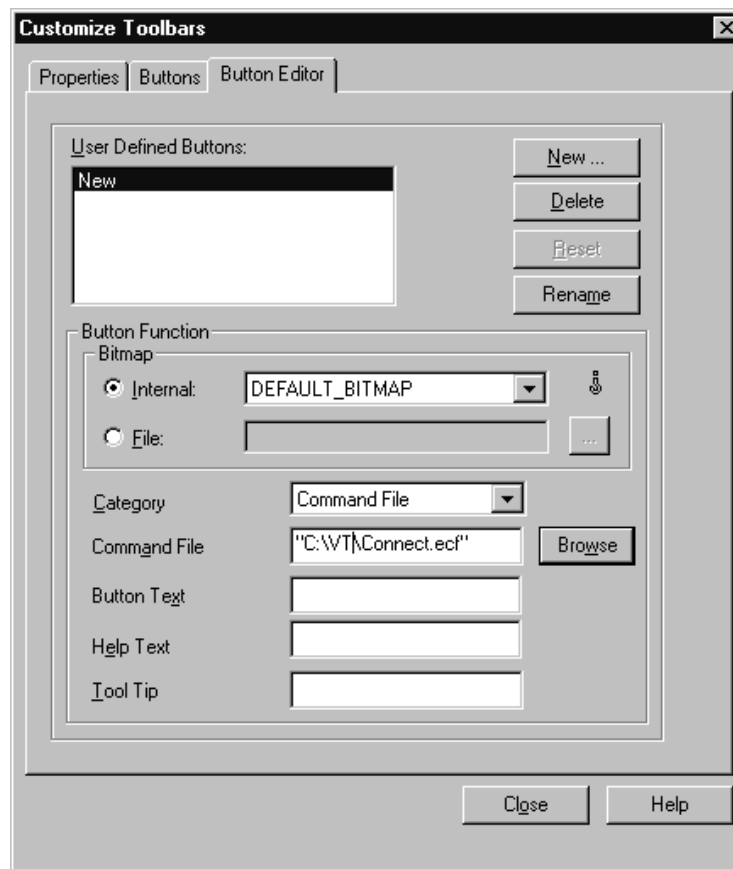


Figure 4-7 Button Editor

User Defined Buttons

Any new button created is placed into the **User Defined** category.

Button Function

Specifies the bitmap that appears on the toolbar button. The following options are available.

Internal Displays a list of default bitmaps. For a Text Only button, select the **Empty** bitmap option.

File Click on the (ellipse) button to display the *Bitmap Selection* dialog box. We strongly recommend importing bitmaps at the optimum size, 16 x 15. Bitmaps should be 16 colors or 256 colors.



Figure 4-8 Bitmap Selection

If you import a larger bitmap at the maximum import size, and then later, specify a smaller size in the *Properties* tab, specify a smaller **Bitmap Size**, it will be resized to fit.

4.3.4.1 Defining a Toolbar Button

To define a toolbar button to perform a specific function:

- 1) Click the **New...** button. The *New Button* dialog box appears. Enter a name for the button then click **OK**.
- 2) Select a **Bitmap**. You can select an internal bitmap or import a bitmap from another location.
- 3) Select from the **Category** functions. The following options are available:

Unmapped

The default setting for unmapped toolbar buttons. Nothing can be entered in the **Unmapped** field.

Nothing

Ignores any toolbar action (disables the button definition). Nothing can be entered in the **Nothing** field.

String

Defines a string to be sent to the host. A simple ASCII string can be entered in the **String** field. To enter special characters, enclose the ASCII value in angle brackets <>. Refer to the *Special Characters* topic and Appendix B (ASCII Control Table) in the online *Reference Manual* for more information.

Examples: String: <027>OP or String: <ESC>OP

Both examples send the escape sequence **Control [OP** (^[OP).

String:<<BELL>>

Sends <BELL>. Double angle brackets prevent conversion to numeric values.

String:<%x44>

Converts the string from its Hex value to **D**.

Command

Defines a single ECL command to be executed when the toolbar button is pressed. Enter a valid command in the **Command** field. Refer to Chapter 7 (Command Language) in the online *Reference Manual* for more information.

Example: Command: **ERASE SCREEN**

Erases the screen when the toolbar button is pressed.

Example: Command: **SAVE C:\EMULATOR\SETTING3**

Saves the current settings to SETTING3.CNF in the \EMULATOR directory.

Command File

Specifies the execution of a command file. Enter the path name of a command file in the **CMD File** field or click **Browse** to display the *Command File Selection* dialog box. Select a command file then click **OK**. See Chapter 8 (Command File Programming) in the online *Reference Manual* for more information.

DEC Keyboard

Perform a DEC keyboard function. Enter a valid name in the **DEC Keybrd** field or click **Browse** and select a function from the list. The following options are available:

Table 4-8 DEC Keyboard

| DEC Keyboard | Name | Function |
|--------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Arrow Keys | UP ARROW | Up arrow |
| | DOWN ARROW | Down arrow |
| | LEFT ARROW | Left arrow |
| | RIGHT ARROW | Right arrow |
| Edit Pad | FIND | Find |
| | INSERT HERE | Insert here |
| | NEXT SCREEN | Next screen |
| | PREV SCREEN | Previous screen |
| | REMOVE | Remove |
| | SELECT | Select |
| | F6 - F20 | F6 - F14 |
| F15 | | Help |
| F16 | | Do |
| F17 - F20 | | F17 - F20 |
| Keypad | PF1 - PF4 | PF1 - PF4 |
| | 0 - 9 | Keypad 0 - 9 |
| | COMMA | Keypad comma |
| | MINUS | Keypad minus |
| | PERIOD | Keypad period |
| | ENTER | Keypad enter |
| | Printing | PRINT AUTO |
| PRINT CLOSE | | Close the printer |
| PRINT CONTINUOUS | | Continuous print mode |
| PRINT CONTROLLER | | Controller print mode |
| PRINT SCREEN | | Print contents of the screen |
| User Defined Keys | UDK1 - UDK20 | UDK 1-20 |
| Other | BACKSPACE | Backspace |
| | BREAK | Send a short break |
| | BREAK (Long) | Send a long break |
| | COMPOSE | Compose |
| | DELETE | Delete |
| | DROP_DTR | Drops DTR for 2 seconds |
| | ESCAPE | Escape |
| | HOLD SCREEN | Hold screen |
| | LINE FEED | Line feed |
| | NULL | Null |
| | SEND ANSWERBACK | Log File |

Edit/Paste

Performs an edit/paste function. Enter a valid name in the **Edit/Paste** field or click **Browse** and select from the list. The following functions are available:

Table 4-9 Edit/Paste

| Edit/Paste | Function |
|-------------------|--|
| Copy | Copy selected text to Clipboard. |
| Paste | Paste information from Clipboard. |
| Send | Send selected text to host. |
| Select All | Select the current screen and all the scrollback data. |
| Select Screen | Select all the text on the screen. |

Emulator Functions

Executes a VT key or emulator function. Enter a valid name in the **Emul. Func.** field or click **Browse** and select from the list. The following functions are available:

Table 4-9 Emulator Functions

| Name | Function |
|-------------------|---|
| 80/132 | Toggles between 80 and 132 column modes. |
| Abort | Performs an abort of a file transfer or command execution. |
| CMD Prompt | Displays the command prompt. |
| Command Messages | Toggles the display of the Command Messages window. |
| DDE Prompt | Displays the DDE command prompt. |
| Debug | Debug on/off. |
| Exit | Exits the emulator. |
| File Messages | Toggles the display of the File Transfer Message window. |
| File Receive | Opens the File Transfer Receive dialog box. |
| File Send | Opens the File Transfer Send dialog box. |
| Help | Opens the help file. |
| Kermit Prompt | Displays the Kermit command prompt. |
| KP Numeric Toggle | Keypad Numeric toggle. |
| KP-Set Numeric | Keypad top numeric mode. |
| KP-Set Function | Keypad top function mode. |
| Log Record | Record a log file. |
| Log Replay | Replay a log file. |
| Max Workspace | Maximizes the workspace. |
| Scrollback | Enables or disables the display of scrollbars for scrollback. |
| Switch Session | Switches to the next instance of the emulator (if any). |
| VT Mode | Switches to VT terminal mode. |
| WordPerfect | Toggles between normal and WordPerfect modes. |
| 4014 Mode | Switches to Tek 4014 mode (Tektronix only). |

- 4) Enter the **Button Text**.
- 5) Enter the **Help Text**.
- 6) Enter the **Tool Tip**.

The new button will be available in the Buttons tab under the **User Defined** category and can be added to any toolbar.

4.3.4.2 Changing a Toolbar Button Definition

To change the existing configuration for the currently selected toolbar button.

- 1) Select the button name from the **User Defined Buttons** list.
- 2) Edit its **Button Function** properties.

Note: To revert back to the previous definition, click the **Reset** button. The **Reset** button is available after editing a button and prior to closing the dialog box.

4.3.4.3 Deleting a Toolbar Button Definition

To delete a toolbar button definition:

- 1) Select the button name from the **User Defined Buttons** list.
- 2) Click the **Delete** button.

Note: Predefined (default) mouse buttons cannot be edited, redefined, or deleted.

4.3.4.4 Renaming a Toolbar Button Definition

To rename a toolbar button definition:

- 1) Select the button name from the **User Defined Buttons** list
- 2) Click the **Rename** button. The Rename Button dialog box appears.
- 3) Enter a new name for the button, then click **OK**.

Note: Predefined (default) mouse buttons cannot be edited, redefined, or deleted.



CHAPTER 5 **EXTENDED FEATURES**

OVERVIEW

The emulator offers the following extended features:

Table 5-1 Extended Features

| Feature | Function |
|------------------|--|
| Log Files | Capturing and replay of data sent to the screen in a log file |
| Online Help | Comprehensive online Help |
| WordPerfect Mode | Emulates keystrokes of the PC version of WordPerfect when running VAX/VMS WP |

5.1 LOG FILES

The Log feature records all data sent to the emulator from the host into a file on the PC.

5.1.1 Record Log File

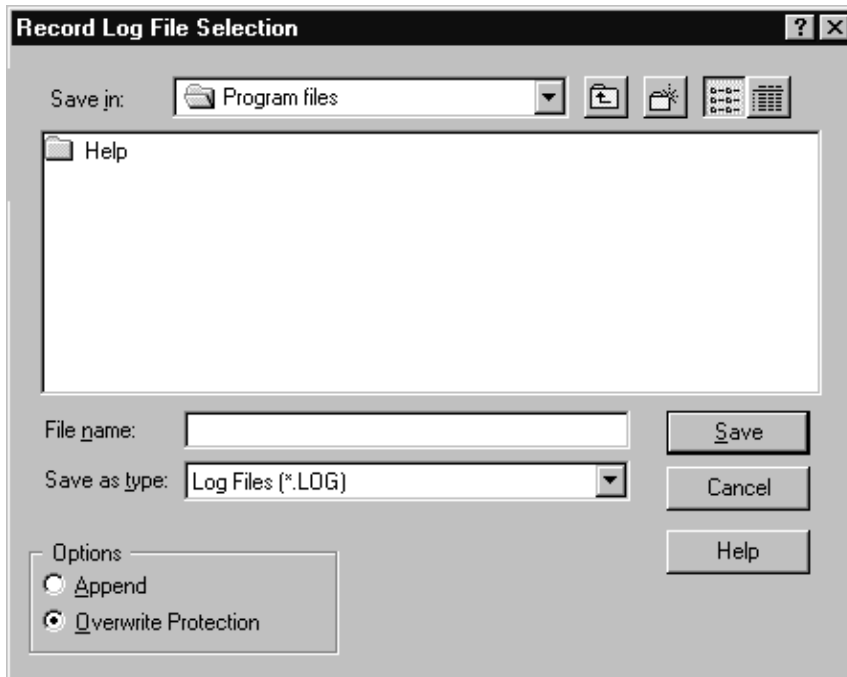


Figure 5-1 Record Log File

To record a log file:

- 1) Click on **File - Record Log File**.
- 2) Enter the desired filename. The log file name can include a complete path specification. If an extension is not specified, the emulator assigns .LOG.
- 3) Enable **Append** to add new log information to the end of an existing log file.
- 4) Enable **Overwrite Protection** to be notified if the file already exists.
- 5) Click on **Save** to begin recording.
- 6) To stop recording, click on **File - Stop Recording Log File**.

5.1.2 Replay Log File

Click on **File - Replay Log File** to display the Replay Log File Selection dialog box.

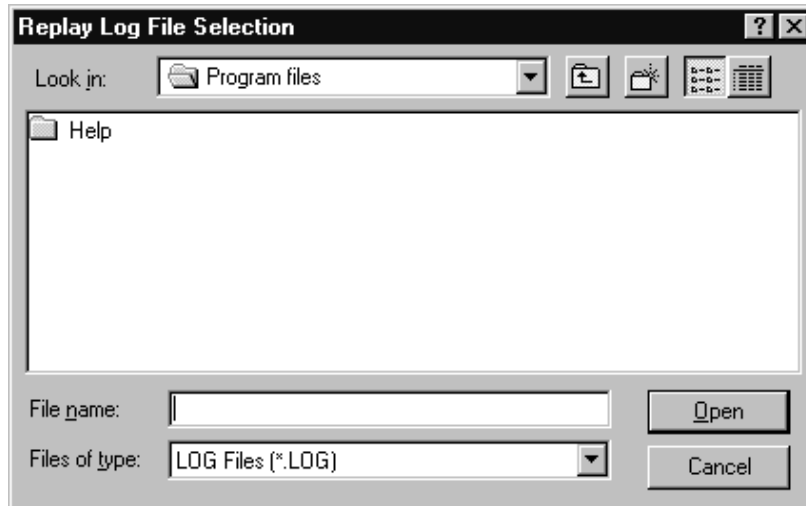


Figure 5-2 Replay Log File Selection

This option replays previously recorded log files offline from the host. It can be replayed at different speeds, and programmed to pause during replay. The replay can also be paused at anytime using **HOLD**.

To start the replay operation:

- 1) Click on **File - Replay Log File**.
- 2) Enter the filename. The filename can include a complete DOS path name.
- 3) Click on **OK**. Terminate replay by clicking on **Cancel**.

5.1.2.1 Keyboard Instructions

- 1) Press **REP** (default is Alt ;), the following prompt is displayed:

Replay File Name:

- 2) Enter the log file name. The filename can include a complete DOS path specification.
- 3) To stop Replay, press **REP** again, or answer **Q** to the Replay pause prompt.

5.1.3 Replay Options

Setup - General - Log Replay includes several options that control the operation of the Replay function.

5.1.3.1 Replay Rate

Selects one of six rates for replay speed. Beginning with the slowest, the range encompasses: 300 baud, 1100 baud, 2400 baud, 4800 baud, 9600 baud, to the maximum baud rate.

5.1.3.2 Pause on Clear Screen

Pauses replay before executing any control sequence that causes an erase of the entire screen.

5.1.3.3 Pause on Every Page

Pauses each time a new page of text is scrolled up the display. This option may not work correctly with log files that display text using direct cursor positioning.

5.1.3.4 Pause on Text

Pauses when the data in the log file matches the user-defined string. The string can be 25 characters long and include any control character. To disable this option, clear the user-defined string.

5.1.4 Replay Pauses

When a replay pause occurs, the following message appears on the screen:

Replay Pause (CR = Continue, Q = Quit, P = Print Screen)

Press Return to continue, Q to terminate the replay operation, or P to print the screen.

5.1.5 Programming Considerations

Some experimentation with the replay programming may be necessary to achieve the desired replay results. The following are guidelines for setting programming options:

Select the desired replay rate and use **HOLD** to stop the replay at the desired places.

Selecting the **Every Page** option in **Setup - General - Log Replay** causes a replay pause after each page of text.

5.1.5.1 Menu Driven Applications

Pauses for menu driven applications require some consideration. The display techniques vary widely between programs. One or more options may be required simultaneously to program the desired pauses.

Selecting the **Clear Screen** option in the Log Replay setup tab works for many menu driven applications by causing an automatic pause before clearing each screen. Many menu programs clear the screen one line at a time. These programs will not pause when the screen is cleared.

If the replay doesn't pause when the screen is cleared, examine the application screens for a string that appears near the bottom of every screen. Enter the string in the **Text** option in Log Replay dialog box.

5.2 ONLINE HELP

Help is available on emulator operation and features, drop down menus, key assignments, and commands.

- /// Click on **Help - Contents** to display the online Help.
- /// If you are unfamiliar with Windows Help, click on **Help - Using Help**.
- /// Click on **About** to find the version number and release date of your copy of the emulator.
- /// When you are finished with Help, click on **File - Exit** to exit Help.

5.3 WORDPERFECT MODE

The emulator includes a WordPerfect mode that can be utilized when running VAX/VMS WordPerfect version 5.x. When WP mode is activated, the VAX version of WordPerfect operates using the same keystrokes as the PC version. The emulation is so exact that you can use your PC WordPerfect template when operating with the VAX version.

5.3.1 Entering WordPerfect Mode

To enter WordPerfect mode:

- /// Click on **Execute - WordPerfect 5.X**.
- /// Type **WP5 ON** at the CMD> prompt.
- /// WordPerfect mode can be invoked from the host computer by sending one of the following commands:

`CsI 5|WP5 ON S_T` or `E_Sc [5|WP5 ON E_Sc\`

When WordPerfect mode is on, WP5 appears on the status line.

5.3.2 Terminating WordPerfect Mode

To terminate WP mode:

- /// Click on **Execute - WordPerfect 5.x**.
- /// Type **WP OFF** at the CMD> prompt.
- /// WP mode can be terminated from the host computer by sending:

`CsI 3;0|`

5.3.3 Operation of WordPerfect Mode

To simulate the PC version of WordPerfect, the emulator sends the appropriate VT320 keystrokes to the VAX for each WP key pressed.

Since many of the WP assignments overlap normal emulator assignments, several emulator keys do not operate in WP mode. If an emulator key is not assigned to a WP function it will operate normally.

5.3.4 WordPerfect Mode - Transmit Codes

Table 5-5 WordPerfect Mode Transmit Codes

| Key (PC) | Version 5.0 (VT320) |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| Home, | PF4, |
| Home, | PF4, |
| Home, | Prev Scr |
| Home, | Next Scr |
| Home, Home, | Home, Home, |
| Home, Home, | Home, Home, |
| Home, Home, | Home, Home, |
| Home, Home, | Home, Home, |
| Home, Home, Home, | Home, Home, Home, |
| Home, Home, Home, | Home, Home, Home, |
| F1 | F7 |
| F2 - F8 | F8 - F14 |
| F9 - F10 | F17 - F18 |
| F11-F12 | PF3, F9 - PF3, F10 |
| Shift F1 - F8 | PF1, F7 - PF1, F14 |
| Shift F9 - F10 | PF1, F17 - PF1, F18 |
| Ctrl F1 - F8 | PF2, F7 - PF2, F14 |
| Ctrl F9 - F10 | PF2, F17 - PF2, F18 |
| Alt F1 - F8 | PF3, F7 - PF3, F14 |
| Alt F9 - F10 | PF3, F17 - PF3, F18 |
| Escape | F6 |
| Keypad + | Keypad , |
| Keypad - | Keypad - |
| Ctrl Print Screen | PF1, F13 |
| Home | Find (KP7) |
| Page Up | Prev (KP9) |
| Page Dn | Next (KP3) |
| End | Select (KP1) |
| Delete | Remove (KP.) |
| insert | Insert Here (KP0) |
| Ctrl Home | PF2, Find |
| Ctrl Page Up | PF2, Prev |
| Ctrl Page Dn | PF2, Next |
| Ctrl End | PF2, Select |
| Shift Tab | PF1, Tab |
| Ctrl Enter | PF2, Enter |
| Ctrl Hyphen | PF2, - |
| Ctrl Backspace | PF2, Remove |
| Home, Space | PF4, Space |
| Ctrl | PF2, |
| Ctrl | PF2, |



CHAPTER 6 **FILE TRANSFER**

OVERVIEW

The emulator includes an ASCII file transfer plus four popular protocols for error free file transfer:

- /// Kermit
- /// XMODEM
- /// YMODEM
- /// ZMODEM

ASCII transfer moves text files between computer systems using standard file utilities that already exist on the remote computer. ASCII transfers are not guaranteed to be error-free and can only be used for sending and receiving text files that do not contain binary coded information.

Error free file transfer protocols insure the correct delivery of binary and ASCII information. One or more of these protocols are usually supported by host systems and bulletin boards. Use of an error-free protocol is recommended over ASCII transfers due to the increased performance and reliability.

When transferring files with an error free file transfer protocol, the following scenario typically takes place:

- 1) Make the initial connection to, and ready the remote computer for transfer.
- 2) Tell the remote computer which file to transfer.
- 3) The file is broken into smaller pieces called packets. The file is sent packet by packet until complete.
- 4) The receiver inspects the arriving packet; acknowledging if it's okay, NAKing (rejecting) if it's damaged. If the packet is accepted, the next one is sent. If the packet is rejected, it is sent again. If the packet is retransmitted and rejected too many times, or if an acknowledgment is not received, the file transfer fails.
- 5) When the file transfer is complete, the sender tells the receiver that it has reached the "End of File".
- 6) Repeat steps 2 - 5 to send more files. When all the files are sent, the two programs disconnect.

6.1 FILE TRANSFER SETUP

The file transfer setup dialog box is divided into two sections, the **Protocol Specific** section and the **Common** section. The protocol specific section varies depending on the protocol selected in the protocol list.

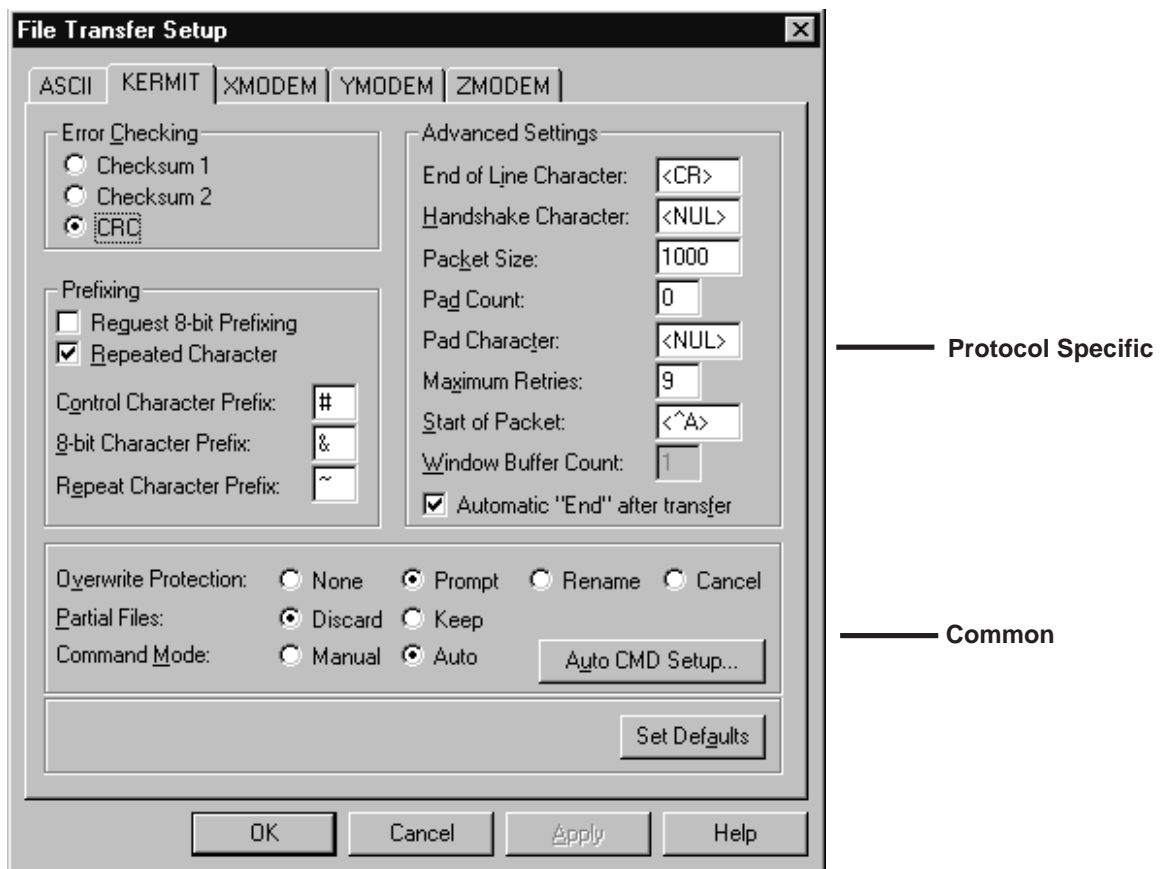


Figure 6-1 File Transfer Setup

6.1.1 Common Setup

Overwrite Protection

This setting determines what action will be taken if the file being received already exists. The available options are as follows:

- None** The file is overwritten without any notification.
- Prompt** You are prompted to select the action to take.
- Rename** The new file is renamed by appending a number to the name.
- Cancel** The file is not transferred and the file transfer will be terminated.

Partial Files

A partial (incomplete) file can result when a transfer is aborted due to an error or operator intervention. Selecting Keep will cause the incomplete file to be stored on your disk. Selecting Discard will throw away partial files leaving no trace of the file on your disk. Discard is the recommended setting.

Auto Command Mode

When Auto Command Mode is enabled, the file transfer program sends the commands stored in Auto Command Mode Setup to the host to automatically startup the host transfer program. Refer to the *Auto Command Mode Setup* topic for more information.

Set Defaults

Sets the file transfer defaults for the selected protocol.

6.1.2 Kermit Protocol Setup

The image shows a dialog box for setting up the Kermit protocol. At the top, there are tabs for 'ASCII', 'KERMIT', 'XMODEM', 'YMODEM', and 'ZMODEM', with 'KERMIT' being the active tab. The dialog is divided into several sections:

- Error Checking:** Three radio buttons are present: 'Checksum 1', 'Checksum 2', and 'CRC'. The 'CRC' option is selected.
- Prefixing:** Two checkboxes are shown: 'Request 8-bit Prefixing' (unchecked) and 'Repeated Character' (checked). Below these are three text input fields: 'Control Character Prefix' with the character '#', '8-bit Character Prefix' with the character '&', and 'Repeat Character Prefix' with the character '~'.
- Advanced Settings:** A collection of text input fields and a checkbox:
 - 'End of Line Character': <CR>
 - 'Handshake Character': <NUL>
 - 'Packet Size': 1000
 - 'Pad Count': 0
 - 'Pad Character': <NUL>
 - 'Maximum Retries': 9
 - 'Start of Packet': <^A>
 - 'Window Buffer Count': 1
 - 'Automatic "End" after transfer': checked (indicated by a checkmark in a box).

Figure 6-2 Kermit Protocol Setup

Error Checking

Selects the error check protocol to be used for file transfer. If the host program does not support the protocol selected, it renegotiates the error checking protocol. CRC is the default.

Prefixing

Request 8-bit Prefixing

Enables the conversion of 8-bit binary information to 7-bit data with a prefix character. Enable this when sending binary information over a communication link that only supports 7-bit data. The default setting is Disabled.

Repeated Character

Enables the compression of data by using a repeat count when sending the same character multiple times. Default is Enabled.

Control Character Prefix

Selects the character used for prefixing control characters. Default is #. There is practically never a reason to change this.

8-bit Character Prefix

Selects the character used to prefix 8-bit characters (when 8-bit prefixing is enabled). The default is &. There is practically never a reason to change this.

Repeat Character Prefix

Selects the character used for prefixing repeated characters. The default is ~. There is practically never a reason to change this.

Advanced Settings

Of the following settings, only Packet Size and Windows are normally changed.

End of Line Character

The control character that indicates the end of a line (packet). The default is a carriage return.

Handshake Character

Used for half-duplex systems that require a handshake or turnaround character. The default value is none. Normal values for the handshake character are Xon, Xoff, CR, LF, or Bell.

Packet Size

Sets the maximum number of characters in a Kermit data packet. The default is 2048 bytes. Sizes over 94 bytes require Long Packet support from the host Kermit program. Larger packet sizes increase the performance of the file transfer.

Pad Count

The number of pad characters transmitted prior to sending the packet. The default is zero.

Pad Character

The character used for padding outgoing packets. Normally padding is not required. However, it is used occasionally when working with half-duplex or slow host computer systems. Null is the default character. Pad characters are not sent if the pad count is zero.

Maximum Retries

The number of times Kermit will attempt a packet retransmission before giving up.

Start of Packet

The control character indicating the start of a Kermit packet. SOH (Ctrl A) is the default character. Change this field only when the host Kermit program requires a different character. If the character is incorrect, Kermit file transfers will fail.

Window Buffer Count

The number of sliding windows Kermit attempts to use during file transfer. The default is one.

Automatic “End” After Transfer

If enabled, the emulator sends an end packet (if required) to the Kermit server when the **Done** button is clicked. The end packet causes the host Kermit to exit Server Mode.

6.1.3 XMODEM Protocol Setup

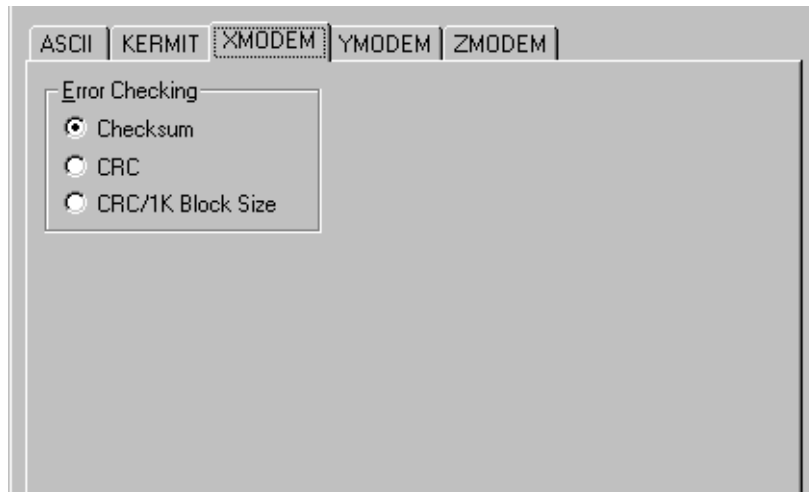


Figure 6-3 XMODEM Protocol Setup

Error Checking

The type of error checking to be used. For basic XMODEM, select CRC or Checksum. To send 1 K-byte packets with CRC (only choice available) select CRC/1K. If CRC/1K is not selected, 128 byte packets are used. Select CRC/1K only when transferring to a host XMODEM program that supports 1 K-byte packets.

6.1.4 YMODEM Protocol Setup

The YMODEM file transfer protocol has its own tab, but does not offer any protocol-specific options.

6.1.5 ZMODEM Protocol Setup

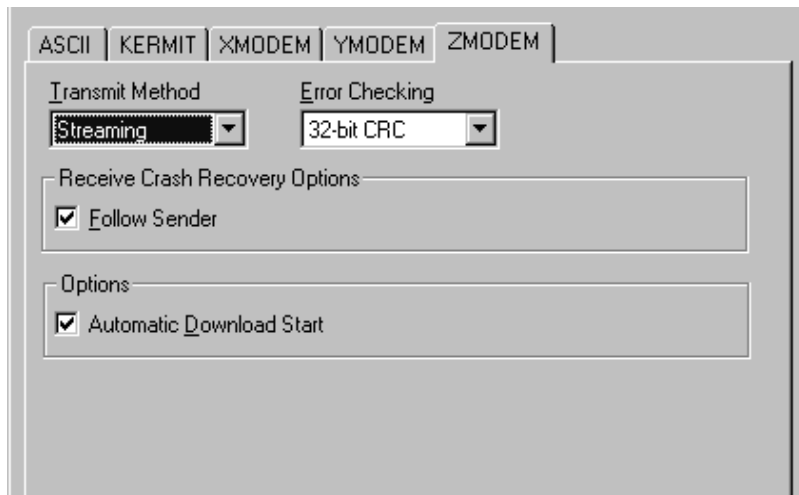


Figure 6-4 ZMODEM Protocol Setup

Transmit Method

The available transmit method is Streaming.

Error Checking

Select 16-bit CRC or 32-bit CRC (default) error checking.

Follow Sender

When receiving files, disables common overwrite controls and uses what the sender tells you to use.

Automatic Download Start

If enabled, the host ZMODEM program can automatically initiate the download of a file (transfer a file to the PC) when the emulator is in emulation mode. This feature is used by most bulletin boards supporting ZMODEM.

6.1.6 ASCII Protocol Setup

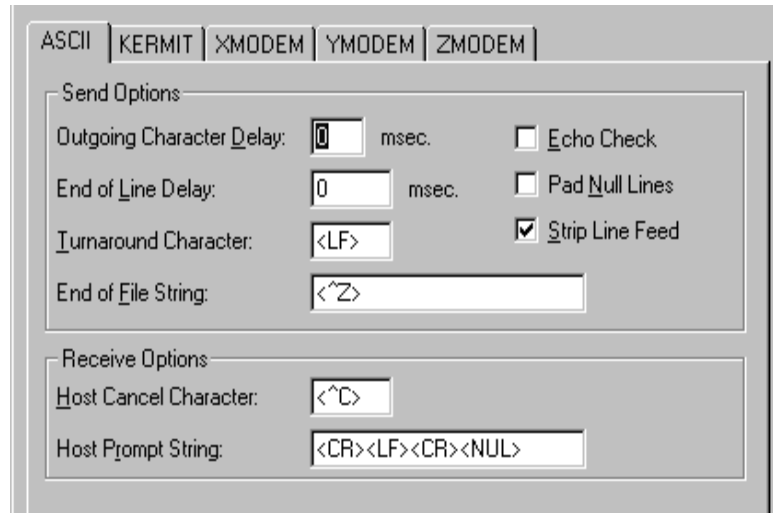


Figure 6-5 ASCII Protocol Setup

Send Options

Outgoing Character Delay

Some systems, especially half-duplex, cannot accept characters at the full baud rate. To bypass this problem, use a Character Delay. Enter 1 to 99 milliseconds of delay for each transmitted character.

End of Line Delay

Specifies the number of milliseconds to delay after each carriage return. Enter 0 to 999 milliseconds. The default selection depends on the host, but is normally set to zero.

Turnaround Character

Used to Prevent data overrun without having to specify a character or end of line delay. Waiting for a Turnaround Character insures each line transmitted is received by the host.

The normal Turnaround Character is a Line Feed. To disable this option, delete all characters in the field.

End of File String

The selected End of File String is sent to the host after the end of the data. The purpose of the End of File String is to signal the end of the file causing the host utility program to save the file and exit. The default selection depends on the host.

Echo Check

The emulator waits for the echo from each character transmitted before sending a new character. Selecting this option slows the transfer down significantly. Use this option only as a last resort.

Pad Null Lines

If enabled, empty lines of text are padded by inserting a single space before the carriage return.

Strip Line Feed

Strips all line feeds that follow carriage returns. Enable this option for most systems.

Receive Options

Host Cancel Character

If a file receive is aborted, this character is sent to the host to terminate the transfer.

Host Prompt String

If this string is detected while receiving a file, the file transfer is ended. This string is used to gracefully end ASCII transfers without putting the host prompt into the file's data. The default string depends on the host system.

Selected Host

Selects the correct set of Auto Command Mode commands and Setup options for a host computer system. To install the commands, click on Set Defaults. If your host is not listed, refer to the *Auto Command Mode Setup* topic for more information.

6.1.6.1 Additional Information

When transferring a file between the PC and a host (remote) computer system using ASCII mode, the following scenario usually takes place:

- 1) A host utility program is started to receive or transmit ASCII data via the terminal port used by the PC.

Example: **TYPE filename**

Sends data from a host file to the terminal port.

Copy TT: filename

Receives data from the terminal port into a file.

- 2) The PC is instructed to send or receive data.
- 3) The data is sent or received.

This process is automated with the ASCII protocol. Once the ASCII Transfer Setup is configured, only the filenames are required to transfer files. The host commands are issued automatically.

There is a great variety of computers that the emulator can connect to, each requiring a different setup. Recommended settings for ASCII file transfer with many host systems are pre-programmed. Select the commands for a pre-programmed host through the **Selected Hosts** list box, then click the **Set Defaults** button. If your host system is not included the hosts list, you should be able to program the Auto Cmd Mode Setup for successful operation. Refer to the *ASCII Protocol - Additional Information* topic for more information.

6.1.7 Auto Command Mode Setup

Click on **Auto CMD Setup...** to display the Auto Command Mode Setup dialog box.

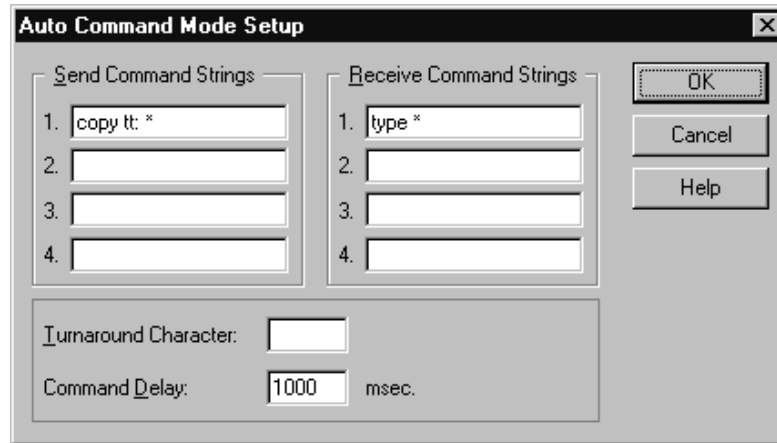


Figure 6-6 Auto Command Mode Setup

The Auto Command Mode Setup dialog is used to configure the commands necessary to support Auto Command Mode for file transfer operations. Using Auto Command Mode, it is possible to eliminate the process of entering commands into the host computer to start the file transfer program.

Each protocol has its own Auto Command Mode Setup. Clicking the **Set Defaults** button installs a set of commonly used commands for each protocol. These can be edited to work for your host system.

Send Command Strings

The Send command strings are sent when a File Send operation is started. Enter the commands necessary to start the host's Receive File program, receive a file, and then to exit. Use a **single** asterisk in place of the filename (the actual filename is substituted for the asterisk when the file transfer is started). When starting Kermit in Server Mode, do not use the asterisk. The Kermit server protocol handles the file names.

Receive Command Strings

These are the commands sent when a File Receive operation is started. Operates the same as Send Command Strings, except enter the commands necessary to start the host's Send File program and then send a file.

Note: Contact your System Manager or DCSi Technical support if you need help setting up the command strings.

Turnaround Character

Prevents data overrun and ensures that each line transmitted is received by the host. Waits for a Turnaround Character to be echoed by the host after sending a carriage return. To disable, delete all characters in the field. The normal Turnaround Character is a Line Feed.

Command Delay

Some operating systems, such as RSX11M, cannot accept file transfer commands as fast as they are sent. A Command Delay (entered in milliseconds) slows the command line send rate, (e.g., 1000 delays for one second after issuing each command). A maximum delay of 9.999 seconds can be entered.

6.1.7.1 ASCII Protocol - Additional Information

6.1.7.1.1 Send Command Strings

The send file commands are used to start a utility on the host that creates a file and receives data from the terminal port. Some commonly used utilities are Create, Copy, and text editors in Line Insert mode.

The following special symbols are used to program the send file command field:

Table 6-1 Send File Command Symbols

| Symbol | Meaning |
|--------|---|
| * | Substitute the filename and send the data at the end of the line. |
| # | Substitute the filename. Data is not sent at the end of the line. |
| ~ | Send data. The data from the PC file is sent to the host. |

Normally, * is the only symbol used in programming commands. The # and ~ are available to add flexibility.

Note: If the only command in the command line field is ~ (Send/Receive data symbol), data is sent without sending the carriage return. By default, a carriage return is always sent.

Example 1: **COPY TT: ***

Sends: Copy TT: filename
File data
EOF String

Example 2: **EDIT #
INSERT**

~
Sends: EDIT filename
INSERT
File data
EOF String

Example 3: **COPY TT: *
PRINT #**

Sends: COPY TT: filename
File data
EOF String
PRINT filename

If a data transmit symbol (* or ~) is not encountered while sending the send file commands, the data is sent after the last command.

6.1.7.1.2 Receive Command Strings

The receive commands are used to start a utility on the host that sends a file to the terminal port. Some commonly used utilities are Copy and Type.

The following special symbols are used to program the receive command field:

Table 6-2 Receive File Command Symbols

| Symbol | Meaning |
|--------|--|
| * | Substitute the filename and go into receive mode at the end of the command line. |
| # | Substitute the filename. The emulator does not go into receive mode. |
| ~ | Receive data. Puts the emulator into receive mode. |

Normally the * is the only symbol used in programming commands. The # and ~ are available to add flexibility.

Note: If the only command in the command line field is ~ (Send/Receive data symbol) data is received without sending the carriage return. Blanking the commands field sends a carriage return.

Example: **Type ***
 Sends: Type filename

6.2 PERFORMING FILE TRANSFERS

The operation of all file transfer dialog boxes is essentially the same. However, there are a few features that are available for only some of the protocols. Where appropriate these differences are pointed out.

Note: Throughout this section, when entering host commands is described, it is possible to avoid these steps by using Auto Command Mode.

6.2.1 File Transfer Directory

When you display the File Send or Receive Selection dialog boxes, the default file transfer directory is used to display the list of PC files. If the file transfer directory is changed, the new directory is remembered until you exit the emulator. When the emulator is restarted, the file transfer directory is set back to the default. Normally the default file transfer directory is the directory where the emulator was installed. However, the normal default can be overridden by clicking on **Setup - General - Directories** and entering a File Transfer Directory string.

6.2.2 Sending Files

To send a file:

- 1) Start the host file transfer program.

Examples: Host Prompt>**KERMIT**
KERMIT>**SERVER**

Starts Kermit in Server mode on a VAX/VMS host.

Host Prompt>**XMODEM**
RT TEST.DAT

Starts XMODEM and asks to receive the text file TEST.DAT.

- 2) Click on **File - Send** to display the File Transfer Send dialog box. Insure that the desired transfer protocol is selected. If using Kermit, select the desired Transfer Options.

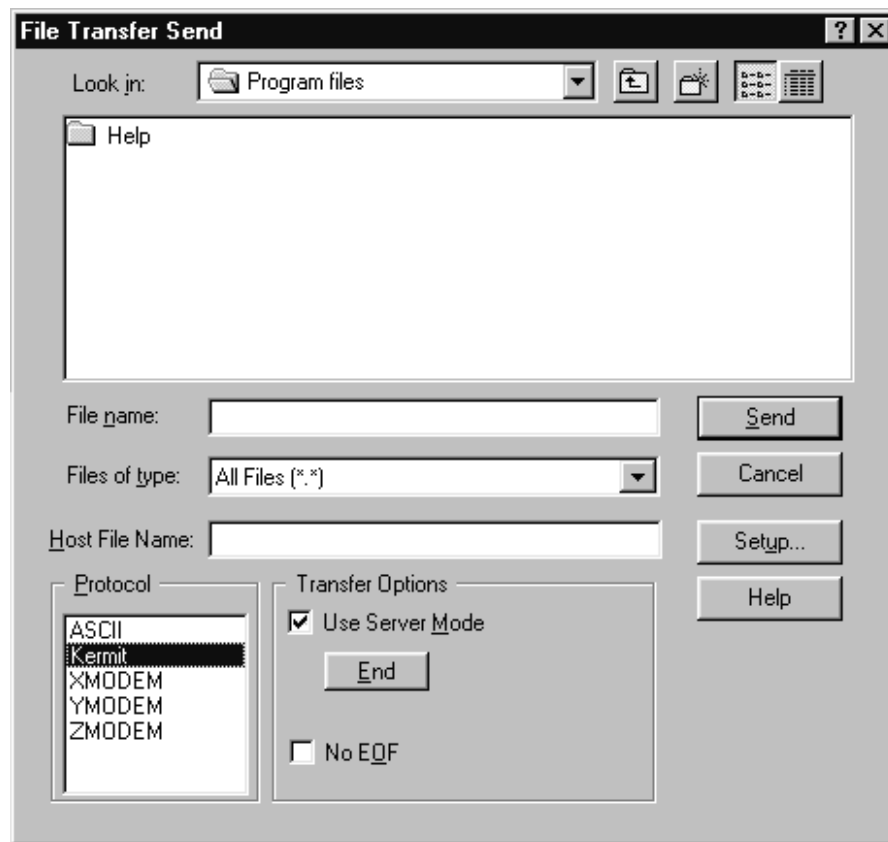


Figure 6-7 File Transfer Send

- 3) Select the files to send by entering the filename(s) in the **File Name** field or selecting the files from the **Look In** window. When entering the **File Name**, wildcards and path names can be used. If wildcards are used, pressing Enter updates the list to display the selected files.

To select multiple files individually, hold down the Ctrl key while clicking file names. To select a range of files, click on the first file, press and hold Ctrl+Shift, click on the last file, then release.

Note: If a filename is double-clicked, the file is selected and the transfer begins immediately.

- 4) If a **Host File Name** input box exists, you can rename the file as it is transferred by entering a valid host name. If the **Host File Name** is left blank, the file name on the host computer will be the same as the PC file name.

Normally, files are sent to the host's default directory. However, you may send the file to a directory other than the default directory by editing the **Host File Name** to include the host's directory specification after selecting the files to send. If you are using Kermit and wish to enter the host directory, you must have entered the KERMIT command for literal file naming or Kermit will not translate the directory name correctly.

Kermit commands vary between hosts. However, here are two examples of setting literal file naming:

SET FILE NAMING UNTRANSLATED
SET FILE NAMING LITERAL

- 5) Send the files by clicking the **Send** button. The *Send File Status* dialog box displays while the transfer is in progress.

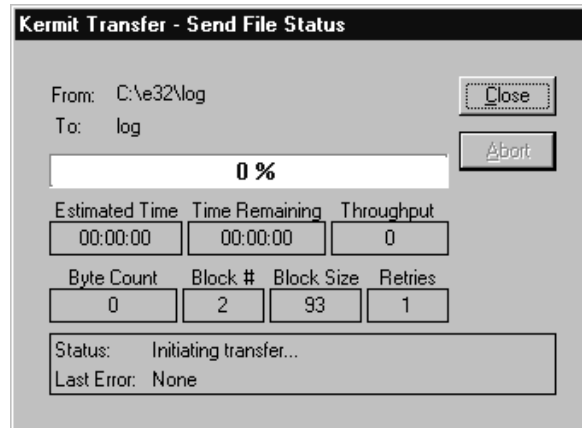


Figure 6-8 Send File Status

The *Send File Status* dialog box displays all or some of the following information depending on the protocol selected.

- / / The From and To filenames.
- / / The percentage of data transferred.
- / / The estimated time of the transfer and the amount of time remaining in the transfer.
- / / The transfer throughput in characters per second.
- / / The byte count (in K-bytes) of data transferred.
- / / The current packet count and packet size.
- / / The number of times a packet has been retransmitted or NAKed.
- / / The status of the transfer and error messages.

The file transfer can be aborted by clicking on **Abort**.

Additional file transfer information appears in the *File Transfer Messages* box which pops up automatically during the file transfer. To toggle the display of this box, click on **View - File Transfer Messages** in the emulator's message box. The message box is automatically popped up during file transfers.

After the file transfer is complete, click on **Close**.

6.2.2.1 Kermit Transfers - Additional Information

Kermit Options

Use Server Mode

Host Kermit programs can operate in Server or Non-Server mode. Each mode has its own operating characteristics. By selecting the correct mode, the emulator's file transfer program can do a better job of transferring files and checking for errors.

No EOF

If enabled, an EOF (Ctrl Z) will not be appended to each file sent.

End button (Server mode only)

Clicking **End** causes an END packet to be sent to the host after the file transfer. The END packet will cause the host Kermit to exit server mode. If **Automatic "End" After Transfer** is enabled in the Kermit setup, clicking the END button is unnecessary.

6.2.2.2 Kermit File Formats

The following information is taken from the VAX/VMS Kermit users guide and may not be accurate for your host system. Please check the Kermit User Manual for your host computer system.

VAX Kermit supports three types of file formats: text (ASCII), binary and fixed length - 512 byte records. The default format is ASCII. If transferring files that are not text files, you must tell the VAX Kermit program.

Specify binary when sending non-ASCII files between systems. Use binary when backing up a PC directory to a VAX directory. Word processor document files also require binary format.

Use fixed format when moving VAX executable files between systems or when 512 fixed length files are required.

Use the following commands to set the file format when inside VAX Kermit:

- /// SET FILE TYPE ASCII
- /// SET FILE TYPE BINARY
- /// SET FILE TYPE FIXED

6.2.2.3 ZMODEM Transfers - Additional Information

ZMODEM receives can be initiated automatically by a host or bulletin board computer system when the emulator is in emulation mode. If the emulator receives a ZMODEM transfer command and the **Automatic Download Start** option is enabled, the emulator will automatically begin to transfer the files.

6.2.3 Receiving Files

To receive a file:

- 1) Start the host file transfer program.

Examples: Host Prompt>**KERMIT**
Kermit-32>**SERVER**

Starts Kermit in Server mode on a VAX/VMS host.

Host Prompt>**XMODEM**
ST TEST.DAT

Starts XMODEM and starts sending the text file **TEST.DAT**.

- 2) Click on **File - Receive** to display the *File Transfer Receive* dialog box. Make sure that the desired transfer protocol is selected. If are using Kermit, select the proper **Use Server Mode** option.

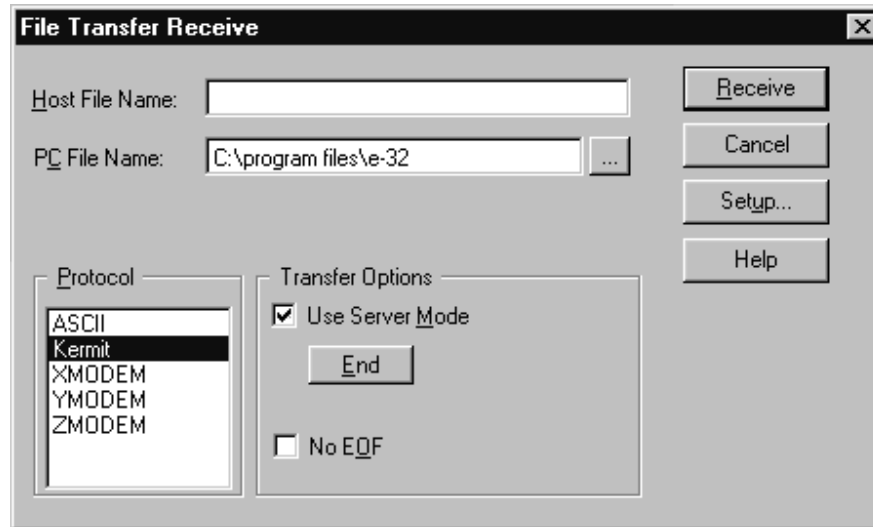


Figure 6-9 File Receive Selection

- 3) If the **Host File Name** input box appears, enter the name of the host file to transfer. If the **Host File Name** input box is not visible, enter the name for the **PC File Name**.
- 4) To select an alternate directory or filename, click the (Browse) ... button. The *Open* directories dialog box appears. Select a new directory or filename, then click **OK**.

Click on **Receive** to start the transfer. (If a filename is double-clicked, the file is selected and the transfer begins immediately.)

You may rename the file as it is transferred by entering a **PC File Name**. A **PC File Name** is not required. If left blank, the file name on the host computer will be the same as the **Host File Name**.

Normally, files are received from the host's default directory. However, you can receive files from a directory other than the default directory by including a host directory specification in the host file name specification. If you are using Kermit and wish to enter the host directory, you must have entered the host's Kermit command for literal file naming or Kermit will not translate the directory name correctly.

Kermit commands vary between hosts. However, here are two examples of setting literal file naming:

```
SET FILE NAMING UNTRANSLATED  
SET FILE NAMING LITERAL
```

- 5) The *Receive File Status* dialog box displays while the transfer is in progress.

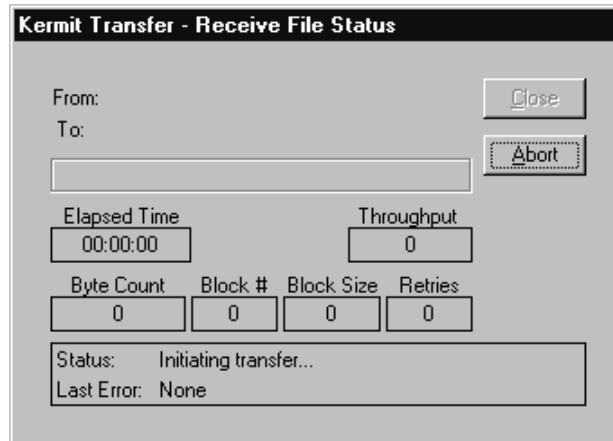


Figure 6-10 Receive File Status

The status box displays all or some of the following information depending on the protocol selected.

- /// The From and To filenames.
- /// The percentage of data transferred.
- /// The estimated time of the transfer and the amount of time remaining in the transfer.
- /// The transfer throughput in characters per second.
- /// The byte count (in K-bytes) of data transferred.
- /// The current packet count and packet size.
- /// The number of times a packet has been retransmitted or NAKed.
- /// The status of the transfer and error messages..

The file transfer can be aborted by clicking on **Abort**.

Additional file transfer information appears in the *File Transfer Messages* box which pops up automatically during the file transfer. To toggle the display of this box, click on **View - File Transfer Messages** in the emulator's message box. The message box is automatically popped up during file transfers.

After the file transfer is complete, click on **Close**.

6.2.3.1 Kermit Transfers - Additional Information

Kermit Options

Use Server Mode

Host Kermit programs can operate in Server or Non-Server mode. Each of these two modes have their own operating characteristics. By selecting the correct mode, the emulator's file transfer program can do a better job of transferring files and checking for errors.

Add EOF

If enabled, a trailing Ctrl Z (EOF) is added to the file sent to the host.

End button (Server mode only)

Clicking **End** sends an END packet to the host after the file transfer. The END packet causes the host Kermit to exit server mode. If **Automatic "End" After Transfer** is selected in the Kermit setup, clicking the **End** button is unnecessary.

6.2.3.2 Kermit File Formats

The following information is taken from the VAX/VMS Kermit users guide and may not be accurate for your host system. Please check the Kermit User Manual for your host computer system.

VAX Kermit supports three types of file formats: text (ASCII), binary and fixed length - 512 byte records. The default format is ASCII. If transferring files that are not text files, you must tell the VAX Kermit program.

Specify binary when sending non-ASCII files between systems. Use binary when backing up a PC directory to a VAX directory. WordPerfect document files also require binary format.

Use fixed format when moving VAX executable files between systems or when 512 fixed length files are required.

Use the following commands to set the file format when inside VAX Kermit:

- /// SET FILE TYPE ASCII
- /// SET FILE TYPE BINARY
- /// SET FILE TYPE FIXED

6.2.3.3 ZMODEM Transfers - Additional Information

ZMODEM receives can be initiated automatically by a host or bulletin board computer system when the emulator is in emulation mode. If the emulator receives a ZMODEM transfer command and the **Automatic Download Start** option is enabled, the emulator will automatically begin to transfer the files.

6.2.4 File Transfers Using the Command Line

There are two commands used for file transfers, FILE and KERMIT. The FILE command can be used to send a file using any protocol whereas the KERMIT command is used only for Kermit transfers. The KERMIT command supports more Kermit features than are available through the FILE command.

For more information on these commands, refer to Chapter 7 (Command Language).

6.2.5 Emulator Kermit Commands

Kermit commands can be entered from the command prompt or from the Kermit prompt. If a Kermit command is entered from the Kermit prompt, do not precede the command with KERMIT.

Examples: `CMD>KERMIT GET FILE`

Performs a Kermit GET from the `CMD>` prompt.

`KERMIT>GET FILE`

Performs a Kermit GET from the `KERMIT>` prompt.

For more information on Kermit commands, refer to Chapter 7 (Command Language). For a list of the commands available on your host Kermit, see your host Kermit manual or help system.

6.2.6 Transferring Files Using Kermit

6.2.6.1 Send/Server Mode

- 1) Start Kermit on the host computer by entering the host command to execute Kermit.
- 2) Put Kermit into server mode by typing **SERVER**.
- 3) Enter Kermit mode.
- 4) Use the **SEND** command to send the desired files to the host.
- 5) Type **END** to end server mode when all of the files have been transferred.

6.2.6.2 Send/Non-Server Mode

- 1) Start Kermit on the host computer by entering the host command to execute Kermit.
- 2) Type **RECEIVE** to put the host Kermit into receive mode.
- 3) Enter Kermit mode.
- 4) Use the **SEND** command to send the desired files to the host.
- 5) Return to host Kermit mode by typing **CONNECT**.
- 6) Exit from the host Kermit program.

6.2.6.3 Receive/Server Mode

- 1) Start Kermit on the host computer by entering the host command to execute Kermit.
- 2) Put Kermit into server mode by typing **SERVER**.
- 3) Enter Kermit mode.
- 4) Use the **GET** command to retrieve the desired file from the host.
- 5) Type **END** when all the files have been transferred.

6.2.6.4 Receive/Non-Server Mode

- 1) Start Kermit on the host computer by entering the host command to execute Kermit.
- 2) Type **SEND** followed by the file specification.
- 3) Enter Kermit mode.
- 4) Type **RECEIVE** to retrieve the files from the host.
- 5) Exit Kermit mode.
- 6) Exit from the host Kermit program.

6.2.6.5 Send File Examples

Example 1: Host Prompt>**KERMIT**
Kermit-32>**SERVER**

Click the K> button on the CMD Toolbar
KERMIT>SEND/END X.DAT [VAXDIR]X.DAT
KERMIT>EXIT

Sends file **X.DAT** to the **[VAXDIR]** directory on the VAX, ends server mode and exits the host VAX Kermit.

Example 2: Host Prompt>**KERMIT**
Kermit-32>**RECEIVE**

Click the K> button on the CMD Toolbar
KERMIT>SEND \FILES*.*
KERMIT>CONNECT
KERMIT>EXIT

Sends all the files in the **\FILES** directory to the host, ends server mode and exits the host Kermit.

Example 3: Host Prompt>**KERMIT**
Kermit-32>**SERVER**

Click the C> button on the CMD Toolbar

CMD>KERMIT
KERMIT>SEND TEST.DAT
KERMIT>END
KERMIT>EXIT

Sends the file **TEST.DAT** to the host, ends server mode and exits the host Kermit.

Example 4: Host Prompt>**KERMIT**
Kermit-32>**SERVER**

Click the C> button on the CMD Toolbar

CMD>KERMIT SEND/END ABC.DAT,DEF.DAT
KERMIT>EXIT

Sends files **ABC.DAT** and **DEF.DAT** to the host, ends server mode and exits the host Kermit.

Example 5: Host Prompt>**KERMIT**
Kermit-32>**SERVER**

Click the K> button on the CMD Toolbar

KERMIT>EXIT

Sends all the files in the **\FILES** directory to the host, ends server mode and exits the host Kermit.

6.2.6.6 Receive File Examples

Example 1: Host Prompt>**KERMIT**
Kermit-32>**SERVER**

Click the C> button on the CMD Toolbar

CMD>KERMIT
KERMIT>GET TEST.DAT
KERMIT>END
KERMIT>EXIT

Receives the file **TEST.DAT** from the host, ends server mode and exits the host Kermit.

Example 2: Host Prompt>**KERMIT**
Kermit-32>**SERVER**

Click the C> button on the CMD Toolbar

CMD>KERMIT GET/END ABC.DAT,DEF.DAT
KERMIT>EXIT

Receives files **ABC.DAT** and **DEF.DAT** from the host, ends server mode and exits the host Kermit.

Example 3: Host Prompt>**KERMIT**
Kermit-32>**SERVER**

Click the C> button on the CMD Toolbar
CMD>**KERMIT GET/END *.***
KERMIT>**EXIT**

Requests all the files in the host's default directory, ends server mode and exits the host Kermit.

Example 4: Host Prompt>**KERMIT**
Kermit-32>**SERVER**

Click the K> button on the CMD Toolbar
KERMIT>**GET/END [VAXDIR]X.DAT**
KERMIT>**EXIT**

Receives file **X.DAT** from the VAX directory [**VAXDIR**], ends server mode and exits the host Kermit.

Example 5: Host Prompt>**KERMIT**
Kermit-32>**RECEIVE**

Click the K> button on the CMD Toolbar
KERMIT>**GET TEST.TXT**
KERMIT>**CONNECT**
KERMIT>**EXIT**

Receives file **TEST.TXT** from the current host directory and exits the host Kermit.

6.2.6.7 Aborting Transfers

Kermit file transfers can be aborted by clicking on the **Abort** button in the *Status* box. Aborting a transfer may cause the Kermit server to exit server mode.



CHAPTER 7 **COMMAND LANGUAGE**

OVERVIEW

The Emulation Command Language (ECL) is a powerful command/script language that is similar to DCL, Digital's Command Language for VAX/VMS.

The ability to execute emulator commands from command files allows both simple and complex tasks to be automated. Some of the tasks that can be easily automated with command files are:

- /// Dialing and login
- /// File transfer
- /// Management of host programs
- /// Data logging and analysis
- /// Designing a menu driven user interface for host applications

7.1 COMMAND SYNTAX

Emulator commands appear in uppercase letters (e.g., WRITE HOST). The standard syntax is:

COMMAND /OPTION(S) argument(s)

Note: Arguments shown in brackets, [], are optional.

A command may be abbreviated to the minimum number of characters required to make it non-ambiguous. Multiple command arguments are separated by spaces.

All options begin with a slash (/). Options may be used anywhere in the command.

Examples: **SEND /FILTER TEXT**

SEND TEXT /FILTER

Both forms of the send command are valid.

If the argument is a string of characters, the options must immediately follow the command. Character string arguments (referred to as strings) must be enclosed in quotation marks.

Example: **DISPLAY/NOCR "Hello there"**

This example shows the use of an option with a string argument. The option directly follows the command, and the string (Hello there) is enclosed in quotes.

7.2 COMMAND EXECUTION

Emulator commands can be executed from:

- /// The command line prompt
- /// A keyboard or mouse definition
- /// The host computer
- /// A command file (see the Executing Command Files section)

7.2.1 Command Line Execution

To execute a command from the command line:

- 1) Click on **Execute - Command Line**, the C> button on the CMD Toolbar, or press **CMD** (default is Alt C). The CMD> prompt displays.
- 2) Enter the command or command file specification at the command prompt.

Example 1: **CMD>SET HOST /DISCONNECT**

Disconnects the currently connected port.

7.2.1.1 Entering Multiple Commands

A series of commands can be given by entering interactive command mode. In interactive mode, the command prompt reappears after each command is executed. The INTERACTIVE command enters interactive mode. To terminate interactive mode, use the ENDINTERACTIVE command.

7.2.2 Executing from the Host

Emulator commands may be executed by the host using a DCS private control sequence.

$C_{S_I}[5]$ Command String S_T

Note: C_{S_I} and S_T are 8-bit characters that can only be used on systems that support full 8-bit characters. E_{S_C} [is the 7-bit equivalent of C_{S_I} . E_{S_C} \ is the 7-bit equivalent of S_T .

Example: $C_{S_I}[5]$ SET HOST /DISCONNECT S_T or
 E_{S_C} [5]SET HOST /DISCONNECT E_{S_C} \

These commands are used to disconnect the currently connected port..

7.3 COMMAND FILES

Command files are text files that contain emulator commands. Command files are useful for automating tasks such as transferring files, logging on, and defining keyboard configurations. However, command files are not limited to these functions. Chapter 8 (Command File Programming) covers more advanced programming topics.

A command file executes each emulator command in sequence. Emulator command files execute from:

- /// The command line prompt
- /// A key definition
- /// The host computer
- /// The modem dialer
- /// A command file

7.3.1 Specifying a Command File

Prefixing a filename with an at symbol (@) tells the emulator to expect a command file. If the filename does not include an extension, the emulator automatically appends .ECF to the filename.

The default filename extension of .ECF may be overridden by specifying an extension with the command file name. A command file name can also include a path specification.

Command files can be executed using a search path. Click on **Setup - General - Directories** to set the command file default directory (search path).

7.3.2 Default Command File

A command file can be executed automatically when the emulator loads by entering the name in the Command File field in the Session Manager's Properties dialog box. Do not enter the @ symbol as part of the name, or an extension - the default .ECF, is assumed.

7.3.3 Command Line Execution

A command file can be executed at the CMD> prompt any time you are in the emulator.

- 1) Click on **Execute - Command Line**, the C> button on the CMD Toolbar, or press **CMD** (default is Alt C). The CMD> prompt displays.
- 2) Type the @ followed by the name of the command file.
- 3) Press Return or click the checkmark icon. The command file executes.

Example: CMD>@LOGIN

Executes a command file named LOGIN.ECF.

7.3.4 Executing from the Host

An emulator command file can execute from the host computer system through a DCS Private control sequence.

$C_{S_I}5|@command\ file\ specification^{S_T}$

Note: C_{S_I} and S_T are 8-bit characters. They can only be used on systems that support full 8-bit characters. $E_{S_C}á[$ is the 7-bit equivalent of C_{S_I} . $E_{S_C} \backslash$ is the 7-bit equivalent of S_T .

Example: $C_{S_I}5|@MENU^{S_T}$ or
 $E_{S_C}5|@MENU^{E_{S_C} \backslash}$

The host uses these commands in programs, script or command files to run MENU.ECF.

7.3.5 Nested Command Files

To specify a command file from within a command file, precede the command filename with the @ symbol. After a nested command file is completed, control returns to the next line of the calling command file.

7.3.6 Comments

Comments are used in command files to document the purpose of the file and each emulator command. Comments are prefixed with the exclamation point (!). Any data to the right of the exclamation point is ignored.

Example: **! This command file logs onto a VAX/VMS system and
! changes to the TEST directory.**
WAIT "Username:" **! wait for host prompt**
WRITE HOST "USER" **! send username to host**
WAIT "Password:" **! wait for host prompt**
WRITE HOST "USER_TEST" **! send password to host**
 ! change to test directory

WRITE HOST "SET DEF [.TEST]"
EXIT **! exit command file**

Comments are used to clearly state the purpose of the file and describe each line of the command file.

7.4 ABORTING COMMANDS

To abort emulator commands and/or command file execution, click **Execute - Abort**, or click on the Abort button.

7.5 EMULATOR COMMAND LIST

Table 7-1 Emulator Command List

| Command | Function |
|-------------------|---|
| BREAK | Send a communications break |
| CAPTURE | Captures text to a file. |
| CLOSE | Close a file |
| CLS | Clear screen (short form) |
| CONTINUE | Resume execution of next command |
| DDE ADVISE | Create Advise Data Link |
| DDE CONNECT | Connect a client and server application |
| DDE DISCONNECT | Disconnect the specified conversation |
| DDE DISCONNECTALL | Disconnect all conversations |
| DDE EXECUTE | Send commands to the server to be executed |
| DDE POKE | Send a data item value to the server |
| DDE REQUEST | Request the value of a data item from the server |
| DDE TOPICS | Compile a list of active server applications and topics |
| DDE UNADVISE | Delete an Advise Data Link |
| DELAY | Delay specified time |
| DELETE SYMBOL | Delete symbol(s) |
| DISPLAY | Output data (emulator to screen) |
| DOS | Execute DOS command |
| DROPDTR | Drop Data Terminal Ready (DTR) |
| EMULATE | Enter Emulation mode |
| ENDINTERACTIVE | End interactive command mode |
| ERASE SCREEN | Erase the screen |
| EXIT | Exit to DOS |
| FILE | Perform a file transfer |
| FLUSH | Flush receive buffer |
| GOSUB | Execute a subroutine within a command file |
| GOTO | Go to a command file label |
| HELP | Display emulator Help |
| IF | Test condition |
| INQUIRE | Prompt for input |
| INTERACTIVE | Enter interactive command mode |
| KERMIT | Enter Kermit mode |
| KERMIT BYE | Logout from the host and exit emulator mode |
| KERMIT CONNECT | Return to emulation mode |
| KERMIT DOS | Execute DOS command |
| KERMIT END | End Kermit Server session |
| KERMIT EXIT | Exit to Windows |
| KERMIT FINISH | Tell server to exit |
| KERMIT GET | Receive files from server |
| KERMIT HELP | Display Kermit help |

Table 7-1 Emulator Command List (cont'd)

| Command | Function |
|---------------------------|---|
| KERMIT LOGOUT | Tell server to logout |
| KERMIT RECEIVE | Non-server receive file |
| KERMIT SEND | Send file to server |
| LOG | Create a log file of session |
| ON ABORT | Set condition for ON ABORT |
| ON DEVICE_ERROR | Set condition for ON DEVICE_ERROR |
| ON DISCONNECT | Set condition for ON DISCONNECT |
| ON error_severity | Set condition for ON error levels |
| OPEN | Open a file |
| PRINT EJECT | Eject printer page |
| PRINT ON/OFF | Print on/off |
| PRINT SCREEN | Print the text screen |
| PRINT SCROLLBACK | Prints text in scrollbar memory plus the screen contents |
| QUIT | Exit emulate mode |
| READ | Read a string from the host or file |
| READ HOST | Read an ASCII record from host into the specified symbol. |
| READ SCREEN | Read screen text into symbol |
| REPLAY | Replay an emulator Log file |
| RETURN | Return from a GOSUB command |
| SCAN | Display the key names |
| SEND | Send ASCII text file to host |
| SESSION | Start a session defined in the Session Manager |
| SET ABORT | Set Abort key checking |
| SET CDELAY | Set delay for sending characters |
| SET [NO]DDEAUTOINITIALIZE | Set DDE auto initialize |
| SET [NO]DDEAPPENDINSTANCE | Set DDE append instance |
| SET DDECLIENTTIMEOUT | Set timeout value for DDE client commands |
| SET DDEERVERNAME | Set DDE server name |
| SET DEVICE_ERROR | Set device error checking |
| SET DISCONNECT | Set disconnect checking |
| SET EOF | Set the End of File character |
| SET HOST | Create a connection to a remote node |
| SET LDELAY | Set delay for sending lines |
| SET MESSAGE | Set message control |
| SET ON | Set error checking |
| SET TERMINAL | Set terminal characteristics |
| SET TURNAROUND | Set a turnaround character |
| SET VERIFY | Set verify mode |
| SHOW SYMBOL | Display local and global symbol values |
| STOP | Terminate execution of all command files |
| WAIT | Wait for a host string |
| WIN | Launch Windows application |
| WP5 ON/OFF | Enable/Disable WordPerfect 5.x mode |
| WRITE | Write a string to the host or file |

7.5.1 Emulator Command Descriptions

BREAK

BREAK (no arguments)

Sends a 200 millisecond communications break to the communications port.

Valid options:

/LONG

Sends a long (3.5 second) break.

CAPTURE

CAPTURE filename

Records all data sent to the emulator from the host into a file on the PC. The data is first interpreted by the emulator, so it appears in the text file as it appears on the screen. If the file exists and **/OVERWRITE** or **/APPEND** is not specified, an error results. The default is **/OPEN**. The default extension is **.TXT**.

Valid options:

/APPEND

Open a text file and appends the text to the end of file. If no file exists, one is created.

/CLOSE

Close the previously opened capture file. The filename is not required.

/OPEN

Create a text file.

/OVERWRITE

Open a text file and overwrite any old copies. If no file exists, one is created.

/PROMPT

Displays the interactive capture text to file prompt. If logging is already enabled, **CAPTURE/PROMPT** closes the file and disables the capture. If **/PROMPT** is used, any other option on the command line is ignored.

/SCREEN

Write the current screen contents to the previously opened text file. This command formats the data with spaces exactly as it appears on the screen. None of the terminal escape sequences used to format the screen are written to the text file.

/TEXT

Records all incoming data in the same format as the **/SCREEN** option.

Example 1: **CAPTURE TEST**

Creates log file **TEST.TXT**. If **TEST.TXT** already exists, an error occurs.

Example 2: **INQUIRE TIME "ENTER CURRENT DATE AND TIME: "**
OPEN/WRITE ERRORS ERRMESS.LOG
WRITE ERRORS TIME
CLOSE ERRORS
CAPTURE/APPEND ERRMESS.LOG
WRITE HOST "@BUILD"
WAIT "\$"
CAPTURE/CLOSE ERRMESS.LOG

Creates a text file with a date and time stamp which captures error messages generated from running a VMS COM file.

Example 3: **CAPTURE/CLOSE**
 Closes the text file.

Example 4: **CAPTURE/OVER TEST**
 Opens TEST.TXT and overwrites any old copies.

Example 5: **WRITE HOST "MAIL"**
WRITE HOST "READ"
CAPTURE/TEXT MAIL
WRITE HOST "EXIT"
 Captures a host mail message into a MAIL.TXT file.

CLOSE

CLOSE logical-name[:]

Where: **logical-name** is a DOS file logical assigned by the OPEN command.

Closes the logical name previously opened with the OPEN command. If the CLOSE command is not issued, the logical name is closed upon exiting the emulator.

Valid options:

/ERROR=label

Process continues at the label if an error occurs.

| | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| Example: | !Get user input into DATE |
| INQUIRE DATE "Enter current date and time: " | |
| OPEN/WRITE FILE DATA.LOG | ! Open PC file DATA.LOG |
| WRITE FILE DATE | ! Write DATE into FILE |
| CLOSE FILE | ! Close PC file |

Places a date and time stamp on a log file by opening the PC file DATA.LOG, writing the date, and closing the file. DATA.LOG can be added later to the LOG/APPEND command.

Related topics: OPEN

CLS

CLS (no arguments)

Clears the screen. CLS is the short form of the ERASE SCREEN command.

Example: **WRITE HOST "ls"**
DELAY 3
INQUIRE FILENAME "Enter name of file to delete: "
WRITE HOST "rm"FILENAME"
CLS

This Unix example lists the contents of a directory, removes the specified file from that directory, and clears the screen.

Related topics: ERASE SCREEN

CONTINUE

CONTINUE (no arguments)

Resumes execution on the next line of a command file. Used with the ON command to ignore error conditions.

Example: **ON ERROR THEN CONTINUE**
If an error occurs, the command continues at the next line.

DDE ADVISE

DDE ADVISE variable1 "item name" variable2

Where: **Variable1** is the conversation number returned by an earlier DDE CONNECT command.

"Item name" is a string expression that tells the server what data item to monitor.

Variable2 specifies the variable to receive the new data item value. Variable2 changes whenever the value of the data item in the server application changes.

Creates an Advise Data Link between the emulator (the client) and the server application. The value of the emulator variable is updated whenever the specified item's value in the server application changes. An Advise Data Link can be removed with the DDE UNADVISE command. All Advise Data Links associated with a conversation are removed when the conversation is disconnected.

Example: **DDE ADVISE 'CONV' "COUNT" RESULT**
Assumes that CONV refers to a conversation with another copy of the emulator as the DDE server using the ECL topic. An Advise Data Link is created so that when the DDE server's variable COUNT changes, the new value is assigned to the variable RESULT in the DDE client copy of the emulator.

Related topics: DDE UNADVISE

DDE CONNECT

DDE CONNECT “service name” “topic name” variable

Where: **“Service name”** is a string expression that corresponds to a DDE server application name. An empty string (“”) can be used as a wildcard to find all DDE server applications.

“Topic name” is a string expression that corresponds to the desired DDE conversation topic. An empty string (“”) can be used as a wildcard to find the DDE conversation topics.

Variable specifies the variable to contain the conversation number.

Initiates a DDE conversation between the emulator (the client) and a specified application (the server). Both the service and topic names must be supported by the server application. If more than one DDE server application responds to DDE CONNECT, a conversation is initiated only with the first server responding.

The resulting conversation number (a number from 1-10) is stored in the specified variable. This number is used to specify this conversation in other DDE client commands. A conversation is specified by a service name and a topic. Use DDE TOPICS command to display a list of available DDE servers and topics.

Example: **DDE CONNECT “EXCEL” “DATA.XLS” CONV**

Initiates a conversation with Excel, with a topic of DATA.XLS. Places the resulting conversation number in the variable CONV.

Related topics: DDE DISCONNECT

DDE DISCONNECT

DDE DISCONNECT variable

Where: **Variable** indicates the conversation number of the conversation to disconnect. This should be the same number that was returned from the DDE CONNECT command.

Disconnects the specified DDE conversation. Any DDE advise-links associated with the conversation are removed.

Example: **DDE DISCONNECT ‘CONV’**

Terminates the conversation associated with the conversation number CONV.

Related topics: DDE DISCONNECTALL

DDE DISCONNECTALL

DDE DISCONNECTALL

Disconnects all DDE conversations initiated by the DDE CONNECT command. Any DDE advise-links associated with the conversations are removed.

Related topics: DDE DISCONNECT

DDE EXECUTE

DDE EXECUTE variable “command string”

Where: **Variable** is the conversation number returned by an earlier DDE CONNECT command.
“**Command string**” contains the command to execute.

This command sends the specified command string to the server to be executed.

Example: **DDE EXECUTE ‘CONV’ “@TEST”**

Assumes that CONV refers to a conversation with another copy of the emulator as the DDE server using the topic ECL. The command sent to the server runs the command file TEST.ECF.

DDE POKE

DDE POKE variable “item name” “value”

Where: **Variable** is the conversation number returned by the DDE CONNECT command.
“**Item name**” is a string expression that specifies the data item to change.
“**Value**” is a string expression containing the data to send to the server.

Sends “value” to the named item in the server application of the specified conversation. This command sets the server’s item to a specified value.

Example: **DDE POKE ‘CONV’ “WELCOME” “Hello!”**

Assumes that CONV refers to a conversation with another copy of the emulator as the DDE server using the ECL topic. The variable WELCOME in the server the emulator is set to a message string “Hello!”.

DDE REQUEST

DDE REQUEST variable1 “item name” variable2

Where: **Variable1** is the conversation number returned by an earlier DDE CONNECT command.
“**Item name**” is a string expression that tells the server what data item is being requested.
Variable2 specifies the variable to receive the value of the data item.

Requests the value of the item from the server application, and stores the value of that data item into the specified variable. This value returned for the item may be an empty string if the DDE REQUEST command fails.

Example: **DDE REQUEST ‘CONV’ “WELCOME” RESULT**

Assumes that CONV refers to a conversation with another copy of the emulator as the DDE server using the ECL topic. The DDE_REQUEST command retrieves the contents of the variable WELCOME from the server and places the value in the emulator’s variable RESULT.

DDE UNADVISE

DDE UNADVISE variable “item name”

Where: **Variable1** is the conversation number returned by an earlier DDE CONNECT command.
“**Item name**” is a string expression that tells the server what Advise Data Link is to be terminated.

Removes an existing Advise Data Link for the specified item.

Example: DDE UNADVISE ‘CONV’ “COUNT”

Assumes that CONV refers to a conversation with another copy of the emulator as the DDE server using the ECL topic, and that an advise-link exists to its variable COUNT. The DDE UNADVISE command removes the Advise-Data Link.

Related topics: DDE ADVISE

DDE TOPICS

DDE TOPICS “service name” “topic name” variable

Where: “**Service name**” is a string expression that corresponds to a DDE server application name. An empty string (“”) can be used as a wildcard to find all DDE server applications.

“**Topic name**” is a string expression that corresponds to the desired DDE conversation topic. An empty string (“”) can be used as a wildcard to find the DDE conversation topics.

Variable specifies the variable to receive the server/topic list.

Builds a tab-separated list of DDE server application(s) and topic(s) that are currently running. This list only contains the server applications that match the name and name specification parameters. The list is stored into the specified variable as a string, and is empty if a match is not found.

Example 1: DDE TOPICS “” “” TLIST

Creates a list of all DDE server applications that are currently running and places this list into the variable TLIST.

Example 2: DDE TOPICS “” “SYSTEM” TLIST

Stores a list of all DDE servers that support the System topic into the variable TLIST.

DELAY

DELAY [dd:hh:mm:]ss

Delays the specified amount of time. All of the fields are optional with the exception of seconds. Maximum value is 99:23:59:59.

DELAY is intended for command file use. DELAY does not prevent the emulator from accepting emulator commands sent from the host computer using a DCS private control sequence.

Valid options:

/NODISPLAY

Data received from the host is not displayed on the screen during the delay period.

/NOMESSAGE

Disables display of the delay message.

Example 1: **DELAY 5**

Delays command file execution for five seconds.

Example 2: **@LOGIN**

DELAY/NODISPLAY 5
WRITE HOST "ACCOUNTING"
EXIT

Automatically logs a user in, prevents all login messages from displaying on the screen and starts an accounting application on the host.

Example 3: **LOG/OPEN SYSLOG.LOG**

DELAY/NOMESS 23:59
LOG/CLOSE SYSLOG.LOG

Creates the SYSLOG.LOG file on the PC. Captures information for one day and closes the file.

DELETE SYMBOL

DELETE SYMBOL symbol-name

Deletes a symbol name from the local and/or global symbol table. The symbol name is required. Wildcarding is supported. The default is /LOCAL.

Valid options:

/GLOBAL

Deletes the symbol name from the global symbol table.

/LOCAL

Deletes the symbol name from the local symbol table.

Example 1: **DELETE SYMBOL *A**

Deletes all the local symbols that end with “A”.

Example 2: **DELETE SYMBOL/GLOBAL VARI??**

Deletes all the six letter global symbols that start with “VARI”.

DISPLAY

DISPLAY [[row,column]] [string-expression]

Where: **string-expression** is a quoted string, lexical, symbol, or combination of the above joined by plus signs (+) (i.e., “string” + symbol).

Displays single or multiple lines of text to the screen. DISPLAY can process terminal escape sequences, lexicals, and symbols as part of the string expression. The terminal escape sequence is processed by the selected terminal type when displaying the emulation window.

An initial cursor position can be optionally specified in brackets [] immediately following the DISPLAY command. If specified, the cursor moves to the position indicated before the string displays. Specifying a cursor position of 0 for the row or column positions the cursor at the current row or column position.

By default, data is output to the emulation window. Data can be displayed on the status line or to a dialog box by using the /STATUS and /DIALOG options. DISPLAY will send a carriage return and line feed unless the /NOCR option is used.

Note: Using cursor positioning while outputting data to the status line produces unusual results.

Valid options:

/DIALOG

Displays the text defined by the string-expression in a dialog box.

/NOCR

Do not send a carriage return and line feed.

/STATUS

Displays the text defined by the string-expression on the Status Line.

Example 1: **DISPLAY “Hello there”**

Displays **Hello there** at the current cursor position.

Example 2: **DISPLAY [0,40] “Hello there”**

Displays **Hello there** at the current row, column 40 on the screen.

Example 3: **DISPLAY** or **DISPLAY “”**

Outputs a carriage return and line feed at the current cursor position.

Example 4: **DISPLAY /DIALOG** “This is a message to the user.”

This example would yield the following dialog box.



Note: The D\$BLOCK lexical is not supported with the /DIALOG option.

Example 5: **! ... Additional commands**
DISPLAY/NOCR “<CSI>0;0|” **! enable user def. status line**
DISPLAY/NOCR “<CSI>0;2|” **! erase status line**
! status line message
DISPLAY/NOCR “<CSI>0;3;20| Press ABORT to exit”
! ... Additional commands

This example uses DEC terminal escape sequences.

Example 6: **DISPLAY/STATUS “<ESC>[?3h” + “132 columns”**
Sets the screen to 132 column mode, and displays “132 columns” on the status line.

Related topics: INQUIRE, Special Features

DOS

DOS [DOS command string]

Executes the DOS command string and returns to the emulator.

If a DOS command string is unspecified, the DOS shell window appears. Any valid DOS command can be entered in the DOS shell window. To exit from DOS, type EXIT followed by a carriage return.

If a DOS command string is specified, the emulator executes the DOS command and holds the DOS screen. Pressing any key returns closes the DOS shell window and returns to emulation mode.

When the DOS command is issued by the host computer or from a command file, the emulator automatically returns to emulation mode without waiting for keyboard input.

Symbols can be used to assign DOS command strings to a more convenient form. For example, DIR ::= “DOS DIR” creates an emulator command that lists DOS directories.

Valid options:

/NOWAIT

When specified interactively, the DOS screen is not held until a key is pressed. The DOS command executes and returns to the emulator without pausing. It has no effect when used in a command file.

Example 1: **DOS TYPE READ.TXT**

Executes the DOS command TYPE and displays the file READ.TXT in a DOS window.

Example 2: **TYPE :== "DOS TYPE"**
TYPE READ.TXT

Creates an ECL command TYPE, then displays the DOS file READ.TXT in a DOS window.

Example 3: **DOS/NOWAIT DEL TEST.LOG**

Switches to a DOS window, deletes the TEST.LOG file, and returns to emulation mode.

DROPDTR

DROPDTR milliseconds

Drops the DTR (Data Terminal Ready) and RTS (Request to Send) lines for the number of milliseconds specified. If milliseconds is zero or missing, DTR and RTS will be dropped permanently.

EMULATE

EMULATE [match-string-expression]

Puts the emulator into emulation mode from a command file. If emulation mode has been entered from a command file, pressing **EXIT** returns to the calling command file rather than to Windows.

The EMULATE command can be used with the ON DISCONNECT command to enter emulation mode and return to a command file when the connection is lost or the user logs out.

Valid options:

/CASE

Force case sensitivity for the return string comparison. /CASE is invalid when used without the /RETURN_STRING option.

/LABEL=label

Resume execution of the command file at the specified label. /LABEL is invalid when used without the /RETURN_STRING option.

/RETURN_STRING = [match-string-expression]

Allows a command file to enter emulation mode and returns control to the command file when a specific string occurs. This option is an alternate form of [match-string-expression] argument. If both strings are used, the first string following the EMULATE command takes precedence.

Allows a command file to enter emulation mode and return control to the command file when a specific string occurs. Execution of the command file resumes at the line immediately following the EMULATE command unless the /LABEL option is used.

```
Example: 50:   SET DISCONNECT
           ON DISCONNECT THEN GOTO 100
           EMULATE
           EXIT/EM           !USER LOGGED OUT
                               !CONNECTION LOST
100:   DISPLAY "ATTEMPTING TO RECONNECT"
        @RECONNECT
        IF $STATUS GOTO 50
        DISPLAY "UNABLE TO RECONNECT"
        EXIT/EM
```

Monitors connect status. If the connection is lost the command file tries to reconnect.

END INTERACTIVE

ENDINTERACTIVE (no arguments)

Terminates interactive mode. This command is not used in command files.

Related topics: INTERACTIVE

ERASE SCREEN

ERASE SCREEN (no arguments)

Erases the screen.

```
Example: ERASE SCREEN
         DISPLAY [10,20] "1. Connect Session 1"
         DISPLAY [11,20] "2. Connect Session 2"
         DISPLAY [13,20] "3. Exit emulator"
         INQUIRE [14,20] "Enter menu option number: "
         ...
```

Erases the screen before displaying a menu and sends the cursor to Row 1, Column 1.

Related topics: CLS

EXIT

EXIT [*specific-error*]

Where: **specific-error** is an error code, quoted mnemonic identifier, or symbol. (i.e., EXIT \$STATUS)
Terminates processing of the current command file.

EXIT's behavior differs, depending on the mode of usage (interactive or command file mode). If used in interactive mode without an error parameter, the emulator exits to Windows. If used with a parameter, the message associated with the error parameter displays, and no other action is taken.

If used within a command file without a parameter, EXIT passes the error status to the calling routine. If error checking is enabled and an error parameter is provided, EXIT prints the associated error message.

EXIT passes the status and severity codes of the error to the symbols \$STATUS and \$SEVERITY. It also saves the mnemonic for the error in the symbol \$STATUSID and the full error message in \$MESSAGE. If the error message has displayed, bit 15 of the \$STATUS symbol is set to 1.

If EXIT is issued from a command file while in emulate mode, emulate mode is exited and the next command is executed.

Valid options:

/EM

Exit the emulator and return to Windows with the corresponding \$STATUS code passed to ERRORLEVEL. An exit to Windows leaves the modem control signals active. Refer to the *DOS ERRORLEVEL* topic for more information.

Example 1: **EXIT**
Exits the emulator and returns to Windows.

Example 2: **LOG FILELIST ! Create FILELIST.LOG file**
DELAY 1:00: 00 ! Delay 1 hour
LOG/CLOSE ! Close log file
EXIT ! Exit to emulation mode
Opens FILELIST.LOG, captures host information for 1 hour, closes the log file, and exits.

Example 3: **@SET HOST /DISCONNECT**
DELAY/NOMESSAGE 2
EXIT/EM
Disconnects from the host, hides all messages and exits the emulator.

Related topics: ON, SET ABORT, SET DEVICE_ERROR, SET DISCONNECT, SET ON, Error Facility, SET MESSAGE

FILE

FILE operation protocol filename

Where: **Operation** is SEND or RECEIVE.

Protocol is one of the available protocols: ASCII, KERMIT, XMODEM, YMODEM, or ZMODEM.

Filename is the name of the file to transfer.

Performs a file transfer using the specified protocol.

Valid options:

/RENAME

Used with RECEIVE to rename incoming files if they would replace an existing file.

FLUSH

FLUSH (no arguments)

Empties the emulator receive buffer to the screen. Used to insure that all data received from the host has been removed from the receive buffer and displayed on the screen.

Related topics: WAIT

GOSUB

GOSUB label_name

Transfers execution to a subroutine label located within the command file. Use the RETURN command to exit the subroutine and resume execution in the calling routine. The calling routine continues at the line following the GOSUB command. (Usable in command procedures only.)

Related topics: ON, IF, Labels, RETURN

GOTO

GOTO label-name

Transfers program control to the statement following the specified label. (Used in command procedures only.)

Related topics: ON, IF, Labels

HELP

HELP [keyword]

Displays useful information about emulator operation, key assignments, features, and commands. Specifying HELP without a keyword displays *Help - Index*.

IF (CONDITIONAL)

IF condition THEN statement

Tests the value of an expression and executes the statement following the THEN keyword if the test is TRUE. If FALSE, THEN is ignored, and execution continues with the next command line.

The expression is true if the result:

- 1) Has an odd integer value between 2147483647 and -2147483648.
- 2) Has a character string value that begins with any of the letters Y, y, T, or t.
- 3) Has an odd numeric string value between "2147483647" and "-2147483648".

The expression is false if the result:

- 1) Has an even integer value between 2147483647 and -2147483648.
- 2) Has a character string value that begins with any letter except Y, y, T, t.
- 3) Has an even numeric string value between "2147483647" and "-2147483648".

Rules:

- 1) Symbols used in IF condition expressions are automatically substituted.
- 2) String comparison operators end in the letter S (.EQS., .LES., .GTS., etc.). Integer comparison operators do not end in the letter S (.EQ., .LE., .GT., etc.).
- 3) String comparisons are case sensitive. Therefore, CASE and case are considered unequal. To inhibit case sensitivity, create the symbol using an implied literal string (:). The string converts to all caps, and can then be compared. (e.g., in the assignment upper := case, the value of upper is converted to CASE.)

Example 1: **COUNT = 0**
LOOP: COUNT = COUNT + 1
...
IF COUNT .LE. 10 THEN GOTO LOOP
This routine loops 10 times.

Example 2: **INQUIRE ANS "Want to continue [Y/N] (D:N)"**
IF .NOT. ANS THEN EXIT
This routine exits unless ANS = Y.

Related topics: Symbols, Lexicals, Error Facility

INQUIRE

INQUIRE[[row,column]] symbol-name [prompt-string]

Where: **prompt-string** is a quoted string, lexical, symbol, or combination of the above joined by plus signs (+) (i.e., prompt-string = "string"+symbol).

Outputs a prompt string and waits for input. The input string is stored in the symbol-name specified. By default, the symbol-name is a local symbol. To make the symbol global, use the /GLOBAL qualifier.

Like the DISPLAY command, the INQUIRE command can process terminal escape sequences, lexicals, and symbols in the prompt string.

An initial cursor position can be specified in brackets [] immediately following the command. If specified, the cursor moves to the position indicated before the prompt string displays. Specifying a position of 0 for the row or column positions the cursor at the current row or column on the screen.

By default, INQUIRE uses the screen. However, INQUIRE uses the status line when the /STATUS option is used.

Note: Using cursor positioning while outputting data to the status line or dialog box can produce unusual results and should be avoided.

INQUIRE will not send a carriage return or line feed unless it is placed within the prompt string or the /CR option is used for a single line of text.

Valid options:

/CASE

By default, INQUIRE/KEY is not case sensitive. It does not return the S^ indicator with the key names for alphanumeric keys. Specifying /CASE returns the S^ indicator with uppercase alphanumeric keys. /CASE is only meaningful when used with the /KEY option.

/CR

Send a carriage return at the end of the prompt string.

/DIALOG symbol-name [prompt-string]

Prompts the user for input from a dialog box rather than from the text emulation window. The user supplies a symbol name and a prompt string. The dialog box displays the prompt string and an edit field in which the user can type the symbol value.

/GLOBAL

The symbol name is defined as global.

/KEY

Reads a single keystroke and returns its ASCII key name. The name returned is the same name displayed when the key is pressed in Scan mode. Key remapping is disabled when /KEY is used. /KEY is useful for obtaining a single PC keystroke, such as an arrow key.

/LOCAL

The symbol name is defined as local. This is the default INQUIRE condition.

/MAX=count

Sets the maximum character count for an INQUIRE input line. If the input data exceeds the max count, the extra characters are ignored. The input line is not terminated until a carriage return is entered unless the /TERMINATE option is specified.

/NOECHO

Input data is not echoed to the screen.

/STATUS

Send the prompt string to the status line.

/TERMINATE

Used with the /MAX option to allow an input line to be terminated when the maximum character count is reached. When /TERMINATE is specified, the input line terminates on a carriage return or when the maximum number of characters has been entered. /TERMINATE has no meaning when used without the /MAX option.

Example 1: **INQUIRE NUMBER "Enter modem phone number to dial: "**
WRITE HOST "ATDT"NUMBER"
WAIT/TIME_OUT=30/ERROR=LATER "CONNECT 2400"
@LOGIN
EXIT
LATER:
DISPLAY "There is no modem connection, try later."
EXIT

Requests the phone number from the user. The modem is then dialed. If there is a connection, the user is automatically logged in. If the TIME_OUT criteria is met, then an informational message is displayed and the command file is exited.

Example 2: **TIME_STR="Enter Time:"**
INQUIRE/GLOBAL [5,0] TIME TIME_STR

Positions cursor at the 5th line and current column and displays the prompt "Enter Time:". The user input string is stored in the global symbol TIME.

Example 3: **50: INQUIRE/KEY KEYSTROKE "<CR><LF>Enter Up Arrow Key"**
IF KEYSTROKE="UP" THEN GOTO 100
GOTO50
100: DISPLAY "<CR><LF>You just pressed the Up Arrow Key"

Prompts the user to press the Up Arrow key. The name of the key pressed is stored in KEYSTROKE. A message is displayed once the correct key is pressed. Otherwise, it loops to the beginning for another key press.

Example 4: **INQUIRE /DIALOG THEVAR "This is the prompt string"**

This example would yield the following dialog box.



Note: The D\$BLOCK lexical is not supported with the /DIALOG option.

Example 5: **WAIT/TIME_OUT=30 "Username:"**
WRITE HOST "SMITH"
WAIT/TIME_OUT=30 "Password:"
INQUIRE/LOCAL/NOECHO PASS "Enter your password: "
WRITE HOST ""PASS""
PASS = ""
EXIT

Starts the login process for SMITH, then prompts the user for the password. Stores user entry in PASS and sends it to the host. Exits to emulation mode. By defining PASS as a local symbol, it is removed when the exit occurs.

Example 6: **INQUIRE/GLOBAL/NOECHO PASSWD "Password: "**

Displays the prompt string "Password:" on the screen. The input string is stored in the global symbol PASSWD. The input string is not echoed when it is entered.

Example 7: **INQUIRE/STATUS TIME "World time: "**

Outputs **World time:** to the status line and stores the input string in the local symbol TIME.

Related topics: DISPLAY, Display functions, Lexicals, Symbols

INTERACTIVE

INTERACTIVE (no arguments)

Sets interactive command mode. Interactive mode is used to enter consecutive commands without clicking **Execute - Command Line** each time. This command has little meaning in command files.

To cancel interactive mode, enter the ENDINTERACTIVE command.

Related topics: ENDINTERACTIVE

KERMIT

KERMIT [kermit command string]

Enters Kermit mode. If a command string is not specified, the KERMIT> prompt appears. If a string is specified, the emulator enters Kermit mode, issues the command and returns to emulation mode.

Example: **WRITE HOST "KERMIT"**
 WRITE HOST "SET FILE TYPE BINARY"
 WRITE HOST "SERVER"
 KERMIT SEND/END TEST.EXE
 WRITE HOST
 WRITE HOST "EXIT"

Automatically sets the host Kermit for a binary file transfer, uploads the PC file, TEST.EXE, and exits the host Kermit mode.

KERMIT BYE

KERMIT BYE (no arguments)

Tells the remote server to logout. The emulator terminates the host session and exits.

KERMIT CONNECT

KERMIT CONNECT (no arguments)

Exits from emulator Kermit mode and returns to host Kermit mode. Does not send any commands to the host Kermit. (Equivalent to pressing **Kermit** while in host Kermit mode.)

KERMIT DOS

KERMIT DOS [DOS cmd string]

Displays an DOS Shell window. If a DOS command string is not specified, an active DOS shell window appears. Any valid DOS command can be entered in the DOS shell window. To return to emulation mode, type EXIT.

If a DOS command is specified, an active DOS Shell window displays the result of the command. Click on the X in the upper right corner of the window and select close to return to emulation mode.

When a DOS command is issued by the host computer or from a command file, the emulator automatically returns without waiting for keyboard input.

KERMIT END

KERMIT END (no arguments)

Tells the host server to exit and returns to emulation mode. The host returns to the `KERMIT>` prompt or to the system prompt. The action taken depends on the host Kermit implementation.

KERMIT EXIT

KERMIT EXIT (no arguments)

Exits the emulator. EXIT does not send any command to the host Kermit.

KERMIT FINISH

KERMIT FINISH (no arguments)

Tells the host server to exit. The Emulator remains in Kermit mode. The host returns to the `KERMIT>` prompt or to the system prompt. The action taken depends on the host Kermit implementation.

KERMIT GET

KERMIT GET [**switches**] **source file** [**destination file**]

Sends a GET command to the server. This causes the server to send the file or files matching the source file specification to the PC.

The destination file specification is optional. If supplied, the source file is renamed to the destination filename on the PC. The destination filename can include a path specification.

Multiple files can be received with one GET command by separating the filenames with commas or by using wildcards.

Valid options:

/END

Terminates host server mode and returns to emulation mode after successful file transfer.

/EOF

Stores a DOS EOF (Ctrl Z) as the last character of the files transferred.

/LOGOUT

Terminates the host session and returns to emulation mode after successful file transfer.

Examples: **GET *.DAT \DATA****

GET *.DAT \DATA

GET *.DAT \DATA

Transfers all .DAT files from the host to the \DATA subdirectory.

KERMIT LOGOUT

KERMIT LOGOUT (no arguments)

Same as the BYE command.

KERMIT RECEIVE

KERMIT RECEIVE [switches] [d-file]

Receives files from a host running Kermit in non-server mode. Before a RECEIVE command can be issued, the SEND command must be given to the host Kermit.

Wildcarding is supported. When using wildcards in the host SEND command, do not specify a destination filename.

A destination filename is only required if you wish to rename the host file being sent.

Valid options:

/EOF

Store a DOS EOF (Ctrl Z) as the last character of the file.

Examples: **RECEIVE**

Transfers all files sent to the default file transfer directory as specified in **Setup - General - Directories**.

RECEIVE \DATA

Transfers all files sent to the PC's \DATA subdirectory. When using the RECEIVE command, you must include the trailing backslash (\) on the path specification.

KERMIT SEND

KERMIT SEND [switches] source file [destination file]

Sends the source files specified to the host Kermit program. Works with server or non-server Kermit programs. If the host Kermit program is not in server mode, the RECEIVE command must be issued to the host Kermit program before issuing the SEND command.

The file sent can be renamed or sent to a particular directory on the host computer by supplying the optional destination field. Wildcarding is supported.

If host directory strings are used in destination file specification, the host Kermit program should not translate filenames received from the PC. To disable filename translation, issue the following command to the host Kermit:

SET FILE NAMING LITERAL

Note: This is the VAX/VMS syntax for the command. Its syntax may vary on other systems or it may not be supported.

Valid options:

/END

Terminates host server mode and returns to emulation mode after successful file transfer.

/LOGOUT

Terminates the host session and returns to emulation mode after successful file transfer.

/NOEOF

Do not send an EOF (Ctrl Z) character to the host even if Ctrl Z is in the DOS file.

Example: **SEND *.DAT [TEST]**

Transfers all .DAT files to the [TEST] subdirectory on a VMS host.

LOG

LOG filename

Opens an emulator log file. A log file captures all data received from the host. If the file exists and **/OVERWRITE** or **/APPEND** is not specified, an error results. The default is **/OPEN**. The default extension is **.LOG**.

Valid options:

/APPEND

Open a log file and append the log data to the end of file. If no file exists, one is created.

/CLOSE

Close the previously opened log file. The filename is not required.

/OPEN

Create a log file.

/OVERWRITE

Open a log file and overwrite any old copies. If no file exists, one is created.

/PROMPT

Displays the interactive log file prompt. If logging is already enabled, **LOG/PROMPT** closes the log file and disables logging. If **/PROMPT** is used, any other option on the command line is ignored.

Example 1: **LOG TEST**

Creates log file TEST.LOG. If TEST.LOG already exists, an error occurs.

Example 2: **INQUIRE TIME "ENTER CURRENT DATE AND TIME: "**
OPEN/WRITE ERRORS ERRMESS.LOG
WRITE ERRORS TIME
CLOSE ERRORS
LOG/APPEND ERRMESS.LOG
WRITE HOST "@BUILD"
WAIT "\$"
LOG/CLOSE ERRMESS.LOG

Creates a log file with a date and time stamp which captures error messages generated from running a VMS COM file.

Example 3: **LOG/CLOSE**
Closes the log file.

Example 4: **LOG/OVER TEST**
Opens TEST.LOG and overwrites any old copies.

Example 5: **WRITE HOST "MAIL"**
WRITE HOST "READ"
LOG/TEXT MAIL
WRITE HOST "EXIT"
Captures a host mail message into a MAIL.LOG file.

ON ABORT

ON ABORT THEN statement

Defines the course of action when a command file is aborted. The specified action is taken only if the command processor is enabled for abort error checking. Abort error checking is enabled (SET ABORT) by default.

An ON ABORT action remains in effect until one of the following occurs:

- /// The command procedure exits, which resets to the ON ABORT condition previously specified.
- /// Another ON ABORT command is executed.
- /// The procedure executes the SET NOABORT command.

The default error condition is ON ABORT THEN STOP. If an ABORT action is specified, it overrides actions specified for previous levels, and sets the default action for any following sublevels to EXIT. The error codes and mnemonic identifier are stored in the global symbols \$STATUS, \$SEVERITY, and \$STATUSID, even if error checking is disabled (SET NOABORT).

Related topics: SET ABORT

ON DEVICE_ERROR

ON DEVICE_ERROR THEN statement

Defines the course of action when an error occurs from a peripheral device, such as a printer or a plotter. The action is taken only if device error checking is enabled (SET DEVICE_ERROR). By default, device error checking is disabled (SET NODEVICE_ERROR).

An ON DEVICE_ERROR action remains in effect until one of the following occurs:

- /// The command procedure exits, which restores the previous ON DEVICE_ERROR condition.
- /// Another ON DEVICE_ERROR command is executed.
- /// The procedure executes the SET NODEVICE_ERROR command.

The default error condition is ON DEVICE_ERROR THEN STOP. If a DEVICE_ERROR action is specified, it overrides the actions specified for previous levels and sets the default action for any following sublevels to EXIT. When errors occur, the error codes and mnemonic identifier are stored in the global symbols \$STATUS, \$SEVERITY, and \$STATUSID, even if error checking is disabled (SET NODEVICE_ERROR).

Related topics: SET DEVICE_ERROR

ON DISCONNECT

ON DISCONNECT THEN statement

Defines the course of action when the communications connection is lost. The action is taken when the disconnect occurs.

When using an RS232 Serial connection, the Carrier Detect signal is monitored to determine the state of the connection. However, if Modem Control is disabled in the Port Setup dialog box, the state of the connection is not monitored.

When running over a network, the state of the network virtual circuit is monitored.

The specified action is taken only if disconnect error checking is enabled (SET DISCONNECT). By default, disconnect error checking is disabled (SET NODISCONNECT).

An ON DISCONNECT action remains in effect until one of the following occurs:

- /// The command procedure exits, which restores the previous ON DISCONNECT condition.
- /// Another ON DISCONNECT command is executed.
- /// The procedure executes the SET NODISCONNECT command.

The default error condition is ON DISCONNECT THEN STOP. If a DISCONNECT action is specified, it overrides actions specified for previous levels, and sets the default action for any following sublevels to EXIT. When errors occur, the error codes and mnemonic identifier are stored in the global symbols \$STATUS, \$SEVERITY, and \$STATUSID, even if error checking is disabled (SET NODISCONNECT).

Related topics: SET DISCONNECT

ON (ERROR_SEVERITY)

ON error_severity THEN statement

Defines the course of action taken when an error occurs that is equal to or greater in severity than the specified error.

The default error condition is ON ERROR THEN EXIT. This condition tells the command process to CONTINUE when a WARNING error occurs, and execute an EXIT command when an ERROR or SEVERE_ERROR condition occurs. The action is taken only if error checking is enabled (SET ON). Error checking is enabled by default.

These keywords are listed in order of severity and summarize how the command controls error handling:

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| WARNING | The action is performed if a WARNING, ERROR, or SEVERE_ERROR occurs. |
| ERROR | The action is performed if an ERROR, or SEVERE_ERROR occurs. Does not affect the handling of warning errors. |
| SEVERE_ERROR | The action is performed if a SEVERE_ERROR occurs. Does not affect the handling of warning and error conditions. |

An ON command action is executed only once. After the ON command action is taken, the ON action is reset to the default (ON ERROR THEN EXIT).

An ON command action can be specified for each active command level. The ON command action applies only within the command procedure in which it is executed. Upon exiting a command procedure, the prior ON error conditions are re-established to their previous settings. The error codes and mnemonic identifier are stored in the global symbols \$STATUS, \$SEVERITY, and \$STATUSID, even if error checking is disabled (SET NOON).

Note: If the command file contains a GOTO command to a non-existent label, an EXIT command executes, regardless of the current ON ERROR assignment.

Related topics: SET ON

OPEN

OPEN logical-name[:] file-specification

Where: **logical-name** is the name used by other commands to reference the open file.

file-specification is the file to open and can include a full path name if desired. The default file extension is .DAT.

Opens a file for read, write, or append operations and assigns a logical name to the file. This command must precede a READ or WRITE command for file access. The file stays open until the CLOSE command is executed or an application exit occurs. If the command file terminates before the opened file is closed, the file remains open.

The same file may be referenced by several open statements. However, each open statement must use a different logical name.

Note: The logical name HOST does not have to be opened before reading or writing.

Valid options:

/APPEND

Opens an existing file for write, starting at the end of the file. If the file does not exist, it is created.

If the /READ option is included with /APPEND, the file must already exist. If the file does not exist, an error occurs.

/ERROR=label

Continues the process at the label if an error occurs.

/READ

Opens an existing file for read only and sets the file data pointer to the beginning of the file. This is the default for the OPEN command.

/WRITE

Creates a new file for write only. If the file already exists, it is overwritten when the first WRITE occurs.

If the /READ option is included with /WRITE, an existing file is opened at the beginning of the file. The file must already exist, otherwise an error occurs.

If the /APPEND option is used with /WRITE, the /WRITE option is ignored.

Example 1: **OPEN FILE2 DATA.TXT**

Assigns DATA.TXT to the logical FILE2, and opens the file named DATA.TXT for reading. An error results if the file does not exist.

Example 2: **TOP: INQUIRE/STATUS FILE "Enter the data file name:"**

```
OPEN/READ/APPEND/ERROR=ERR DATA 'FILE'  
@PROCEDURE  
CLOSE DATA  
DISPLAY ""'FILE' has been updated."  
EXIT  
ERR:  
DISPLAY ""'FILE' does not exist"  
GOTO TOP
```

Checks for the filename entered by the user. If the file exists, PROCEDURE.ECF is run. If the file does not exist, an error message displays and the command file runs again.

Example 3: **OPEN/WRITE FILE1 C:\EM320\TEST.DAT**

Assigns TEST.DAT to the logical FILE1, and creates a file named TEST.DAT for writing.

Related topics: CLOSE, READ, WRITE

PRINT CLOSE

PRINT CLOSE (no arguments)

Closes the open printer, flushes the page and sends the document to the spooler to be printed.

PRINT EJECT

PRINT EJECT (no arguments)

Ejects a page on the printer.

PRINT ON/OFF

PRINT on/off

Turns auto print mode on or off. In auto print mode, every line sent to the screen is also sent to the printer.

Valid options:

/CONTROLLER on/off

Sets printer controller mode in which data passes directly to the printer without displaying on the screen.

Use the /CONTROLLER options to print lines longer than 132 columns to pass control characters.

PRINT SCREEN

PRINT SCREEN (no arguments)

Prints the screen (text screen).

PRINT SCROLLBACK

PRINT SCROLLBACK

Prints the text in scrollback memory plus the current screen.

PRINT SELECTED

PRINT SELECTED

Prints the current selection.

QUIT

QUIT [specific-error]

Where: **specific-error** is a quoted mnemonic identifier, error code or a symbol (e.g., EXIT \$STATUS).
Works exactly like EXIT except that it drops the modem control signals. See EXIT for a description.

Valid options:

/EM

Quit the emulator and return to DOS with the corresponding \$STATUS code passed to ERRORLEVEL.
See the *DOS ERRORLEVEL* topic for more information.

READ

READ logical-name[:] symbol-name

Where: **logical-name** is the logical name assigned by an OPEN command or the HOST logical.

Reads an ASCII record from the logical into the specified symbol.

If the READ command references a DOS file, the file is read a record at a time. After each read, the file data pointer is positioned to the start of the next record. The maximum record size is 255 characters. Records are terminated by carriage returns. READ is not intended for use with binary files.

Valid options:

/END_OF_FILE=label

Control transfers to the label when the end of the file is detected. If /END_OF_FILE is not used, and the EOF character is encountered, the process continues at the /ERROR label specified. If neither option is specified, and the EOF character is encountered, the current ON condition is taken. Valid only with a DOS file logical.

/ERROR=label

If an error occurs, control is transferred to the label specified. If /ERROR is not used, the current ON condition action is taken.

Related topics: OPEN, WAIT, WRITE

READ HOST

READ HOST

Reads an ASCII record from the currently connected host into the specified symbol.

Valid options:

/ERROR=label

If an error occurs, control is transferred to the label specified. If /ERROR is not used, the current ON condition action is taken.

/NODISPLAY

Does not display data as it is read. Valid only with the HOST logical.

/TIME_OUT=[hh:mm:]ss

Waits for data until the time specified. Valid only with the HOST logical. A timeout error occurs if no data is received from the host within the specified time. /TIME_OUT and /ERROR can be specified simultaneously to redirect command execution.

Related topics: OPEN, WAIT, WRITE

READ SCREEN

READ SCREEN [row,col] Symbol-name

Where: **row** is the row of the screen to read.

col is the column of the screen to start reading. If col is not specified, column 1 is used.

Reads a specific row of text from the screen into the symbol.

Example: **READ SCREEN [1,10] TEXT**

Reads all the text on line 1 of screen, starting at column 10, into the variable text.

REPLAY

REPLAY filename

Replays an emulator log file. The filename can contain a full path specification and has a default extension of .LOG. Refer to the *Log File Replay* topic for more information.

Valid options:

/PROMPT

Displays the log file prompt.

Example: **DISPLAY/NOCR "<CSI>0;0|"
DISPLAY/NOCR "<CSI>0;3;20|Press Alt A to end demonstration."
COUNT=0
TOP:
CLS
DISPLAY [5,10] "This demo shows application menus."
REPLAY MENU1.LOG
DELAY/NOMESS 10
REPLAY MENU2.LOG
DELAY/NOMESS 10
!... additional replay commands
COUNT = COUNT + 1
IF COUNT .LT. 10 THEN GOTO TOP
DISPLAY/NOCR "<CSI>0;1|"
EXIT**

Runs a repeating demonstration program of application menu log files. The user-defined status line is used for messages.

Related topics: LOG

RETURN

RETURN (no arguments)

Used to return from a subroutine called by the GOSUB command. Valid only with the GOSUB command.

Related topics: GOSUB

SCAN

SCAN (no arguments)

Enters keyboard scan mode. In scan mode, pressing a key displays its key name. Scan mode is useful for identifying key names.

SEND

SEND filename

Sends an ASCII text file to the host.

Flow control to the host is provided through character delay (SET CDELAY), line delay (SET LDELAY) and use of the turnaround character (SET TURNAROUND).

Valid options:

/ANSWERBACK

Send the answerback message specified in the **Setup - Terminal** dialog box to the host. Since the answerback message can be concealed, store your password in the answerback message when automatically sending it to the host in a command file.

Note: SEND/ANSWERBACK cannot be used with any other qualifiers.

/EOF

Sends an End of File marker at the end of the file. Ctrl Z is the default. The SET EOF command can be used to change the EOF character sent. To send an EOF character without sending data from a file, use SEND/EOF without specifying a filename.

/FILTER

Removes control characters.

Note: Filter will not pass C_R , L_F , V_T , H_T , and E_{SC} .

/LINEFEED

Normally, the emulator does not send line feeds that are immediately preceded by a carriage return. If the /LINEFEED option is specified, all line feeds in the file are sent to the host.

/NOMESSAGE

Suppresses the default message: “**Sending <filename>**”.

Related topics: SET CDELAY, SET EOF, SET LDELAY, SET TURNAROUND, WRITE.

SESSION

SESSION NAME

Where: **Name** is the same session name that is defined in the Session Manager. If the session name contains spaces, enclose the name in double quotes (“”).

Starts an emulator session that is defined in the Session Manager.

SET [NO]DDEAUTOINITIALIZE

SET [NO]DDEAUTOINITIALIZE (no arguments)

Sets the DDE auto initialize feature to on or off. When enabled, the emulator automatically enables itself as a DDE server and broadcasts its name to other Windows applications.

SET [NO]DDEAPPENDINSTANCE

SET [NO]DDEAPPENDINSTANCE (no arguments)

Sets the DDE append instance feature to on or off. When enabled, the emulator appends a unique identifier to the end of the server name. This allows the execution of multiple instances of the emulator while still being able to distinguish them as servers.

Example: **SET DDESERVERNAME “MS320”**
SET DDEAPPENDINSTANCE

Sets the DDE server name for an instance and each subsequent instance. New instances of the emulator automatically append a unique identifier if the Append Unique Identifier option is checked in the DDE Setup dialog box.

SET DDECLIENTTIMEOUT

SET DDECLIENTTIMEOUT seconds

Sets the timeout value, in seconds, for the DDE client commands.

SET DDESERVERNAME

SET DDESERVERNAME “Server Name”

Sets the name that the emulator responds to as a DDE server. Clients use this string as the “Service Name” when performing a DDE connect transaction.

This value is linked to the Server Name option in the DDE Setup dialog box.

Example: **SET DDESERVERNAME “MS320”**

Sets the DDE server name to “MS320”

When changing the server name, the emulator disconnects the instance with the old server name, and reconnects with the new server name.

Note: Any active conversations with the old server name are terminated.

SET ABORT

SET [NO]ABORT (no arguments)

Enables or disables error checking of *Execute - Abort* during execution of a command procedure.

The SET NOABORT command disables abort error checking and resets the ON ABORT error condition to STOP. The error codes and mnemonic identifier are still updated in the global symbols \$STATUS, \$SEVERITY, and \$STATUSID.

The SET ABORT and SET NOABORT commands apply to all command procedure levels. SET ABORT is the default. (Usable in command procedures only.)

Note: SET NOABORT is not recommended - it can prevent a normal exit from a command procedure. If a command procedure began to loop uncontrollably, it could not be aborted.

Example: **SET NOABORT
LOG SYSMESS
DELAY 15:00:00
LOG/CLOSE**

Logs all data from the host into SYSMESS.LOG on the PC for 15 hours, say 5pm to 8am. If the command file is aborted, the log file remains open.

Related topics: ON ABORT

SET CHARACTER DELAY

SET CDELAY ms

Sets a character delay for the SEND and WRITE commands. The emulator delays the specified number of milliseconds after sending each character. Specify a character delay to slow down the data rate to prevent overrunning the host's terminal buffer. The default value is zero. Maximum value is 255 ms.

Related topics: SEND File, SET LDELAY, SET TURNAROUND

SET DEVICE_ERROR

SET [NO]DEVICE_ERROR (no arguments)

Enables or disables device error checking. A device error can occur from a peripheral device connected to the serial or parallel port, such as a printer or a plotter as a result of an emulator command. Device errors not associated with emulator functions are not monitored.

This command disables error checking and resets the ON DEVICE_ERROR condition to STOP. The error codes and mnemonic identifier are still updated in the global symbols \$STATUS, \$SEVERITY, and \$STATUSID.

The SET DEVICE_ERROR and SET NODEVICE_ERROR commands apply to all command procedure levels. SET NODEVICE_ERROR is the default. (Usable in command procedures only.)

SET DISCONNECT

SET [NO]DISCONNECT (no arguments)

Enables or disables error checking of the communications connection. Disconnect errors can occur when serial or network connections are lost.

This command disables error checking and resets the ON DISCONNECT error condition to STOP. The error codes and mnemonic identifier are still updated in the global symbols \$STATUS, \$SEVERITY, and \$STATUSID.

The SET DISCONNECT and SET NODISCONNECT commands apply to all command procedure levels. SET NODISCONNECT is the default. (Usable in command procedures only.)

Related topics: ON DISCONNECT

SET EOF CHARACTER

SET EOF value

Where: **value** is the decimal value of the ASCII character. Ctrl Z (26) is the default.

Defines the End of File character sent by the /EOF option of the SEND command.

Related topics: SEND File, SET CDELAY, SET LDELAY, SET TURNAROUND

SET HOST

SET HOST [node-name]

Connects to a remote node. The SET HOST command must be used with one of the following:

Valid options:

/DEFAULT_PORT

Connects to the default port selected in the Auto Connect Port dialog box. If the port is set to None or if you are already connected to the default port, an error is returned.

/DISCONNECT

Disconnects from the currently connected port.

/LAST_NODE

Connects to the last successfully connected port. If a previous connection did not exist, an error is returned.

/PROTOCOL= node

Connects to the specified protocol.

Where: **protocol** is SERIAL, MODEM, POLYLAT, WINSOCK, etc,...
node is the network node name.

/PASSWORD=password

Used only with the /PORT option, the /PASSWORD option allows the connect password to be specified.

Example 1: **SET HOST/SERIAL=COM1**

Connects to COM1.

Example 2: **SET HOST/WINSOCK=WILLY**

Connects to the WINSOCK node WILLY.

Example 3: **SET HOST/POLYLAT=MARS**

Connects to the LAT node MARS.

SET KEYMAP

SET KEYMAP name

Where: **name** is the name of a keymap.

Switches the current keymap to the specified keymap.

SET LINE DELAY

SET LDELAY secs

Sets a line delay for the SEND and WRITE commands. Specifies the time for the emulator to wait after sending a line before sending the next line. The default is zero. Maximum value is 255 seconds.

If a line delay and turnaround character is specified, the emulator waits until it receives the turnaround character or the delay expires, whichever occurs first. If SET NOTURNAROUND has been specified, the emulator waits the full delay after each line.

Related topics: SEND File, SET CDELAY, SET TURNAROUND, WRITE

SET MESSAGE

SET [NO]MESSAGE [message_type]

Where: **message_type** is Informational, Warning, Error, or Severe_Error.

SET MESSAGE and SET NOMESSAGE enable and/or disable the display of messages. The message_type determines the category of message affected. All messages below or equal to the message_type specified are affected. If no message_type options are provided, SET NOMESSAGE affects all messages.

Example: **SET NOMESSAGE = WARNING**

Disables informational and warning messages.

SET ON

SET [NO]ON (no arguments)

Enables or disables error checking.

SET NOON disables error checking and error message display. However, the error codes and mnemonic identifier in the global symbols \$STATUS, \$SEVERITY, and \$STATUSID are updated.

The SET ON and SET NOON commands apply only to the current command level. If SET NOON is used in a command procedure that calls a second procedure, the default (SET ON) is used while executing the second command procedure. (Usable in command procedures only.)

Related topics: ON error_severity

SET TERMINAL

SET TERMINAL characteristic

Sets the terminal characteristics.

Valid options:

/APPLICATION_KEYPAD

Specifies that the keypad keys send application control functions. Limited to DEC terminal emulation modes.

/DATA_BITS=bits

Where: **bits** is 7 or 8.

Sets the number of communication data bits. The default is 8 bits with parity = none. Limited to Serial communications.

/DEVICE=terminal

Where: **terminal** is VT320_7, VT320_8, VT220_7, VT220_8, VT100, VT52, SCO-ANSI, or BBS-ANSI.

Selects the terminal to emulate.

/[NO]ECHO

Controls display of input from the keyboard. If ECHO is set, the data transmitted to the host is locally echoed to the screen. If NOECHO is set, the data is not echoed by the emulator. In NOECHO mode the host is expected to echo the data. NOECHO is the default. ECHO should be set on half-duplex systems.

/INSERT

Sets the line editing mode to insert. Limited to DEC terminal emulation modes.

/LIMITED_TRANSMIT

Restricts the transmit speed to between 150 and 180 characters per second. Limited transmit may be necessary for some half-duplex systems. Limited to Serial communications.

/LINES=rows

Where: **rows** is 24 - 48.

Sets the screen height to the desired number of rows.

/LOCAL

Sets the emulator to local mode. In local mode, all characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the screen display processor. Data is not sent to the host and data received from the host is ignored.

/[NO]MODEM_CONTROL

Enables/disables carrier detect monitoring. Modem control should be disabled when using a direct connection. Limited to Serial communications.

/[NO]NEW_LINE

If enabled, generates a line feed whenever a carriage return is entered.

/NUMERIC_KEYPAD

Specifies that the keypad keys send numeric control functions. Limited to DEC terminal emulation modes.

/ONLINE

Allows the emulator to communicate with the host. (Disable with the /LOCAL option.)

/OVERSTRIKE

Sets the line editing mode to overstrike. New characters entered into the line replace the existing characters. /OVERSTRIKE is the system default. Limited to DEC terminal emulation modes.

/PARITY=type

Where: **type** is Odd, Even, Space, Mark or None.

Sets the communications parity. Parity = none and Data Bits = 8 is the recommended default. Limited to Serial communications.

/PORT=com port

Where: **com port** is COM1, COM2, COM3 or COM4.

Selects the communications port. Limited to Serial communications.

/FLOW_CONTROL=type

Where: **type** is XON, RTS, or None.

Selects the communications flow control protocol. Xon/Xoff is the protocol used by DEC and most other host systems. Limited to Serial communications.

/SPEED=baud rate

Where: **baud rate** is 75, 110, 300, 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, or 115200.

Selects the communications speed. Limited to Serial communications.

/STOP_BITS=num

Where: **num** is 1 or 2.

Sets the number of stop bits for each data word. One is the recommended setting. Limited to Serial communications.

/UNLIMITED_TRANSMIT

Does not limit the character transmit rate. This is the recommended setting. (The transmit rate can be restricted with the /LIMITED_TRANSMIT option.) Limited to Serial communications.

/[NO]WARNING_BELL

Enables/disables a warning bell for operating errors and receipt of a Ctrl G.

/WIDTH=columns

Where: **columns** is 80 or 132.

Sets the screen width to 80 or 132 columns.

/[NO]WRAP

Controls whether the emulator generates a carriage return and line feed at the end of a line. The end of the line is determined by the /WIDTH option. If /NOWRAP is specified, the characters written at the last column position overwrite each other. /WRAP is the default.

SET TURNAROUND CHARACTER

SET [NO]TURNAROUND *value* or quoted string

Where: **value** is the decimal value of the ASCII character or a quoted character. Line Feed (10) is the default.

Sets the turnaround character for the SEND command. When a turnaround character is specified, the emulator waits for the turnaround character to be received from the host before sending the next line.

Turnaround characters perform flow synchronization and help prevent overrunning the host's terminal input buffer. If a turnaround character is specified, the SEND operation could hang if a turnaround character is not received. Clicking on **Execute - Abort** terminates the operation. If a SET LDELAY is specified with the turnaround character, it is used as the maximum time the emulator waits before sending the next line. (Affects the SEND and WRITE command only.)

Examples: **SET TURNAROUND = 10**
SET TURNAROUND = "<LF>"

Both commands set the turnaround character to a line feed.

Related topics: SEND File, SET CDELAY, SET LDELAY

SET VERIFY

SET [NO]VERIFY (no arguments)

When enabled, displays command lines of a command procedure as they are executed. Also, enables the display of error messages regardless of whether error checking is disabled. The default is SET NOVERIFY.

SHOW SYMBOL

SHOW SYMBOL [*symbol-name*]

Displays the local and global values for the specified symbol. If no symbol name is given, all the symbols from the local and global symbol table are displayed. Wildcarding is supported; an asterisk (*) may be used for variable length substitution and a question mark (?) for single letter substitution. The default is SHOW SYMBOL /LOCAL/GLOBAL.

Note: Although SHOW SYMBOL displays local and global symbols of the same name, the local value of a symbol will override the global value when referenced in a command procedure.

Symbol values are displayed on the screen regardless of the message location.

Valid options:

/GLOBAL

Displays the value(s) from the global symbol table.

/LOCAL

Displays the value(s) from the local symbol table.

Example 1: **SHOW SYMBOL *A**

Displays all the symbols that end with “A”.

Example 2: **SHOW SYMBOL/LOCAL VARI??**

Displays all the six letter local symbols that start with “VARI”.

Related topics: DELETE SYMBOL

STOP

STOP (no arguments)

Terminates the execution of all command files.

Related topics: EXIT

WAIT

WAIT [match-string-expression]

Where: **match-string-expression** is a quoted string, lexical, symbol, or combination of the above joined by plus symbols (+) (i.e., “string” + symbol).

Waits for the match string expression to be received from the host. The string must match the host data exactly, but is not case sensitive unless the /CASE option is specified. WAIT is intended for command file use.

If the WAIT command is issued from the host, it does not prevent the emulator from accepting additional host commands while it is waiting for the string.

Valid options:

/CASE

Requires the comparison to be case sensitive.

/ERROR=label

Process continues at the label if an error occurs.

/NODISPLAY

Inhibits the display of data from the host.

/NOMESSAGE

Inhibits the display of the WAIT informational message.

/NOSTRING_DISPLAY

Inhibits the display of the match string.

/TIME_OUT=[hh:mm:]ss

Sets a maximum time period to wait for the host string match. If the string is not received in the allotted time, the process continues with the next command line. Specifying a **/TIME_OUT** qualifier without a string flushes data received from the host until no data is received for the time specified. The **/TIME_OUT** option can be used with the **/ERROR** option.

Related topics: READ, WRITE

WIN

WIN (Windows command string)

Executes the Windows command string in order to launch a Windows application from within the emulator.

Example: **WIN NOTEPAD**
 Displays the Windows Notepad.

Symbols can be used to assign Windows command strings to a more convenient form.

Example: **NOTEPAD:=="WIN NOTEPAD"**
 NOTEPAD C:\EMULATOR\MODEM.ECF
 Creates an emulator command, NOTEPAD, that launches the Notepad editor. The editor then displays the MODEM.ECF file.

WORDPERFECT MODE

WP5 ON/OFF

Enables or disables WordPerfect version 5.0 mode. **WP OFF** also disables WordPerfect 5.0 mode. In WP mode, the emulator's keyboard assignments are altered to emulate the PC version of WordPerfect.

WRITE

WRITE logical-name[:] [string-expression]

Where: **logical-name** is a file logical assigned by the OPEN command or the HOST logical. HOST is a special predefined local symbol that points to the selected communications port.

string-expression is a quoted string, lexical, symbol, or combination of the above joined by plus signs (+) (i.e., "string" + symbol).

Writes the string expression to the logical name, followed by a carriage return. To suppress the carriage return, use the **/NOCR** option.

If information is written to a file, the file pointer is positioned after the data written.

Flow control is provided through character delay (**SET CDELAY**) and line delay (**SET LDELAY**).

Valid options:

/ERROR=label

Process continues at the label if an error occurs.

/KEY_TOKEN= token

Where: **token** is a valid terminal keyboard token.

Used with the HOST logical, this option sends token value to the host.

/NOCR

No carriage return is sent after the string. A carriage return is sent separately.

/UPDATE

The data previously READ is to be overwritten. Valid only when rewriting the previous record read. The new data string must be the same length as the previous string or an error results. Valid only with a file logical opened with the /READ and /WRITE options.

Example 1: **WRITE HOST**

Sends a carriage return to the host. (Also the same as WRITE HOST “”)

Example 2: **WRITE /KEY_TOKEN=BACKSPACE HOST**

Sends a backspace to the host.

Example 3: **WRITE HOST “SET X:=="ABC"”**

Sends **SET X:=="ABC"** to the host.

Example 4: **P1 = XRAY.DAT**
WRITE HOST “ TYPE “P1”

Sends **TYPE XRAY.DAT** to the host.

Example 5: **READ FILE2 DATA**
WRITE/UPDATE FILE2 TEXT

Reads the first record from the logical name **FILE2** into the symbol **DATA**, then replaces the data just read with the information in symbol **TEXT**. Both sets of data must be the same length. The DOS file must have been opened using /READ and /WRITE.

Related topics: OPEN, READ, SET CDELAY, SET LDELAY, WAIT



CHAPTER 8 **COMMAND FILE PROGRAMMING**

OVERVIEW

Command files are DOS text files that contain emulator commands. Command files are useful for automating tasks such as transferring files, logging on, and defining keyboard configurations. However, command files are not limited to the above functions. This chapter is devoted to command language programming while Chapter 7 (Command Language) explains the individual emulator commands.

This chapter covers the following advanced programming features:

- /// Symbol assignment and substitution
- /// Full range of lexical functions (Locate, Extract, etc.)
- /// Logical operations
- /// IF processing
- /// Special display lexical functions
- /// Command file nesting
- /// Comprehensive error control

8.1 DOCUMENTING COMMAND FILES

It is a good programming practice to use comments to document command procedures. Comments are prefixed with the exclamation point (!). Any data to the right of the exclamation point is ignored. If a literal exclamation point is needed in a command line, it must appear within a quoted string or it is interpreted as the comment character. In this example, the boldfaced type is used to set off the comments.

```
Example: ! This procedure dials a modem number and transfers a text file to the host.
! Format: SENDTXT input-file [output-file]
! Where: P1 is the filename to send, [P2] is the output filename if different
IF P2 .eqs. "" THEN P2 = P1 ! Make sure p2 is defined
ON WARNING THEN EXIT ! Set to EXIT if error
DIAL VAX ! Dial phone directory entry VAX
WRITE HOST "COPY TT: "P2" ! Set host to receive data to filename p2
WAIT "<CR><NULL>" ! Wait for prompt
ON WARNING THEN GOTO DONE ! Set to close COPY command if error
SEND 'P1' ! Send the file p1
DONE:
SEND EOF ! Close COPY command
EXIT
```

8.2 PASSING PARAMETERS

Up to eight parameters can be passed to a command file. Each parameter must be separated by a space.

```
Example: @filename [p1] [p2] ... [p8]
Or, from the host: C_s,5[@filename [p1 p2 ... p8]_T
```

Commands in the command file utilize the passed parameters by referring to P1 - P8. The value of a passed parameter is recovered by quoting the parameter with the symbol substitution character ‘ (single quote). The parameter values are automatically converted to uppercase unless they are enclosed in a set of quotes.

```
Example: The file SEND.ECF contains the string: KERMIT SEND 'P1','P2'
Typing this string at the command prompt: CMD>@SEND FILE1.DAT FILE2.DAT
Tells the emulator to issue the command: KERMIT SEND FILE1.DAT, FILE2.DAT
```

8.3 SYMBOLS

A symbol (also known as variables) is a name to which a character string or integer value is assigned. The symbol name must begin with an alphabetic character, an underscore (`_`) or a dollar sign (`$`), but may contain other alphanumeric characters. The maximum symbol name length is 31 characters.

Integer values are limited to 16 bits (-32767 to 32767). Strings are a maximum of 255 characters in length and must be quoted (string = "string") or assigned using the implied string delimiter (string:=expression).

Symbols can be used for the following purposes:

- /// Synonyms for emulator commands (foreign commands)
- /// Variables in expressions or command procedures
- /// Arguments to commands
- /// Arguments to command procedures

8.3.1 Symbol Types

There are two types of symbols: Local and Global. Local symbols are available as long as the current command file is executing. Global symbols are permanently defined until deleted or the emulator exits.

The emulator stores symbols in local and global symbol tables. A local symbol table is maintained for each active command level including emulation mode (no command file executing). These tables are deleted as their respective command level is terminated. (Local symbols from all command levels above the current level are available to the current level.) The emulation mode local symbol table is deleted when the emulator is exited.

Note: A new command level is created each time a command file is executed without exiting the current command file (nesting command files).

Global symbols are accessible by all command levels. The emulator maintains only one global symbol table.

Local symbols are assigned using an equal sign (=). Global symbols are assigned with a double equal sign (==).

Example: `KER = "KERMIT"` (local)
`SS == "SHOW SYMBOL"` (global)

8.3.1.1 Permanent Global Symbols

Three permanent global symbols, `$STATUS`, `$SEVERITY`, and `$STATUSID`, are reserved. They hold the error code and error mnemonic from the most recently executed command.

These symbols are useful when nesting command files. When a command file is complete, control returns to the calling command file. The status of the exiting command file is stored in `$STATUS`, `$SEVERITY` and `$STATUSID` for testing by the calling command file. If no error occurs, a status of `SUCCESS (1)` returns in the symbols.

8.3.2 Assigning Symbol Values

The assignment statement equates a symbol to an expression:

symbol-name **=[=]** **expression**

An expression can contain an integer value, a symbol name, a quoted string, a lexical function or a combination of these connected with arithmetic operators. See the Section 8.5.3 (Integer Expressions) for more information.

Example 1: **XX == "This is a string" ! Global String**
SHOW SYMBOL XX

XX == "This is a string"

Example 2: **SUBSTR = F\$EXTRACT(5,2,XX) ! Local String**
SHOW SYMBOL SUBSTR

SUBSTR= "is"

Example 3: **COUNT == 1 ! Global integer**
SHOW SYMBOL COUNT

COUNT == 1 Hex=0001 Octal = 000001

Example 4: **SS == "show symbol" ! Global String**
TEXT== "This is a test" ! Global String
SS TEXT

TEXT== "This is a test"

8.3.2.1 Implied String Assignments

Use a colon with an equal sign (**:=** or **==**) to specify an implied string assignment. Quotes are not required.

Examples: **TEXT:= THIS IS A TEST (local)**
SS:= SHOW SYMBOL (global)

Leading and trailing tabs and spaces are stripped from implied strings. All other multiple spaces or tabs are reduced to a single space character.

Implied strings are normally converted to all capital letters. Case toggles on and off using a quote sign (").

Example: **TEXT:= "This is a "test**
SHOW SYMBOL TEXT
TEXT== "This is a TEST"

Enclosing the entire string in quotation marks prevents uppercase conversion.

Example: **TEXT:= "This is a test"**
SHOW SYMBOL TEXT
TEXT== "This is a test"

Pair consecutive quotes (“”) together to embed a quotation mark (”) within a string expression.

```
Example: TEXT:= "This is a ""TEST"" line"  
SHOW SYMBOL TEXT  
TEXT== "This is a "TEST" line"
```

Terminate an implied string expression with a carriage return or an exclamation mark (comment character).

```
Example: TEXT:== This is a ! test  
SHOW SYMBOL TEXT  
TEXT == "This is a"
```

An exclamation mark can be included within an implied string assignment by quoting the string.

```
Example: TEXT:== "This is a test!"  
SHOW SYMBOL TEXT  
TEXT == "This is a test!"
```

8.4 LABELS

Labels are names used to symbolically reference a location within a command file.

```
Example: LOOP: IF COUNT .EQ. 10 THEN GOTO DONE  
COUNT=COUNT+1  
GOTO LOOP  
DONE: DISPLAY "DONE"
```

Labels are useful for redirecting command file execution (GOTO label). They are also used for marking the beginning of a D\$BLOCK text block.

A label is always followed by a colon (:). Any printable ASCII character can be used in a label name. Labels have a maximum length of 32 characters, including the colon.

8.5 EXPRESSION EVALUATION

Expressions evaluate to either string or integer values, depending on the type of value used in the expression and the operator used to modify or compare them. Table 8-1 lists the expression evaluation rules. If “any value” is a string value, it is converted to an integer value before the operation is performed (except string compare).

Table 8-1 Expression Modes

| Expression | Result |
|--|---------|
| Integer value | Integer |
| String value | String |
| Integer lexical function | Integer |
| String lexical function | String |
| Integer symbol | Integer |
| String symbol | String |
| +, -, or NOT any value | Integer |
| Any value .AND. any value | Integer |
| Any value .OR. any value | Integer |
| String + or - string | String |
| Any value * or / any value | Integer |
| Any value (string compare) any value | Integer |
| Any value (arithmetic compare) any value | Integer |

8.5.1 String to Integer Conversion

Strings containing numbers are converted to their integer values. For example, the string “64” is converted to 64.

Alphabetical strings are converted to the integer 1 if the string begins with T, t, Y, or y. If the string begins with any other letter, the string is converted to integer 0.

8.5.2 String Expressions

A character string expression is an expression that evaluates to a string value. A character string expression can contain character strings, lexical functions that evaluate to strings, and symbols that evaluate to strings. They can also contain groups of strings connected by operators. Whenever values are connected by one or more operators, all values must be string expressions for the result to remain a string expression.

Examples: **FILENAME= “XRAY.DAT”**
TEXT = “TIME” + “OUT”
COUNT = “TEN”
TOTAL = “THE TOTAL IS ” + COUNT

A String value unrepresented by an alphabetical character is inserted into a string with a pair of angle brackets.

Example: **FF = “<12>”** **!FF = Form Feed**

8.5.3 Integer Expressions

An integer expression is an expression that evaluates to an integer value. An integer expression can contain integers, lexical functions that evaluate to integers, and symbols that evaluate to integers. They can also contain groups of integers or strings connected by arithmetic operators, logical operators, and comparison operators.

Integer values must be specified as decimal numbers unless preceded by a Radix operator. Hexadecimal numbers use %X while Octal numbers are specified using %O.

```
Examples:  COUNT = 10           ! DECIMAL 10
           HEX = %XC           ! HEX C
           OCTAL = %012        ! OCTAL 12
           SUM = 1 + 7 + COUNT
```

8.5.4 Expression Substitution

This feature is useful for debugging when SET VERIFY is in effect. Early evaluation of an expression can be forced by the use of the apostrophe (') substitution operator. The expression being evaluated must be enclosed in parenthesis and be preceded by the apostrophe.

Example: **IF '(a + b) .eq. '(c - d) THEN GOTO END**

The value of **a + b** and **c - d** are evaluated and their values are compared to see if they are equal. If equal, the control continues at label **END**. The apostrophe does not change the final result.

Expression substitution is useful when using SET VERIFY to determine the result of an evaluation.

Formal evaluation of an expression occurs left to right within the parentheses. An error results if the expression is unbalanced causing an unresolvable evaluation. See also, Section 8.12 (Symbol and Lexical Substitution).

Example: **SET VERIFY**

```
A = 5
B = 'A * 2
C = '(A + B)
D = '((A + B) - C)
IF '(A + B) .eq. '(C + D) THEN ANS = "TRUE"
IF '((A + B) .eq. (C + D)) THEN ANS = "TRUE"
```

Read from a command file, these expressions would evaluate and display to the screen as:

```
A = 5
B = 5 * 2
C = 15
D = 0
IF 15 .eq. 15 THEN ANS = "TRUE"
IF 1 THEN ANS = "TRUE"
```


8.6 OPERATORS IN EXPRESSIONS

Operators connect two or more elements within an expression. Some are mathematical symbols like the plus sign (+). Others specify logical and comparison operations and consist of letters enclosed in a set of periods.

If more than one operator appears in an expression, the operators are executed in order of precedence. The higher the precedence number, the higher the priority of the operator. Operators of equal value are executed from left to right.

Parentheses override the order operators are evaluated. Expressions enclosed in parentheses are evaluated first.

Table 8-2 Operator Precedence

| Operator | Precedence | Description |
|----------|------------|---|
| + | 7 | Unary + (Positive number) |
| - | 7 | Unary - (Negative number) |
| * | 6 | Multiply |
| / | 6 | Divide |
| + | 5 | Add two numbers or string concatenation. |
| - | 5 | Subtract two numbers or string reduction. |
| .eqs. | 4 | String equal test |
| .nes. | 4 | String not equal test |
| .ges. | 4 | String greater or equal test |
| .gts | 4 | String greater than test |
| .les. | 4 | String less or equal test |
| .lts. | 4 | String less than test |
| .eq. | 4 | Equal to |
| .ne. | 4 | Not equal to |
| .ge. | 4 | Greater or equal to |
| .gt. | 4 | Greater than |
| .le. | 4 | Less or equal to |
| .lt. | 4 | Less than |
| .not. | 3 | Logical Negate (1's Compliment) |
| .and. | 2 | Logical AND |
| or. | 1 | Logical OR |

8.6.1 String Operations

String operators are used to concatenate or reduce strings. The + operator is used for concatenation and the - operator is used for reducing a string.

A string concatenation (+) adds two strings together to form a longer string.

A string reduction (-) subtracts two strings by removing the string following the minus sign from the first string. If the second string occurs more than once in the first string, only the first occurrence of the string is removed.

Example 1: **A = "MYFILE" + ".DAT"**

Result: MYFILE.DAT

Example 2: **B = "FILE NAME FILE.DAT" - "FILE "**

Result: NAME FILE.DAT

Note: When concatenating or reducing strings, both operands must be strings or result in an integer.

8.6.2 Arithmetic Operations

Arithmetic operators are used to perform calculations in integer expressions. The result of an arithmetic operation is an integer. The following operators are valid:

Table 8-3 Arithmetic Operators

| Symbol | Operation |
|--------|------------------|
| + | Add |
| - | Subtract |
| / | Divide |
| * | Multiply |
| + | Unary plus sign |
| - | Unary minus sign |

If string values are used as operands to arithmetic operations, the strings convert to integers first. See Section 8.5.1 (String to Integer Conversion) for more information.

In arithmetic operations, all non-decimal values (values specified using radix operators) convert to their decimal equivalent.

Examples: **A = 5 + 10 / 2** ! 10
B = 5 * 3 - 4 * 6 / 2 ! 3
C = 5 * (6 - 4) - 8 / (2 - 1) ! 2
D = -5 + 4 ! -1
E = 8 + "1" ! 9
F = %X1f + %O17 - %D10 ! 36

8.6.3 Logical Operations

Logical operators are used to perform logical functions on integers or to create expressions that perform Boolean arithmetic. The result of a logical operation (.NOT., .AND., .OR.) is an integer value.

Examples: **A = %X15 .OR. %X12 ! Decimal = 23**
 A = %X15 .AND. %X12 ! Decimal = 16
 .NOT. %X15 ! Decimal = -22

Logical operators can be used in a logical sense as well as arithmetic. An integer has a logical value of true (1) if it is odd (low order bit=1). A character string is true if it begins with Y, y, T, or t. An integer has a logical value of false (0) if it is even (low order bit=0). A string value is false if the first character is not a T, t, Y or y.

Example: **B = %X200 .OR. %X201**

This expression performs a logical OR on two values. The resulting symbol is True and has a value of 513 (odd) or 201 Hex. Of the original operands, 200 Hex is False and 201 Hex is True.

8.6.4 String Comparisons

String comparison operators are used to compare character strings. String comparison results are based on the binary value of the string characters. See Appendix B for a table of ASCII character values. The result of a string comparison is the integer 0 (False) or 1 (True).

The following are the string comparison operators:

Table 8-4 String Comparison Operators

| Operator | Definition |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| .EQS. | String equal to |
| .GES. | String greater than or equal to |
| .GTS. | String greater than |
| .LES. | String less than or equal to |
| .LTS. | String less than |
| .NES. | String not equal to |

The following rules apply to string comparisons:

- /// The comparison is on a character by character basis that stops as soon as two characters do not match.
- /// In comparisons of different length strings, the shorter string is padded on the right with null (00) characters before the operation is performed.
- /// Lowercase letters have a higher numeric value than their corresponding uppercase letters.

Operands in string comparisons are assumed to be string expressions. If an integer expression is specified as an operand, it is converted to a string before the comparison.

If a character string is not enclosed in quotes, the string is assumed to be a symbol name.

```
Examples: "ABC" .LTS. "abc"           ! True (1)
          "TRUE" .EQS. 1             ! False (0)
          "ABC" .GTS. "DEF"         ! False (0)
          "CAT" .EQS. "CATS"        ! False (0)
          CANDY := MARS BAR
          "MARS BAR" .EQS. CANDY     ! True (1)
```

8.6.5 Arithmetic Comparisons

Arithmetic comparison operators compare integer values. The result of an arithmetic comparison is an integer. If the result is true, the expression result is 1. If the result is false, the expression is evaluated to 0.

The following is a list of the arithmetic comparison operators:

Table 8-5 Arithmetic Comparison Operators

| Operator | Definition |
|----------|--------------------------|
| .EQ. | Equal to |
| .GE. | Greater than or equal to |
| .GT. | Greater than |
| .LE. | Less than or equal to |
| .LT. | Less than |
| .NE. | Not equal to |

Operands in arithmetic expressions are assumed to be integer expressions. If a character string is specified as one of the operands, it is converted to an integer before the comparison is performed. If a character string begins with an upper- or lowercase Y or T, it is converted to a 1. If the string begins with any other letter, it is converted to 0. If the string consists of characters that form a valid number, the number is converted to an integer.

8.6.6 Radix Operators

There are three special operators recognized for specifying the radix (number system) for integers. Decimal is the default and %D is not required when specifying decimal values.

Table 8-6 Radix Operators

| Operator | Meaning | Example | Decimal Value |
|----------|---------|---------|---------------|
| %D | Decimal | %D100 | 100 |
| %X | Hex | %X64 | 100 |
| %O | Octal | %O144 | 100 |

```
Example: TOTAL = 100 + %X64 + %O144
          SHOW SYMBOL TOTAL
          TOTAL = 300, HEX = 012C, OCTAL = 000454
```

8.7 SPECIAL CHARACTERS

8.7.1 Input Conversion

ASCII codes that are unspecified by a printable character can be inserted into strings using their numeric value. To specify an ASCII character by its value, enclose its numeric equivalent inside angle brackets < >.

Example: **STRING:=“<7>Attention”**

Inserts a bell into the string by specifying the decimal equivalent for an ASCII bell character.

The most commonly used characters can also be specified by a set of mnemonics.

Table 8-7 Mnemonic Table

| Mnemonic | Decimal Value | Mnemonic | Decimal Value | Mnemonic | Decimal Value | Mnemonic | Decimal Value |
|----------|---------------|----------|---------------|----------|---------------|----------|---------------|
| NULL | 00 | DLE | 16 | GS | 29 | SS2 | 142 |
| SOH | 01 | DC1 | 17 | RS | 30 | SS3 | 143 |
| STX | 02 | XON | 17 | US | 31 | DCS | 144 |
| ETX | 03 | DC2 | 18 | SP | 32 | PU1 | 145 |
| EOT | 04 | DC3 | 19 | DEL | 127 | PU2 | 146 |
| ENQ | 05 | XOFF | 19 | IND | 132 | STS | 147 |
| ACK | 06 | DC4 | 20 | NEL | 133 | CCH | 148 |
| BELL | 07 | NAK | 21 | SSA | 134 | MW | 149 |
| BS | 08 | SYN | 22 | ESA | 135 | SPA | 150 |
| HT | 09 | ETB | 23 | HTS | 136 | EPA | 151 |
| LF | 10 | CAN | 24 | HTJ | 137 | CS | 155 |
| VT | 11 | EM | 25 | VTs | 138 | ST | 156 |
| FF | 12 | SUB | 26 | PLD | 139 | OSC | 157 |
| CR | 13 | ESC | 27 | PLU | 140 | PM | 158 |
| SO | 14 | FS | 28 | RI | 141 | APC | 159 |
| SI | 15 | | | | | | |

Example: **STRING:=“<BELL>Attention”**

Unrecognized numeric characters and values greater than 255 are ignored. Radix operators are also supported within the angle brackets.

Conversion of numeric values enclosed in angle brackets is prevented by using a double set of brackets <<>>. Using a double set of angle brackets results in a numeric string enclosed in a set of single brackets <>.

```

Examples:  A = "a b c <68>"           ! "a b c D"
           B = "a b c <%X44>"         ! "a b c D"
           C = "a b c <<44>>"        ! "a b c<44>"
           D = "<%X7e>,<<abc>>,<<256>>" ! "~,<abc>,<256>"
           E = "<ESC>[10;20H"         ! 27"[10;20H"
  
```

8.7.2 Output Conversion

Non-printable characters and characters specified by enclosing their numeric value in angle brackets <>, are displayed in two ways:

- 1) Their binary value is sent directly to the screen processor. In this case, the character performs its specific function (e.g., <7> rings the bell) or appears as a character if it is printable (e.g., <%x41> is an A). Commands such as DISPLAY and INQUIRE process data in this manner.
- 2) The non-printable character or character enclosed in angle brackets displays as a mnemonic or numeric value enclosed in brackets. The output from SHOW SYMBOL and SET VERIFY appears this way.

```

Example: TEST="<7>This is a test"
        SHOW SYMBOL TEST
        TEST = "<BELL>This is a test"
        DISPLAY TEST
        This is a test (also rings the bell)
  
```

Non-printable ASCII codes are control characters with numeric values below 32 decimal and ASCII codes with values of 127 to 255. The more frequently used control codes are output as mnemonics instead of decimal values.

Table 8-8 Mnemonic Table Output Conversion

| Mnemonic | Decimal Value | Mnemonic | Decimal Value |
|----------|---------------|----------|---------------|
| NULL | 00 | SI | 15 |
| BELL | 07 | ESC | 27 |
| LF | 10 | DCS | 144 |
| FF | 12 | CSI | 155 |
| CR | 13 | ST | 156 |
| SO | 14 | | |

8.8 FOREIGN COMMANDS

Symbols can be defined to create personalized commands that execute as if they were part of the emulator command language. These assignments are called foreign commands.

Example: **NUMSTR:== THIS IS A TEST**
SS :== SHOW SYMBOL
SS NUMSTR
NUMSTR = "THIS IS A TEST"

When the foreign command, SS, is executed from the command line or command file, it is recognized as a foreign command and the symbol value is substituted and executed. The command executed by the command processor is:

SHOW SYMBOL NUMSTR

Up to eight parameters (P1...P8) can be passed to a foreign command. However, in order to process the parameters, the foreign command must execute a command file.

Example: **TYPE :== @DOSTYPE**

Where: The command file DOSTYPE.ECF contains:

```
! ECL FILE TO TYPE A DOS FILE  
IF P1 .EQS. "" THEN GOTO ERROR           ! Error if no file  
DOS TYPE 'P1'                           ! Type DOS File  
EXIT                                     ! Exit  
ERROR:  
DISPLAY "ERROR - NO FILE SPECIFIED"  
EXIT
```

To execute the foreign command to type a DOS file, enter:

TYPE README.TXT

Foreign commands are useful for creating short synonyms for lengthy emulator commands, creating new emulator functions, or changing an emulator command verb to one you like better.

Examples: **KS*END:== KERMIT SEND**
HK:== HELP KEYS
LOGS*GREEN:== LOG/SCREEN/OVERWRITE

Placing an asterisk within a foreign command symbol defines the minimum number of characters that must be entered before it is recognized by the command processor. For example, LOGSCREEN requires that **LOGS** be entered. Additional characters entered thereafter must match the corresponding character in the command exactly.

8.9 LEXICALS

Lexicals are functions that return information about character strings and other items. Lexical functions are not enclosed in quotation marks and often require an argument. Lexicals can be used in expressions in the same manner as character strings, integers, and symbols.

F\$EXTRACT

F\$EXTRACT(offset,length,string)

Extracts a substring from a string expression.

Arguments:

Offset

An integer value representing a starting position for the extract. Offsets start at 0. The total length of the string, minus one, is the maximum offset value.

Length

An integer value representing the number of characters to extract from the string. A maximum value of 255 can be used to extract the remaining portion of the string.

String

The string expression to extract the substring from.

Return Value: A character string extracted from the argument string.

Example 1: **SUBSTR=F\$EXTRACT(10,3,"The quick fox jumped.")**
SHOW SYMBOL SUBSTR
SUBSTR="fox"

Example 2: **LAZY = "The quick fox jumped."**
SUBSTR=F\$EXTRACT(10,3,LAZY)
SHOW SYMBOL SUBSTR
SUBSTR="fox"

F\$GETINFO

F\$GETINFO(item)

Returns information about the item requested.

Arguments:

Item

The name of the Item to return information about.

Return Value: An integer or string value.

Valid Item Names:

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| COLOR_SUPPORT | Returns TRUE if color support is enabled and FALSE if it is not. Color support is always FALSE if the PC has a monochrome monitor. |
| (“CONNECT”) | Returns TRUE if the emulator is online (connected). If modem control is disabled when communicating over a COM port, connection status is always true. Connection status is FALSE when the emulator is offline (no connection). |
| (“CONNECT_NAME”) | Returns the name of the current RS232 or network connection. |

Example: **DIAL 123-4567**

```
IF F$GETINFO(“CONNECT”) THEN GOTO LOGIN
```

...

If the modem is connected, the command file jumps to LOGIN label.

F\$LENGTH

F\$LENGTH(string)

Returns the total number of character in a string.

Arguments:

String

The string expression.

Return Value: An integer value for the length of the string.

Example: **TEXT:==This is a test**

```
LEN=F$LENGTH(TEXT)
```

```
SHOW SYMBOL LEN
```

```
LEN = 14 Hex=000E Octal = 000016
```

F\$LOCATE

F\$LOCATE(substring,string)

Searches for a character substring within a string and returns the substring's offset. If the substring is not found, the function returns the length of the original string. The first character position is offset 0.

Arguments:

Substring

The character string to search for.

String

The string searched.

Return Value: An integer value representing the offset of the substring argument.

Example 1: **TEXT="This was a test"**
OFFSET=F\$LOCATE("was",TEXT) **!Locate "was"**
SHOW SYMBOL OFFSET **!Show the offset when found**
 OFFSET = 5 Hex=0005 Octal = 00005

Example 2: **TEXT="This is a test"**
OFFSET=F\$LOCATE("TTTT",TEXT) **!Will not find "TTTT"**
SHOW SYMBOL OFFSET **!Offset=length if not found**
 OFFSET = 14 Hex=000E Octal = 000016

Example 3: **! The following example requests a string and prints:**
! "THE" FOUND **If "THE" was entered as part of the string.**
! "THE" NOT FOUND **If "THE" was not found in the input string.**
INQUIRE DATA "ENTER A TEXT STRING: "
OFFSET=F\$LOCATE("THE", DATA)
IF F\$LENGTH(DATA) .EQ. OFFSET THEN GOTO NOT_FOUND
DISPLAY ""THE" FOUND"
EXIT
NOT_FOUND:
DISPLAY ""THE" NOT FOUND"

F\$MESSAGE

F\$MESSAGE(status code)

Returns the message string associated with the status code.

Arguments:

Status code

An expression that translates to either a status message mnemonic (e.g., "INVALARG") or a status message number (e.g., 1248). Using \$STATUS or \$STATUSID as the status code returns the current error/status message. See Table 8-12 (Error Messages and Status Codes).

Return Value: The complete message string for the status code.

Example: **WP XXX**
ERROR_MSG=F\$MESSAGE(\$STATUS)
SHOW SYMBOL ERROR_MSG
 ERROR_MSG="CMD-W-INVKEYW, Invalid qualifier or keyword - XXX"

8.10 DISPLAY LEXICALS

Display lexicals are special lexical functions used with the DISPLAY and INQUIRE commands. Arguments to display lexicals must be strings or string expressions enclosed in parentheses. The display lexicals currently supported are D\$BLOCK and D\$BOX.

D\$BLOCK

D\$BLOCK (row, column [,label])

Where: **label** is a symbol or quoted label name.

Displays a block of text. The text block is defined between two block markers { and }. If the optional label is not provided, the block of text must follow the DISPLAY command (see Form 1). Command execution continues following the end of block marker.

If the optional label is provided, the text block referenced must not lay in the execution path of the command procedure (see Form 2).

Note: Block markers must be on a line by themselves.

| | |
|--------|--|
| Form 1 | DISPLAY D\$BLOCK(10,40) { Line one of text. Line two of text. } ... next command ... |
| Form 2 | INQUIRE NAME D\$BLOCK(10,40,"LABEL1") ... additional commands ... EXIT LABEL1: { Line one of text. } |

D\$BOX

Uses line drawing characters to display a box on the screen.

Form 1 D\$BOX (upper left row, column, lower right row, column)

Arguments:

The row and column positions for the upper-left and lower-right corners for the box.

Form 2 D\$BOX (row offset, column offset)

Arguments:

The row and column offset for the lower-right corner. The offset is specified relative to the current cursor position. The current cursor position is used for the upper-left corner.

8.11 SYMLEXES

Symlexes are special symbols that function similar to lexicals. They are especially valuable for defining control sequences that require arguments passed to them at run time.

Example: **E\$CUP == "<ESC>[\$1s;\$2sH"**

Defines a Symlex called E\$CUP (cursor position control sequence) with 2 string arguments (\$1s and \$2s) that are passed at run time.

DISPLAY E\$CUP(1,1)

Uses E\$CUP to position the cursor to row 1, column 1.

8.11.1 Defining a Symlex

Symlexes are defined in the form:

A\$A... == "A...\$1x...\$2x..."

Where: **A** is any alphanumeric character.

A... is one or more alphanumeric characters.

\$1 is the first argument.

x is **s** or **n**. **S** identifies the argument as string. **N** identifies the argument as numeric.

\$2 is the second argument (etc.).

Symlex names must have a dollar sign as the second character of the name (\$). Any other character can precede or follow the dollar sign. A maximum of eight arguments can be defined in a symlex definition. Each argument must start with a dollar sign and be followed by the argument number and argument type identifier.

When string arguments are substituted at run time, the argument value is passed as a string and quoting is not necessary. If a symlex argument is defined as numeric, it is assumed to be an integer value, symbol, lexical, expression, or quoted string.

If a symlex name is defined that conflicts with a lexical function name, the symlex is ignored. Symlexes can be used wherever symbols or lexicals are accepted.

Example 1: **E\$CUP == "<ESC>[1n;2sH"**

Defines a global symbol, E\$CUP, that sets the cursor to \$1n row, \$2s column (parameter \$1n is defined as numeric and \$2s is defined as a string).

DISPLAY E\$CUP("10",30)

Uses the E\$CUP symlex to position the cursor to row 10, column 30.

Example 2: **U\$DEFKEY == "<ESC>P1;1|1s/\$2n<ESC>\"**

Defines a symlex for loading a VT320 UDK (User-Defined Key). Argument \$1s is the key identifier and \$2n is the key definition string.

DISPLAY U\$DEFKEY(34,"53484f5720555345520d")

Uses the U\$DEFKEY symlex to define UDK20 as "SHOW USER<CR>"

Example 3: **A\$BOLD == "<ESC>[1m" !Bold Attribute**

A\$UND == "<ESC>[4m" !Underline

A\$REV == "<ESC>[7m" !Reverse Video

A\$RST == "<ESC>[m" !Reset Attributes

Defines a set of symlexes for setting VT320 video attributes.

DISPLAY A\$BOLD + " BOLD " + A\$RST

Displays the word BOLD in bold and then resets the video attributes.

Example 4: **U\$DCSWSL == "<CSI>0;3;0|1n<ST>"**

SETUDSL== "DISPLAY U\$DCSWSL ("""USER DEFINED STATUS LINE""")"

Defines global symbol SETUDSL to write a string to the user defined status line using the symlex U\$DCSWSL. The symlex uses a DCS Private Control Sequence. (Parameter \$1n is defined as numeric).

SETUDSL

Writes the string USER DEFINED STATUS LINE to the status line using the symbol U\$DCSWSL. The four quotation marks are necessary to send a quoted string to the symlex.

8.12 SYMBOL AND LEXICAL SUBSTITUTION

When processing a command string, the command interpreter performs substitution by replacing the symbol names or lexical functions with their current values.

8.12.1 Automatic Symbol Substitution

In certain contexts, the command interpreter assumes that a string of characters is a symbol name or lexical function. In that case, substitution is automatic and substitution operators are not required or recommended. Automatic symbol substitution takes place under the following contexts:

- /// On the right side of an = or == assignment statement (but not an := or ::= assignment).
- /// At the beginning of a command line when the symbol is not followed by a symbol assignment operator.
- /// On arguments for lexical functions.
- /// On arguments to certain commands such as DISPLAY or WRITE.

Symbols or lexicals in other contexts must be enclosed within a set of substitution operators in order to translate.

8.12.2 Substitution Using Apostrophes

The apostrophe is normally used for symbol substitution. The ampersand is reserved as a special substitution character. See Section 8.12.3 (Ampersands). To substitute a symbol or lexical value, enclose the symbol or lexical name within a set of apostrophes ('symbol_name').

If symbol substitution is desired within a quoted string, two apostrophes must be placed in front of the symbol (i.e., "'symbol'") to force substitution.

Example 1: **COUNT = 0**
TOTAL = COUNT + 1
Evaluated as: TOTAL = 0 + 1.

Symbol substitution automatically occurs to the right of a symbol assignment statement.

Example 2: **SS := SHOW SYMBOL**
SS \$STATUS
Evaluated as: \$STATUS = 1 Hex = 0001 Oct = 00001

Symbol substitution occurs automatically on the first word of a command line. SS is defined as a synonym for Show Symbol and is executed as a foreign command.

Example 3: **TEXT = "This is it."**
STR = F\$EXTRACT(5,2,TEXT)
Evaluated as: STR = F\$EXTRACT(5,2,"This is it.")

Symbol substitution occurs automatically on any arguments to a lexical function.

Example 4: **TOTAL=1**
COUNT=2
IF COUNT .EQ. TOTAL THEN GOTO DONE
Evaluated as: IF 1 .EQ. 2 THEN GOTO DONE
Symbol substitution in an IF statement. TOTAL and COUNT are both assumed to be symbols. Their values are substituted before evaluating the condition.

Example 5: **COUNT = 1**
PARAM = P'COUNT'
Evaluated as: PARAM = P1
The use of single quotes forces the substitution.

Example 6: **FILENAME := X.DAT**
STR = ""'FILENAME' has been copied."
Evaluated as: STR ="X.DAT has been copied."
Symbol substitution is forced by the usage of double, single quotes within the quoted string.

8.12.3 Substitution Using Ampersands

In addition to the apostrophe, the command interpreter recognizes a special substitution operator, the ampersand. The difference between the two is the time when symbol substitution occurs. Symbols preceded by the apostrophe are substituted during phase one; the ampersand is done in phase two. For additional information, refer to the *Three Phases of Symbol Substitution* topic.

In many instances, the apostrophe and ampersand operators are equivalent.

Example: **CMD>HELP 'TOPIC'**
CMD>HELP &TOPIC
These two commands evaluate identically.

However, the following example shows how the results can vary.

Example: **CMD>B="XXXXXX"**
CMD>A="&B"
CMD>SHOW SYMBOL A
A = "&B"
CMD>DISPLAY 'A'
XXXXXX
CMD>B = "YYYYY"
CMD>DISPLAY 'A'
YYYYY

In the first part, SHOW SYMBOL A displays &B because the ampersand is not interpreted within a quoted string. However, &B is interpreted when referenced by the DISPLAY 'A' command. In the second part, B was redefined and the results changed accordingly.

The following restrictions apply to the use of the ampersand:

- /// It cannot be used within a character string to request symbol substitution.
- /// It must be preceded by a space or another delimiter.
- /// It cannot be used to request substitution inside a quoted string.
- /// To request substitution using the ampersand, append the ampersand to the beginning of the symbol name. Do not use a trailing ampersand.

Ampersands are most effective when used with the apostrophe to affect the order of substitution.

Example: Assume the following symbol definitions: **A:=TRY B:=THIS C:=ONE**
Assume that TEST.ECF contains: **COUNT=1**
START:SHOW SYMBOL &P'COUNT'
COUNT=COUNT+1
IF COUNT .GT. 3 THEN EXIT
GOTO START

This command yields the results: **CMD>@TEST A B C**
A = "TRY"
B = "THIS"
C = "ONE"

The command file displays the values of passed parameters P1 - P3 using the SHOW SYMBOL command. During the phase one of command interpretation, COUNT is replaced by its current value (1 - 3).

By using the ampersand, P'COUNT' (P1 - P3) is substituted in the phase two. Therefore, P1 becomes symbol A, P2 becomes symbol B, and P3 becomes symbol C. The final substitution results in the command lines:

```
SHOW SYMBOL A    (value = TRY)
SHOW SYMBOL B    (value = THIS)
SHOW SYMBOL C    (value = ONE)
```

It is impossible to obtain the above results using the apostrophe substitution character alone. Refer to the following section for more information on the three phases of symbol substitution.

8.12.4 Three Phases of Symbol Substitution

The command interpreter performs symbol substitution in three phases:

Command Input Scanning

In this phase, the interpreter reads the command input and replaces arguments preceded with apostrophes (double apostrophes when strings are enclosed in quotation marks). Symbols preceded by odd groups of apostrophes are translated iteratively. Refer to the *Iterative Substitution Using Apostrophes* topic for more information. Symbols within quoted strings, preceded with double apostrophes, are not translated iteratively.

Command Parsing

During this phase, the command interpreter analyzes the command string and determines whether the first value on the command line is a symbol used as a command synonym (foreign command). If so, the interpreter replaces the symbol with its current value. All substitutions requested with ampersands are performed. In phase two, the Interpreter makes only a single pass through the command string.

Expression Evaluation

During this phase, the command interpreter replaces any remaining symbols used in command expressions. For example, expressions used with the IF command. In phase three, the command interpreter makes only a single pass through the command string.

8.12.4.1 Iterative Substitution Using Apostrophes

When an apostrophe is used to request symbol substitution, the command interpreter performs iterative, or multiple pass, substitution during the first (input scanning) phase of symbol substitution. Iterative substitution is performed from left to right. However, substitution using apostrophes is not iterative when substituting symbols inside quoted strings.

```
Example: CMD>SYMBOL = "10"  
CMD>A = "SYMBOL"  
CMD>B = 'A'  
CMD>SHOW SYMBOL B  
B= 10 Hex= 000A Octal= 000012
```

After the statement B = 'A' the resulting integer value of the symbol is 10.

This result is achieved in the following steps:

- 1) The symbol name A is enclosed in apostrophes, so it is replaced with its current value ('SYMBOL').
- 2) Because the value ('SYMBOL') is also enclosed in apostrophes, the command interpreter replaces the value SYMBOL with its current value (10).
- 3) Since value (10) has no apostrophes, the command input scanning phase (phase one) is complete. No further substitution is required during the command parsing or expression evaluation phases. Therefore, 10 is the final value given to the symbol name B. However, note what happens when you define B as:

```
Example: CMD>B = "'A'"  
CMD>SHOW SYMBOL B  
B = "SYMBOL"
```

In this case, B has the value "'SYMBOL'". The symbol name A is replaced only once, because substitution is not iterative within quoted character strings.

8.12.4.2 Iterative Substitution Using Command Synonyms

The command interpreter performs iterative substitution automatically only when an apostrophe is in the command string. In some cases, you may want to nest synonym definitions.

```
Example: CMD>COMMAND = "HELP"  
CMD>HH = "COMMAND"  
CMD>HH  
CMD-W-INVALIDCMD, Unrecognized command - 'COMMAND'
```

In this example, when the command synonym HH is processed, the command interpreter performs substitution only once. The resulting string is 'COMMAND'. The command interpreter issues an error message because it cannot detect a command on the line.

The error occurs because, during the first phase of command processing, no substitution is performed (the string HH is not delimited by apostrophes). During the second phase, the string 'COMMAND' is substituted for HH because HH is the first value on the command line. No additional substitution is performed.

To correctly use the command synonym HH, it must be enclosed in apostrophes, as shown below:

```
CMD>'HH'
```

In this context, the HH is evaluated during the first phase of command processing because it is delimited by apostrophes. Since the use of apostrophes forces the substitution to be iterative, the resulting value ('COMMAND') is also evaluated and the string HELP is substituted in place of 'HH'.

8.12.4.3 Iterative Substitution in Expressions

When the command interpreter analyzes an expression, any symbols in the expression are replaced only once; iteration is not automatic. However, iterative substitution can be forced by using an apostrophe or an ampersand in the expression. The rules are as follows:

- /// The command interpreter performs all substitution requested by apostrophes and ampersands before the command string is executed.
- /// Commands that automatically perform symbol substitution do so after the command string has been processed by the command interpreter.

The following example illustrates iterative substitution in an IF command.

Example: **IF P'COUNT' .EQS. "" THEN GOTO DONE**

When the command interpreter scans the input line, it replaces the symbol name COUNT with its current value. If the current value of COUNT is 1, the expression is evaluated as follows:

```
IF P1 .EQS. "" THEN GOTO DONE
```

Because this string does not have apostrophes, the command interpreter does not perform any additional substitutions. However, when the IF command executes, it automatically evaluates the symbol name P1 and replaces it with its current value.

8.12.4.4 Substitution of Undefined Symbols

If a symbol is not defined when it is used in a command string, the command interpreter either issues an error message or replaces the symbol with a null string, depending on the context. The rules are as follows:

- /// During command input scanning and during command parsing, the command interpreter replaces all undefined symbols that are preceded by apostrophes or ampersands with null strings.
- /// During expression evaluation, the command interpreter issues a warning message and does not complete command processing.

8.13 ERROR FACILITY

On completion of a command, a status condition code is saved in the symbol \$STATUS to indicate the reason the command terminated. If error handling is enabled, specific error handling actions, based on that reason, are performed. Error handling is enabled by the ON and SET commands. The default conditions are as follows:

- /// SET ON
- /// ON ERROR THEN EXIT
- /// SET ABORT
- /// ON ABORT THEN STOP
- /// SET NODEVICE_ERROR
- /// ON DEVICE_ERROR THEN STOP
- /// SET NODISCONNECT
- /// ON DISCONNECT THEN STOP

Note: The default conditions may be modified by a command file.

No action takes place if the error handler for the specific error condition is disabled with one of the following:

- /// SET NOON
- /// SET NOABORT
- /// SET NODEVICE_ERROR
- /// SET NODISCONNECT

Descriptive error and informational messages issued by the command interpreter break down into four parts:

(1) **facility** (2) **I-** (3) **ident** (4) **text**

The beginning of the message, **facility**, begins with the processor identification letters; EM for the Emulator Processor, CMD for the Command Processor or KER for the Kermit Processor.

The I severity level follows:

Table 8-9 Error Message Severity Levels

| Level | Definition |
|-------|------------|
| E | ERROR |
| F | FATAL |
| I | INFO |
| S | SUCCESS |
| W | WARNING |

Ident is the mnemonic code identifying the message, followed by the **text**.

For example, specifying an invalid command would display an error message:

Example: `CMD>DISPLY`

`CMD-W-INVALCMD, Unrecognized command - DISPLY`

Once the message displays, the most significant bit (bit 15 of \$STATUS) is set to 1, indicating that the message has displayed. The error processor uses this to prevent the message from redisplaying if the status code is passed to the EXIT command. Clearing this bit displays the message again upon exit.

8.13.1 \$STATUS Conditional Codes

Error message values are saved as a 16 bit word in the reserved global symbol \$STATUS. The breakdown of \$STATUS is as follows:

- Bits 0-2** Contains the severity level of the message.
- Bits 3-14** Contains the message ID number.
- Bit 15** Indicates if the error message has displayed.

To correctly identify an error message with bit 15 possibly set, it is necessary to logically AND the \$STATUS code with a mask of %X7FFF to ignore bit 15.

The low-order three bits of the \$STATUS code are also saved in the reserved global symbol \$SEVERITY. These bits represent the severity of the condition that caused the command to terminate. The severity error levels are represented by the following numeric values:

Table 8-10 \$STATUS Error Level Severity

| Level | Definition |
|-------|---------------|
| 0 | WARNING |
| 1 | SUCCESS |
| 2 | ERROR |
| 3 | INFORMATIONAL |
| 4 | FATAL |

Note: Some severe errors are handled as fatal system errors and cannot be controlled by the user.

The SUCCESS and INFORMATIONAL levels are odd numeric values (true), while the remaining error severity levels are even numeric values (false). This makes it easy to test for successful completion of a command using the IF command.

If the program completes with a SUCCESS numeric value, \$STATUS and \$SEVERITY is odd and the IF expression is true.

Example 1: **IF .NOT. \$STATUS THEN GOTO ERROR**

This IF statement tests the NOT SUCCESS condition of the last executed command.

Example 2: **IF \$STATUS THEN DISPLAY "Operation completed successfully"**

This IF statement tests for the SUCCESS condition of the last executed command.

Example 3: **IF (\$STATUS .AND. %X7FFF) .EQ. 52 THEN GOTO EXIT_CLEANUP**

This IF statement tests for a specific error message (an Abort).

When the binary status code is stored in \$STATUS, the mnemonic value for the error condition is also stored in \$STATUSID. The value in \$STATUSID can then be tested symbolically for specific errors.

Example 1: **IF \$STATUSID .EQS. "EOF" THEN EXIT**

Tests for an EOF condition and then exits if found.

Example 2: **IF \$STATUSID .EQS. "SUCCESS" THEN GOTO 100**

Transfers control to label 100 if the previous command was successful.

8.13.2 DOS ERROR LEVEL

To see a listing of the error codes with their DOS ErrorLevel included, execute the following command file:

```
CMD>SET MESSAGE SCREEN
CMD>@ERRMSG
```

8.13.3 Messages

STATUS CODES are made up of three important parts:

Table 8-11 Status Code Description

| Title | Description | Found In |
|---------|----------------|------------|
| L | Severity Level | \$SEVERITY |
| Ident | ID Mnemonic | \$STATUSID |
| Message | Error Message | (see Note) |

Note: The message text is not stored in a symbol, however, the message text may be extracted using the F\$MESSAGE lexical function:

```
MSG := F$MESSAGE($STATUS)
```

Table 8-12 Error Messages and Status Codes

| L | Ident | Message |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| S | ABORT | >ABORT INTERRUPT< |
| W | ABORTED | Command process aborted |
| W | ABSYMD | Abbreviated symbol definition conflict - rename symbol |
| E | ALREADYCONN | Already connected to node |
| W | AMBIGCMD | Ambiguous command - |
| W | AMBIGOPT | Ambiguous option - / |
| W | AMBKEYW | Ambiguous qualifier or keyword - |
| W | ARGLENEXC | Argument exceeded maximum length - |
| S | CMDFONLY | Command or function enabled for command files only |
| S | CONNLOST | Connection lost |
| E | DDEBADCONN | DDE Bad conversation handle |
| E | DDEBADDATA | DDE Bad data handle |
| E | DDEBADDISC | DDE DISCONNECT failed |
| E | DDEINVDATAL | Invalid data link requested |
| E | DDEMAXADVISE | Maximum number of advise items reached |
| E | DDEMAXCONN | Maximum number of connections reached |
| E | DDENOCNN | DDE CONNECT failed |
| E | DDENODATA | DDE Data not available from server |
| E | DEFNODECONN | Default (auto-connect) node already connected |
| E | DEFNODEUNDEF | Default (auto-connect) node is undefined |
| F | DISKFULL | Disk full error |
| F | DIVBYZERO | Divide by zero error |
| F | DOSERR | DOS error - unable to execute cmd |
| E | EOF | End of file detected |
| W | EXPOVFL | Command line expansion overflow |
| W | EXPSYN | Invalid expression syntax - check operators and operands |
| S | FILECREATE | Error creating PC file - |
| S | FILEOPEN | Error opening PC file - |
| S | FILEPTR | Error setting file pointer in PC file - |
| S | FILEREAD | Error reading PC file - |
| S | FILEUPDATE | Error updating PC file - |
| S | FILEWRITE | Error writing PC file - |
| E | GRAPHICSNOTLOADED | Graphics not loaded |
| E | HELPREAD | Error reading HELP file - data not properly formatted |
| E | INSMEM | Insufficient DOS memory |
| W | INVALARG | Invalid argument - |
| W | INVALBAUD | Invalid Baud Rate for INT 14 Redirection |
| W | INVALCMD | Unrecognized command - |
| W | INVALDECTOKSTR | Invalid DEC TOKEN string |

Table 8-12 Error Messages and Status Codes (cont'd)

| L | Ident | Message |
|----------|---------------|---|
| W | INVALOPT | Invalid option - / |
| W | INVALTOK | Invalid TOKEN code - |
| S | INVFSPEC | Invalid PC file specification - |
| W | INVKEYW | Invalid keyword or qualifier - |
| W | INVOPER | Unrecognized operator in expression - |
| E | INVSKEY | Invalid Softkey |
| W | IVDELTIM | Invalid delta time argument - |
| W | IVFNAM | Invalid LEXICAL or SYMLEX name - |
| S | IVSETUP | Invalid SETUP file name - |
| W | IVSYMLVAR | Invalid SYMLEX variable |
| S | KHOSTERR | Error packet received from HOST |
| S | KPROTO | Protocol error |
| I | KRENAME | File exists - could not rename |
| S | KRETRY | Packet retry count exceeded |
| S | KTIMOUT | Timed out waiting for packet |
| E | LASTNODECONN | Last node already connected |
| E | LASTNODEUNDEF | Last node is undefined |
| E | LINELONG | Command line exceeds maximum length |
| W | LOGFEXIST | Log file already exists - use /OVERWRITE or /APPEND option |
| W | LOGICDEF | Logical name already defined - |
| W | LOGINPROG | Logging in progress - request ignored |
| W | MISKEYW | Missing keyword or qualifier |
| W | MISOPTPAR | Missing option parameter - check options for required arguments |
| S | NETABORTED | Connection aborted |
| S | NETADDNAM | Error adding name to network |
| I | NETCONNBAPI | BAPI node connected |
| I | NETCONNCOM | COM port connected |
| I | NETCONNCTERM | CTERM node connected |
| I | NETCONNECT | Connecting to Network |
| E | NETCONNERR | Error attempting connection |
| E | NETDISCON | Session disconnected |
| I | NETINVCOM | COM port number invalid |
| E | NETINVPASS | Invalid password |
| I | NETINVPORT | Port number invalid |

Table 8-12 Error Messages and Status Codes (cont'd)

| L | Ident | Message |
|----------|-----------------|---|
| I | NETNOCOM | COM port not specified |
| E | NETNONFS | NFS is not installed |
| I | NETNOSESS | Multi-sessions not enabled |
| I | NETNOTCONN | Session not connected |
| E | NETNOWSK | WINSOCK network is not installed |
| W | NETONLY | Only available on network versions |
| I | NETSESSMAX | No more sessions available |
| E | NETUNKNOWN | Requested node is unknown |
| E | NETUNREACH | Node is currently unreachable |
| E | NODENAMEREQD | Node name is required for connection |
| E | NOLABEL | GOTO label not found - |
| W | NOMSG | Message number not found - %X |
| W | NOMSGID | Message identifier not found - |
| E | NORETURN | No RETURN pointer found from prior GOSUB command |
| E | NOTCONN | Not connected to a port |
| E | NOTEXTBLK | DISPLAY text block not found |
| W | NOTHEN | IF or ON statement syntax error - check placement of THEN keyword |
| E | PICFILEEXISTS | Picture file already exists |
| E | PICFILENOCREATE | Cannot create picture file |
| E | PICFILENOEXIST | Picture file does not exist |
| F | PROGERR | Program check error - contact technical support for assistance |
| S | PRTNOTRDY | Printer not ready |
| W | READTIMOUT | Read time out error |
| S | SETFOPEN | Error opening Setup File - |
| S | SETFREAD | Error reading Setup File - |
| S | SETFVER | Setup File Version Error - |
| S | SETFWRITE | Error writing Setup File - |
| I | SYMTRUNC | Symbol truncated to - |
| W | SYNTAX | Command syntax error |
| w | UNDEFSYM | Undefined symbol - |
| w | UNDFILE | PC file not open, check logical filename - |
| I | UNDLOGIC | Undefined logical - |
| W | VALOVFL | Value overflow |
| W | WILDCARD | Improper use of wildcards for this command or expression |
| F | WINERR | WINDOWS error |
| E | XFERERROR | Unidentified File Transfer Error |



CHAPTER 9 **VT320 PROGRAMMING**

OVERVIEW

This chapter describes the character encoding concepts for the VT320. It covers control functions (control characters, escape sequences, and device control strings). Control functions are used in a program to specify how the emulator processes, sends and displays characters. Each control function has a unique name and each name has a unique, mnemonic abbreviation.

9.1 QUICK REFERENCE TABLES

This section contains quick reference tables for each of the main areas of programming information, namely: character sets, transmitted codes, received codes and reports. A separate section for each area contains more detailed information.

9.1.1 Character Sets

The Character Sets section starts on page 9-21.

Table 9-1 Character Set Quick Reference

Designating Character Sets

E_{SC} Intermediate Final

| Intermediate | | Final | | | |
|-------------------|-----|-------------------|-----|-----------------------------|-----|
| 94 Character Sets | | 96 Character Sets | | | |
| To Select | Use | To Select | Use | To Select | Use |
| G0 | (| G1 | - | ASCII | B |
| G1 |) | G2 | . | DEC Supplemental Graphic | %5 |
| G2 | * | G3 | / | ISO Latin-1 | A |
| G3 | + | | | User-preferred supplemental | < |
| | | | | DEC Special Graphic | 0 |

Mapping Character Sets

| Locking Shifts | |
|----------------|---|
| Code | Function |
| S_I | Locking shift 0. Maps G0 into GL |
| S_O | Locking shift 1. Maps G1 into GL |
| $E_{SC} \sim$ | Locking shift 1, right. Maps G1 into GR * |
| $E_{SC} n$ | Locking shift 2. Maps G2 into GL * |
| $E_{SC} \}$ | Locking shift 2, right. Maps G2 into GR * |
| $E_{SC} o$ | Locking shift 3. Maps G3 into GL * |
| $E_{SC} $ | Locking shift 3, right. Maps G3 into GR * |

* Indicates VT300 mode only

| Single Shifts | | |
|---------------|------------|---|
| 8-Bit Code | 7-Bit Code | Function |
| SS_2 | $E_{SC} N$ | Single Shift 2. Maps G2 into GL for the next character. |
| SS_3 | $E_{SC} O$ | Single Shift 3. Maps G3 into GL for the next character. |

9.1.2 Transmitted Codes

Table 9-2 Transmitted Codes Quick Reference

| Key | Code | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Editing Keypad | | |
| Find | C _{S1} 1~ | |
| Insert Here | C _{S1} 2~ | |
| Remove | C _{S1} 3~ | |
| Select | C _{S1} 4~ | |
| Prev Screen | C _{S1} 5~ | |
| Next Screen | C _{S1} 6~ | |
| Cursor Keys | Reset Normal | Set Application |
| | C _{S1} A | S _{S3} A |
| | C _{S1} B | S _{S3} B |
| | C _{S1} C | S _{S3} C |
| | C _{S1} D | S _{S3} D |
| Auxiliary Keypad | Numeric | Application |
| 0 | 0 | S _{S3} p |
| 1 | 1 | S _{S3} q |
| 2 | 2 | S _{S3} r |
| 3 | 3 | S _{S3} s |
| 4 | 4 | S _{S3} t |
| 5 | 5 | S _{S3} u |
| 6 | 6 | S _{S3} v |
| 7 | 7 | S _{S3} w |
| 8 | 8 | S _{S3} x |
| 9 | 9 | S _{S3} y |
| | (minus) | S _{S3} m |
| , | (comma) | S _{S3} l |
| . | (period) | S _{S3} n |
| PF1 | S _{S3} P | S _{S3} P |
| PF2 | S _{S3} Q | S _{S3} Q |
| PF3 | S _{S3} R | S _{S3} R |
| PF4 | S _{S3} S | S _{S3} S |
| Enter | CR OR C _R L _F | S _{S3} M |

Table 9-2 Transmitted Codes Quick Reference (cont'd)

| Key | Code |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Top Row Function Keys | |
| Hold Screen (F1) | * |
| Print Screen (F2) | * |
| Set-Up (F3) | * |
| Data/Talk (F4) | * |
| Break (F5) | * |
| F6 | C _S I 17 ~ |
| F7 | C _S I 18 ~ |
| F8 | C _S I 19 ~ |
| F9 | C _S I 20 ~ |
| F10 | C _S I 21 ~ |
| F11 | C _S I 23 ~ |
| F12 | C _S I 24 ~ |
| F13 | C _S I 25 ~ |
| F14 | C _S I 26 ~ |
| Help (F15) | C _S I 28 ~ |
| Do (F16) | C _S I 29 ~ |
| F17 | C _S I 31 ~ |
| F18 | C _S I 32 ~ |
| F19 | C _S I 33 ~ |
| F20 | C _S I 34 ~ |

* Indicates that codes are not generated.

9.1.3 Received Codes

9.1.3.1 VT320 Control Sequences

Table 9-3 VT320 Control Sequences

| Escape Sequence | Function |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Set Character Attributes | |
| Cs _I Ps;... m | Character attributes |
| Ps = 0 | all attributes off |
| Ps = 1 | bold on |
| Ps = 4 | underscore on |
| Ps = 5 | blink on |
| Ps = 7 | reverse video on |
| Ps = 2 2 | normal intensity |
| Ps = 2 4 | not underscored |
| Ps = 2 5 | not blinking |
| Ps = 2 7 | positive image |
| Cs _I " q | All Non-graphic off |
| Cs _I 0 " q | All Non-graphic off |
| Cs _I 1 " q | All Non-erasable on |
| Cs _I 2 " q | All Non-erasable off |
| Compatibility Level | |
| Cs _I 61"p | Level 1 (VT100) |
| Cs _I 62"p | Level 3 (VT300 8-bit) |
| Cs _I 62;0"p | Level 3 (VT300 8-bit) |
| Cs _I 62;1"p | Level 3 (VT300 7-bit) |
| Cs _I 62;2"p | Level 3 (VT300 8-bit) |
| Cs _I 63"p | Level 3 (VT300 8-bit) |
| Cs _I 63;0"p | Level 3 (VT300 8-bit) |
| Cs _I 63;1"p | Level 3 (VT300 7-bit) |
| Cs _I 63;2"p | Level 3 (VT300 8-bit) |
| Cursor Positioning | |
| Cs _I Pn A | Cursor up |
| Cs _I Pn B | Cursor down |
| Cs _I Pn C | Cursor right |
| Cs _I Pn D | Cursor left |
| Cs _I Pl;Pc H | Direct cursor addressing |
| Cs _I Pl;Pc f | Direct cursor addressing |
| Cs _I H | Home |

Table 9-3 VT320 Control Sequences (cont'd)

| Escape Sequence | Function |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Cursor Movement (cont'd) | |
| C _S I f | Home |
| I _N D | Index |
| E _{SC} D | Index |
| N _E L | New Line |
| E _{SC} E | New Line |
| R _I | Reverse Index |
| E _{SC} M | Reverse Index |
| Editing | |
| C _S I Pn P | Delete Pn characters |
| C _S I Pn @ | Insert Pn characters |
| C _S I Pn L | Insert Pn lines |
| C _S I Pn M | Delete Pn lines |
| Erasing | |
| C _S I Pn X | Erase next Pn characters from cursor |
| C _S I K | Cursor to end of line |
| C _S I 0 K | Cursor to end of line |
| C _S I 1 K | Beginning of line to cursor |
| C _S I 2 K | Entire line |
| C _S I J | Cursor to end of screen |
| C _S I 0 J | Cursor to end of screen |
| C _S I 1 J | Beginning screen to cursor |
| C _S I 2 J | Erase entire screen |
| C _S I ? K | Selective erase from cursor to end of line |
| C _S I ? 0 K | Selective erase from cursor to end of line |
| C _S I ? 1 K | Selective erase from beginning of line to cursor |
| C _S I ? 2 K | Selective erase entire line |
| C _S I ? J | Selective erase from cursor to end of screen |
| C _S I ? 0 J | Selective erase from cursor to end of screen |
| C _S I ? 1 J | Selective erase from top of screen |
| C _S I ? 2 J | Selective erase entire screen |
| Line Attributes | |
| E _{SC} #3 | Double height - top half |
| E _{SC} #4 | Double height - bottom half |
| E _{SC} #5 | Single width - single height |
| E _{SC} #6 | Double width - single height |

Table 9-3 VT320 Control Sequences (cont'd)

| Escape Sequence | | Function |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| Terminal Modes | | |
| Set | Reset | Mode Name |
| C _S I 2h | C _S I 2l | Keyboard Action mode |
| C _S I 4h | C _S I 4l | Insert/Replace mode |
| C _S I 12h | C _S I 12l | Send/Receive mode |
| C _S I 20h | C _S I 20l | Line feed/new line |
| C _S I ?1h | C _S I ?1l | Cursor key mode |
| | C _S I ?2l | VT52 mode |
| Set | Reset | Mode Name |
| C _S I ?3h | C _S I ?3l | Column mode |
| C _S I ?4h | C _S I ?4l | Scrolling mode |
| C _S I ?5h | C _S I ?5l | Screen mode |
| C _S I ?6h | C _S I ?6l | Origin mode |
| C _S I ?7h | C _S I ?7l | Auto Wrap mode |
| C _S I ?8h | C _S I ?8l | Auto repeat |
| C _S I ?18h | C _S I ?18l | Form Feed mode |
| C _S I ?19h | C _S I ?19l | Screen Print mode |
| C _S I ?25h | C _S I ?25l | Text cursor mode |
| C _S I ?42h | C _S I ?42l | Character Set mode |
| C _S I ?66h | C _S I ?66l | Numeric keypad |
| C _S I ?67h | C _S I ?67l | Backarrow key |
| C _S I Ps \$} | | Select status display |
| Ps = 0 | | main display |
| Ps = 1 | | status line |
| C _S I Ps \$~ | | Select status line type |
| Ps = 0 | | none |
| Ps = 1 | | indicator |
| Ps = 2 | | host-writable |
| ESC = | ESC > | Keypad mode |
| Printing | | |
| C _S I i | | Print Screen |
| C _S I 0i | | Print Screen |
| C _S I 4i | | Print Controller mode off |
| C _S I 5i | | Print Controller mode on |
| C _S I ?1i | | Print Cursor Line |
| C _S I ?4i | | Auto Print mode off |
| C _S I ?5i | | Auto Print mode on |

Table 9-3 VT320 Control Sequences (cont'd)

| Escape Sequence | Function |
|---|--------------------------------|
| Programmable LEDs | |
| C _S _I Ps;Ps q | Programmable LEDs |
| Ps = 0 | all LEDs off |
| Ps = 1 | L1 on |
| Ps = 2 | L2 on |
| Ps = 3 | L3 on |
| Ps = 4 | L4 on |
| Terminal Reset Mode | |
| E _{SC} c | Hard terminal reset |
| C _S _I !p | Soft terminal reset |
| Scrolling Region | |
| C _S _I Pt; Pb r | Define scroll region |
| Select C1 Control Transmission | |
| E _{SC} space F | 7-bit C1 control transmission |
| E _{SC} space G | 8-bit C1 control transmission |
| Tab Stops | |
| H _{TS} | Set tab at current column |
| E _{SC} H | Set tab at current column |
| C _S _I g | Clear at current column |
| C _S _I 0 g | Clear at current column |
| C _S _I 3 g | Clear all tabs |
| User Defined Keys (DECUDK) | |
| D _{CS} Pc;PI ky1/st1;ky2/st2;...kyn/stn S _T | |
| DCS Private Sequences | |
| C _S _I 0;0 | Enable Status Line |
| C _S _I 0;1 | Disable Status Line |
| C _S _I 0;2 | Erase Status Line |
| C _S _I 0;3;Pc ...String... S _T | Write Status Line |
| C _S _I 2;n | Set/Reset Local Echo |
| C _S _I 3;n | Set/Reset WP mode |
| C _S _I 4;p | Set Printer Port |
| C _S _I 5 ...Command String... S _T | Do Emulator Command |
| C _S _I 6 | Request Product ID |
| C _S _I 7;p | Set number of lines per screen |

9.1.3.2 VT100 Escape Sequences

Table 9-4 VT100 Escape Sequences

| Escape Sequence | Function |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Character Attributes | |
| ESC [Ps;... m | Character attributes |
| Ps = 0 | All attributes off |
| Ps = 1 | Bold on |
| Ps = 4 | Underscore on |
| Ps = 5 | Blink on |
| Ps = 7 | Reverse video on |
| Character Sets | |
| G0 G1 | |
| ESC (A ESC) A | UK set |
| ESC (B ESC) B | US ASCII set |
| ESC (0 ESC) 0 | Special Graphics set |
| ESC (1 ESC) 1 | Alternate ROM |
| ESC (2 ESC) 2 | Alternate ROM Special Graphics set |
| Cursor Movement | |
| ESC [Pn A | Cursor up |
| ESC [Pn B | Cursor down |
| ESC [Pn C | Cursor right |
| ESC [Pn D | Cursor left |
| ESC [Pl;Pc H | Direct cursor addressing |
| ESC [Pl;Pc f | Direct cursor addressing |
| ESC D | Index |
| ESC E | New line |
| ESC M | Reverse index |
| ESC 7 | Save cursor - attributes |
| ESC 8 | Restore cursor - attributes |
| Erase | |
| ESC [K | Cursor to end of line |
| ESC [0 K | Cursor to end of line |
| ESC [1 K | Beginning of line to cursor |
| ESC [2 K | Entire line |
| ESC [J | Cursor to end of screen |
| ESC [0 J | Cursor to end of screen |
| ESC [1 J | Beginning screen to cursor |
| ESC [2 J | Erase entire screen |
| Line Size | |
| ESC #3 | Double height - top half |
| ESC #4 | Double height - bottom half |

Table 9-4 VT100 Escape Sequences (cont'd)

| Escape Sequence | | Function |
|----------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Line Size (cont'd) | | |
| E _{SC} #5 | | Single width - single height |
| E _{SC} #6 | | Double width - single height |
| Modes | | |
| Set | Reset | Mode Name |
| E _{SC} [20h | E _{SC} [20l | Line feed/new line |
| E _{SC} [?1h | E _{SC} [?1l | Cursor key mode |
| E _{SC} [?3h | E _{SC} [?3l | Column mode |
| E _{SC} [?4h | E _{SC} [?4l | Scrolling mode |
| E _{SC} [?5h | E _{SC} [?5l | Screen mode |
| E _{SC} [?6h | E _{SC} [?6l | Origin mode |
| E _{SC} [?7h | E _{SC} [?7l | Wraparound |
| E _{SC} [?8h | E _{SC} [?8l | Auto repeat |
| E _{SC} [?9h | E _{SC} [?9l | Interlace |
| E _{SC} 1 | E _{SC} 2 | Graphic process option |
| E _{SC} = | E _{SC} > | Keypad mode |
| Programmable LEDs | | |
| E _{SC} [Ps;Ps q | | Programmable LEDs |
| Ps = 0 | | All LEDs off |
| Ps = 1 | | L1 on |
| Ps = 2 | | L2 on |
| Ps = 3 | | L3 on |
| Ps = 4 | | L4 on |
| Reset | | |
| E _{SC} c | | Reset |
| Scrolling Region | | |
| E _{SC} [Pt; Pb r | | Define scroll region |
| Tab Stops | | |
| E _{SC} H | | Set tab at current column |
| E _{SC} [g | | Clear at current column |
| E _{SC} [0 g | | Clear at current column |
| E _{SC} [3 g | | Clear all tabs |

9.1.3.3 VT52 Escape Sequences

Table 9-5 VT52 Escape Sequences

| Escape Sequence | Function |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| ESC A | Cursor up |
| ESC B | Cursor down |
| ESC C | Cursor right |
| ESC D | Cursor left |
| ESC F | Enter graphics mode |
| ESC G | Exit graphics mode |
| ESC H | Cursor to home position |
| ESC I | Reverse line feed |
| ESC J | Erase to end of screen |
| ESC K | Erase to end of line |
| ESC Y | Direct cursor address |
| ESC Z | Identify |
| ESC = | Enter alternate keypad mode |
| ESC > | Exit alternate keypad mode |
| ESC < | Enter ANSI mode |
| ESC ^ | Enter auto print mode |
| ESC _ | Exit auto print mode |
| ESC W | Enter printer controller mode |
| ESC X | Exit printer controller mode |
| ESC] | Print screen |
| ESC V | Print cursor line |

9.1.4 Reports

9.1.4.1 VT320 Reports

Table 9-6 VT320 Reports

| Host Directives* (host to Emulator) | Reports (Emulator to host) | Function |
|--|--|---|
| $C_{S_I} c$ or $C_{S_I} 0 c$ | $C_{S_I} ? Psc ; Ps1 ; \dots Psn c$ Psc Operating level 1 level 1 (VT100) 6 level 1 (VT102) 62 level 2 (VT200) 63 level 3 (VT300) Ps1...Psn Extensions 1 132 columns 2 printer port 6 selective erase 7 soft character set 8 user-defined keys 9 NRC set | Primary Device Attributes |
| $C_{S_I} > c$ or $C_{S_I} > 0 c$ | $C_{S_I} > Pp ; Pv ; Po c$ Pp Identification code 24 VT320 Pv Firmware version Po Hardware options 0 no options | Secondary Device Attributes |
| $C_{S_I} 6 n$ | $C_{S_I} PI ; Pc R$ PI Line number Pc Column number | Device Status Reports Cursor Position |
| $C_{S_I} ? 26 n$ | $C_{S_I} ? 27 ; Pd n$ Pd Keyboard dialect 1 North American | Keyboard Dialect |
| $C_{S_I} 5 n$ | $C_{S_I} 0 n$ no malfunction $C_{S_I} 3 n$ malfunction | Operating Status |
| $C_{S_I} ? 15 n$ | $C_{S_I} ? 13 n$ no printer $C_{S_I} ? 10 n$ printer ready $C_{S_I} ? 11 n$ printer not ready | Printer Status |

Table 9-6 VT320 Reports (cont'd)

| Host Directives* (host to Emulator) | Emulator Reports (Emulator to host) | Function |
|---|---|--|
| C_{S_I} ? 25 n | C_{S_I} ? 20 n UDKs unlocked C_{S_I} ? 21 n UDKs locked | UDK Status (VT300 mode only) |
| C_{S_I} P_S \$ u P_S Report requested 0 ignored 1 terminal state report | D_{C_S} 1 \$ s D...D <checksums 1 and 2> S_T D...D Report data | Terminal State Reports (VT300 mode only) |
| D_{C_S} P_S \$ p D...D S_T P_S Data string format 0 error 1 terminal state report D...D Restored data | | Restore terminal state |
| C_{S_I} P_S \$ w P_S Report requested 0 error 1 cursor information report 2 tab stop report | D_{C_S} 1 \$ u D...D S_T D...D Data string D_{C_S} 2 \$ u D...D S_T D...D Tab stops | Presentation State Reports (VT300 mode only) Cursor information report Tab stop report |
| D_{C_S} P_S \$ t D...D S_T P_S Data string format 0 error 1 cursor information report 2 tab stop report D...D Data string | | Restore presentation state |
| C_{S_I} P_a \$ p P_a ANSI mode | C_{S_I} P_a ; P_S \$ y P_a ANSI mode P_S Mode state 0 unknown state 1 set 2 reset 3 permanently set 4 permanently reset | Mode Settings (VT300 mode only) |

Table 9-6 VT320 Reports (cont'd)

| Host Directives* (host to Emulator) | Emulator Reports (Emulator to host) | Function |
|--|--|--|
| C_SI ? Pd \$ p Pd DEC private mode | C_SI ? Pd ; Ps \$ y Pd DEC private mode Ps Mode state 0 unknown state 1 set 2 reset 3 permanently set 4 permanently reset | |
| C_SI Pa ; ...Pa h Pa ANSI mode | | Set mode |
| C_SI ?Pd ; ...Pd h Pd DEC private mode | | |
| C_SI Pa ; ...Pa l Pa ANSI mode | | Reset mode |
| C_SI ? Pd ;... Pd l Pd DEC private mode | | |
| E_{SC} 7 E_{SC} 8 | | Cursor Settings Save cursor Restore cursor |
| D_CS \$ q D...D S_T D...D Intermediate and/or final characters of function. | D_CS Ps \$ r D...D S_T Ps Request validity 0 invalid request 1 valid request D...D Intermediate and/or final characters of function. | Control Function Settings (VT300 mode only) |
| C_SI & u | D_CS 0 ! u % 5 S_T DEC Supplemental Graphic D_CS 1 ! u A S_T ISO Latin-1 Supplemental | User-preferred Supplemental Set (VT300 mode only) |

Table 9-7 ANSI Modes

| Pa | Mode |
|----|--------------------------|
| 2 | Keyboard action |
| 3 | Control representation * |
| 4 | Insert/replace |
| 10 | Horizontal editing |
| 12 | Send/receive |
| 20 | Line feed/new line |

* Control representation is not supported.

Table 9-8 DEC Private Modes

| Pd | Mode | Pd | Mode |
|----|-------------|----|------------------------------------|
| 1 | Cursor keys | 18 | Print form feed |
| 2 | ANSI | 19 | Printer extent |
| 3 | Column | 25 | Text cursor enable |
| 4 | Scrolling | 42 | National Replacement Character set |
| 5 | Screen | 66 | Numeric keypad |
| 6 | Origin | 67 | Backarrow key |
| 7 | Autowrap | 68 | Keyboard usage * |
| 8 | Autorepeat | | |

* Keyboard usage is not supported and is permanently reset.

9.1.4.2 VT100 Reports

Table 9-9 VT100 Reports

| Host Directives (host to Emulator) | Emulator Reports (Emulator to host) | Function |
|---------------------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| $E_{Sc} [6 n$ | $E_{Sc} [PI; Pc R$ | Cursor Position |
| $E_{Sc} [c$ or $E_{Sc} [0 c$ | $E_{Sc} [?1; Ps c$ | Status Report |
| $E_{Sc} Z$ | $E_{Sc} [?1; Ps c$ | Terminal Identification |
| | Ps Identification Code | |
| | 0 Base VT100 | |
| | 1 STP | |
| | 2 AVO | |
| | 3 AVO and STP | |
| | 4 GPO | |
| | 5 GPO and STP | |
| | 6 GPO and AVO | |
| | 7 GPO, STP, and AVO | |

9.2 CHARACTER ENCODING

The VT320 uses an 8-bit character encoding scheme and a 7-bit code extension technique that are compatible with ANSI (American National Standards Institute) standards.

When operating in VT100 or VT52 mode, you are limited to working in a 7-bit environment. There are three requirements for operating in an 8-bit environment:

- /// Communications must be set for 8-bits and no parity.
- /// Your program must be 8-bit compatible.
- /// The emulator must be in VT320, 7-bit or 8-bit mode.

VT320 7-bit mode displays the VT320 8-bit character set while sending 7-bit control sequences to the host.

VT320 8-bit mode also displays the 8-bit character set, but sends 8-bit control sequences to the host.

Note: VT320 8-bit mode is not a communication setting. It is an operating environment. To select 8-bit communications, configure the emulator to No Parity.

9.2.1 7-Bit ASCII Codes

The 7 Bit ASCII Code table shows the octal, decimal, and hexadecimal code for each 7-bit ASCII character.

Table 9-10 7-Bit ASCII Codes

9.2.2 8-Bit ASCII Codes

The 8-Bit ASCII Codes table able 9-11 shows the 8-bit code table, which has twice as many code values as the 7-bit code table.

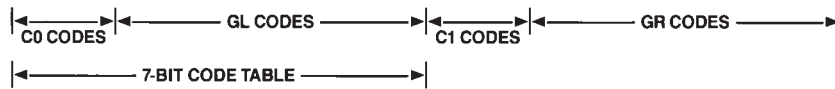
All codes on the left half of the 8-bit table (columns 0 through 7) are 7-bit compatible; the 8th bit is not set, and can be ignored or assumed to be 0. You can use these codes in a 7-bit or an 8-bit environment. All codes on the right half of the table (columns 8 through 15) have their 8th bit set. You can only use these codes in an 8-bit environment.

The 8-bit code table has two sets of control characters, C0 (control 0) and C1 (control 1). The table also has two sets of graphics characters, GL (graphic left) and GR (graphic right).

The basic functions of the C0 and C1 codes are defined by ANSI. The C0 codes are 7-bit compatible. The C1 codes represent 8-bit control characters that perform functions beyond those possible with the C0 codes. You can only use C1 codes in an 8-bit environment.

Table 9-11 8-Bit ASCII Codes

| | 00 | 01 | 02 | 03 | 04 | 05 | 06 | 07 | 08 | 09 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
|----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|-----|
| 00 | NUL | DLE | SP | | | | | | | DCS | /// | | | | | |
| 01 | SOH | DC1 | | | | | | | | PU1 | | | | | | |
| 02 | STX | DC2 | | | | | | | | PU2 | | | | | | |
| 03 | ETX | DC3 | | | | | | | | STS | | | | | | |
| 04 | EOT | DC4 | | | | | | | IND | CCH | | | | | | |
| 05 | ENQ | NAK | | | | | | | NEL | MW | | | | | | |
| 06 | ACK | SYN | | | | | | | SSA | SPA | | | | | | |
| 07 | BEL | ETB | | | | | | | ESA | EPA | | | | | | |
| 08 | BS | CAN | | | | | | | HTS | | | | | | | |
| 09 | HT | EM | | | | | | | HTJ | | | | | | | |
| 10 | LF | SUB | | | | | | | VTS | | | | | | | |
| 11 | VT | ESC | | | | | | | PLD | CSI | | | | | | |
| 12 | FF | FS | | | | | | | PLU | ST | | | | | | |
| 13 | CR | GS | | | | | | | RI | OSC | | | | | | |
| 14 | SO | RS | | | | | | | SS2 | PM | | | | | | |
| 15 | SI | US | | | | | | DEL | SS3 | APC | | | | | | /// |



9.2.3 Control Functions

Control functions are a set of instructions used to program the terminal emulator. All control functions can be expressed in single-byte or multi-byte codes.

Single-byte codes are the C0 and C1 control characters. You can perform a limited number of functions using C0 characters. A few more functions are available using C1 characters, but they must be used in an 8-bit environment.

Multi-byte control codes represent far more functions than single-byte codes, due to the variety of code combinations possible. These codes are called control sequences, escape sequences, and device control strings.

9.2.3.1 Control Sequences

A control sequence starts with a C_{S_I} (Control Sequence Introducer), followed by one or more ASCII characters. The 8-bit C_{S_I} can also be expressed as the 7-bit equivalent $E_{S_C} [$ (for use in a 7-bit environment). Thus, you can express all control sequences as escape sequences where the second character is the $[$. For example, the following two sequences are equivalent and perform the same function (they change the display from 80 columns to 132 columns).

$C_{S_I} ? 3 h$
 $E_{S_C} [? 3 h$

Since the 8-bit C_{S_I} uses one less byte than the 7-bit equivalent, $E_{S_C} [$, you will gain processing speed by using the C_{S_I} . However, you can only use a sequence starting with the C_{S_I} character in an 8-bit environment.

You can express any C1 control character as a two character escape sequence whose second character has a code that is 40 (hexadecimal) less than that of the C1 character. For example, S_T is the same as $E_{S_C} \backslash$.

9.2.3.2 Escape Sequences

All escape sequences start with the same C0 character, E_{S_C} , and are followed by one or more ASCII characters. For example, the following escape sequence causes the current line to have double-width characters:

$E_{S_C} \# 6$

Because escape sequences use only 7-bit characters, you can use them in 7-bit or 8-bit environments.

You can make any escape sequence whose second character is in the range of column-4, row-0 through column-5, row-15 (refer to the 7-Bit ASCII Codes topic for more information) one byte shorter by removing the E_{S_C} and adding 40 (hexadecimal) to the code of the second character. This generates a C1 control character.

9.2.3.3 Device Control Strings

A device control string (D_{CS}) is a delimited string of characters used in a data stream as a logical entity for control purposes. It consists of an opening delimiter (a device control string introducer), a command string (data) and a closing delimiter (a string terminator).

Device control strings are used to download character sets and to load user-defined keys.

Table 9-12 Device Control String

| Device Control String | Data | String Terminator |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| D_{CS} | UDKs or Character Set | S_T |

A **device control character** (D_{CS}) is an 8-bit control character. It is expressed as $E_{SC} P$ when coding for a 7-bit environment.

A **string terminator** (S_T) is also an 8-bit control character. It is expressed as $E_{SC} \backslash$ when coding for a 7-bit environment.

9.3 CHARACTER SETS

Although the C0 and C1 function codes cannot be changed, the GL and GR codes can have different character sets mapped into them. The Mapping Character Sets topic describes the commands for mapping character sets into GL or GR.

The emulator supports the following character sets:

- /// DEC Multinational (consists of ASCII and DEC Supplemental Character sets)
- /// ISO Latin-1
- /// DEC Special Graphics
- /// National Replacement Character
- /// Downloadable

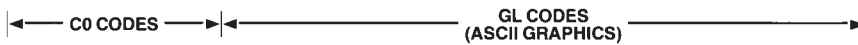
9.3.1 DEC Multinational

The DEC multinational character set is the default character set.

The C0 and GL codes are the ASCII control codes and character set. The C1 and GR codes are the DEC multinational 8-bit control characters and character set. The C1 and GR control codes and characters are not available in VT52 and VT100 modes.

Table 9-13 DEC Multinational Character Set

| | 0 | | 1 | | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | 5 | | 6 | | 7 | |
|----|-----|-----|------------|--------|----|--------|---|--------|---|---------|---|---------|---|----------|-----|----------|
| 0 | NUL | 000 | DLE | 201610 | SP | 403220 | 0 | 604830 | @ | 1006440 | P | 1208050 | ` | 1409660 | p | 16011270 |
| 1 | SOH | 111 | DC1 (XON) | 211711 | ! | 413321 | 1 | 614931 | A | 1016541 | Q | 1218151 | a | 1419761 | q | 16111371 |
| 2 | STX | 222 | DC2 | 221812 | " | 423422 | 2 | 625032 | B | 1026642 | R | 1228252 | b | 1429862 | r | 16211472 |
| 3 | ETX | 333 | DC3 (XOFF) | 231913 | # | 433523 | 3 | 635133 | C | 1036743 | S | 1238353 | c | 1439963 | s | 16311573 |
| 4 | EOT | 444 | DC4 | 242014 | \$ | 443624 | 4 | 645234 | D | 1046844 | T | 1248454 | d | 14410064 | t | 16411674 |
| 5 | ENQ | 555 | NAK | 252115 | % | 453725 | 5 | 655335 | E | 1056945 | U | 1258555 | e | 14510165 | u | 16511775 |
| 6 | ACK | 666 | SYN | 262216 | & | 463826 | 6 | 665436 | F | 1067046 | V | 1268656 | f | 14610266 | v | 16611876 |
| 7 | BEL | 777 | ETB | 272317 | ' | 473927 | 7 | 675537 | G | 1077147 | W | 1278757 | g | 14710367 | w | 16711977 |
| 8 | BS | 888 | CAN | 302418 | (| 504028 | 8 | 705638 | H | 1107248 | X | 1308858 | h | 15010468 | x | 17012078 |
| 9 | HT | 999 | EM | 312519 |) | 514129 | 9 | 715739 | I | 1117349 | Y | 1318959 | i | 15110569 | y | 17112179 |
| 10 | LF | 10A | SUB | 32261A | * | 52422A | : | 72583A | J | 112744A | Z | 132905A | j | 1521066A | z | 1721227A |
| 11 | VT | 11B | ESC | 33271B | + | 53432B | ; | 73593B | K | 113754B | [| 133915B | k | 1531076B | { | 1731237B |
| 12 | FF | 12C | FS | 34281C | , | 54442C | < | 74603C | L | 114764C | \ | 134925C | l | 1541086C | | 1741247C |
| 13 | CR | 13D | GS | 35291D | - | 55452D | = | 75613D | M | 115774D |] | 135935D | m | 1551096D | } | 1751257D |
| 14 | SO | 14E | RS | 36301E | . | 56462E | > | 76623E | N | 116784E | ^ | 136945E | n | 1561106E | ~ | 1761267E |
| 15 | SI | 15F | US | 37311F | / | 57472F | ? | 77633F | O | 117794F | _ | 137955F | o | 1571116F | DEL | 1771277F |



| | |
|----|---------|
| 33 | OCTAL |
| 27 | DECIMAL |
| 1B | HEX |

Table 9-13 DEC Multinational Character Set (cont'd)

| 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | | |
|-----|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| | 200 128 80 DCS | 220 144 90 / | 240 160 A0 | ° | 260 176 B0 À | 300 192 C0 | 320 208 D0 à | 340 224 E0 | 360 240 F0 0 |
| | 201 129 81 PU1 | 221 145 91 i | 241 161 A1 ± | 261 177 B1 Á | 301 193 C1 Ñ | 321 209 D1 á | 341 225 E1 ñ | 361 241 F1 1 | |
| | 202 130 82 PU2 | 222 146 92 ç | 242 162 A2 2 | 262 178 B2 Â | 302 194 C2 Ò | 322 210 D2 â | 342 226 E2 ò | 362 242 F2 2 | |
| | 203 131 83 STS | 223 147 93 £ | 243 163 A3 3 | 263 179 B3 Ã | 303 195 C3 Ó | 323 211 D3 ã | 343 227 E3 ó | 363 243 F3 3 | |
| IND | 204 132 84 CCH | 224 148 94 / | 244 164 A4 / | 264 180 B4 Ä | 304 196 C4 Ô | 324 212 D4 ä | 344 228 E4 ö | 364 244 F4 4 | |
| NEL | 205 133 85 MW | 225 149 95 ¥ | 245 165 A5 μ | 265 181 B5 Å | 305 197 C5 Õ | 325 213 D5 å | 345 229 E5 õ | 365 245 F5 5 | |
| SSA | 206 134 86 SPA | 226 150 96 / | 246 166 A6 ¶ | 266 182 B6 Æ | 306 198 C6 Ö | 326 214 D6 æ | 346 230 E6 ö | 366 246 F6 6 | |
| ESA | 207 135 87 EPA | 227 151 97 § | 247 167 A7 · | 267 183 B7 Ç | 307 199 C7 Œ | 327 215 D7 ç | 347 231 E7 œ | 367 247 F7 7 | |
| HTS | 210 136 88 / | 230 152 98 œ | 250 168 A8 / | 270 184 B8 È | 310 200 C8 Ø | 330 216 D8 è | 350 232 E8 ø | 370 248 F8 8 | |
| HTJ | 211 137 89 / | 231 153 99 © | 251 169 A9 1 | 271 185 B9 É | 311 201 C9 Ù | 331 217 D9 é | 351 233 E9 ù | 371 249 F9 9 | |
| VTS | 212 138 8A / | 232 154 9A à | 252 170 AA ó | 272 186 BA Ê | 312 202 CA Ú | 332 218 DA ê | 352 234 EA ú | 372 250 FA 10 | |
| PLD | 213 139 8B CSI | 233 155 9B « | 253 171 AB » | 273 187 BB Ë | 313 203 CB Û | 333 219 DB ë | 353 235 EB û | 373 251 FB 11 | |
| PLU | 214 140 8C ST | 234 156 9C / | 254 172 AC ¼ | 274 188 BC Ì | 314 204 CC Ü | 334 220 DC ì | 354 236 EC ü | 374 252 FC 12 | |
| RI | 215 141 8D OSC | 235 157 9D / | 255 173 AD ½ | 275 189 BD Í | 315 205 CD ÿ | 335 221 DD í | 355 237 ED ÿ | 375 253 FD 13 | |
| SS2 | 216 142 8E PM | 236 158 9E / | 256 174 AE / | 276 190 BE Î | 316 206 CE / | 336 222 DE î | 356 238 EE / | 376 254 FE 14 | |
| SS3 | 217 143 8F APC | 237 159 9F / | 257 175 AF ¿ | 277 191 BF Ï | 317 207 CF β | 337 223 DF ï | 357 239 EF / | 377 255 FF 15 | |

← C1 CODES → ← GR CODES (DEC SUPPLEMENTAL GRAPHICS) →

| | |
|----|---------|
| 33 | OCTAL |
| 27 | DECIMAL |
| 1B | HEX |

9.3.2 ISO Latin-1

The ISO Latin-1 set has 96 graphic characters. The majority of these are identical to the DEC Supplemental Graphic set, but with a few additional symbols and letters. The ISO Latin-1 set can only be used in VT300 mode.

Table 9-14 ISO Latin-1 Supplemental Character Set

| 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|-----|------------------|------|------------------|----|------------------|----|------------------|---|------------------|---|------------------|---|------------------|----|
| 200 128 80 | DCS | 220 144 90 | NBSP | 240 160 A0 | ° | 260 176 B0 | À | 300 192 C0 | Ð | 320 208 D0 | à | 340 224 E0 | ä | 360 240 F0 | 0 |
| 201 129 81 | PU1 | 221 145 91 | ı | 241 161 A1 | ± | 261 177 B1 | Á | 301 193 C1 | Ñ | 321 209 D1 | á | 341 225 E1 | ã | 361 241 F1 | 1 |
| 202 130 82 | PU2 | 222 146 92 | ç | 242 162 A2 | 2 | 262 178 B2 | Â | 302 194 C2 | Ò | 322 210 D2 | â | 342 226 E2 | ö | 362 242 F2 | 2 |
| 203 131 83 | STS | 223 147 93 | £ | 243 163 A3 | 3 | 263 179 B3 | Ã | 303 195 C3 | Ó | 323 211 D3 | ã | 343 227 E3 | ó | 363 243 F3 | 3 |
| 204 132 84 | IND | 224 148 94 | œ | 244 164 A4 | ı | 264 180 B4 | Ä | 304 196 C4 | Ô | 324 212 D4 | ä | 344 228 E4 | ô | 364 244 F4 | 4 |
| 205 133 85 | NEL | 225 149 95 | Ÿ | 245 165 A5 | μ | 265 181 B5 | Å | 305 197 C5 | Õ | 325 213 D5 | å | 345 229 E5 | õ | 365 245 F5 | 5 |
| 206 134 86 | SSA | 226 150 96 | ı | 246 166 A6 | ı | 266 182 B6 | Æ | 306 198 C6 | Ö | 326 214 D6 | æ | 346 230 E6 | ö | 366 246 F6 | 6 |
| 207 135 87 | ESA | 227 151 97 | § | 247 167 A7 | · | 267 183 B7 | Ç | 307 199 C7 | × | 327 215 D7 | ç | 347 231 E7 | ÷ | 367 247 F7 | 7 |
| 210 136 88 | HTS | 230 152 98 | ” | 250 168 A8 | ı | 270 184 B8 | È | 310 200 C8 | Ø | 330 216 D8 | è | 350 232 E8 | ø | 370 248 F8 | 8 |
| 211 137 89 | HTJ | 231 153 99 | © | 251 169 A9 | 1 | 271 185 B9 | É | 311 201 C9 | Ù | 331 217 D9 | é | 351 233 E9 | ù | 371 249 F9 | 9 |
| 212 138 8A | VTS | 232 154 9A | à | 252 170 AA | º | 272 186 BA | Ê | 312 202 CA | Ú | 332 218 DA | ê | 352 234 EA | ú | 372 250 FA | 10 |
| 213 139 8B | PLD | 233 155 9B | << | 253 171 AB | >> | 273 187 BB | Ë | 313 203 CB | Û | 333 219 DB | ë | 353 235 EB | û | 373 251 FB | 11 |
| 214 140 8C | PLU | 234 156 9C | ı | 254 172 AC | ¼ | 274 188 BC | Ì | 314 204 CC | Ü | 334 220 DC | ì | 354 236 EC | ü | 374 252 FC | 12 |
| 215 141 8D | RI | 235 157 9D | — | 255 173 AD | ½ | 275 189 BD | Í | 315 205 CD | Ý | 335 221 DD | í | 355 237 ED | ý | 375 253 FD | 13 |
| 216 142 8E | SS2 | 236 158 9E | ® | 256 174 AE | ¾ | 276 190 BE | Î | 316 206 CE | Þ | 336 222 DE | î | 356 238 EE | þ | 376 254 FE | 14 |
| 217 143 8F | SS3 | 237 159 9F | — | 257 175 AF | ı | 277 191 BF | Ï | 317 207 CF | ß | 337 223 DF | ï | 357 239 EF | ÿ | 377 255 FF | 15 |

GR CODES
 ◀ C1 CODES ▶ (ISO LATIN-1 SUPPLEMENTAL GRAPHIC) ▶

| | |
|----|---------|
| 33 | OCTAL |
| 27 | DECIMAL |
| 1B | HEX |

9.3.3 DEC Special Graphics

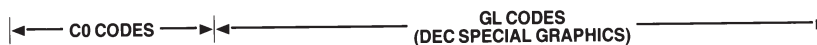
This character set is also called the VT100 Line Drawing character set. It is comprised of ASCII characters and special symbols.

The DEC Special Graphics set can replace either the GL or GR characters. Refer to the Mapping Character Sets topic for more information.

This mapping is compatible with VT100 and VT300 modes.

Table 9-15 DEC Special Graphic Character Set

| | 0 | | | 1 | | | 2 | | | 3 | | | 4 | | | 5 | | | 6 | | | 7 | | |
|----|-----|-----|------------|------|----|------|---|------|---|-------|---------|-------|----------------|--------|-----|--------|--|--|---|--|--|---|--|--|
| 0 | NUL | 000 | DLE | 2016 | SP | 4032 | 0 | 6048 | @ | 10064 | P | 12080 | ◆ | 14096 | — | 160112 | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | SOH | 111 | DC1 (XON) | 2117 | ! | 4133 | 1 | 6149 | A | 10165 | Q | 12181 | ▣ | 14197 | — | 161113 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | STX | 222 | DC2 | 2218 | " | 4234 | 2 | 6250 | B | 10266 | R | 12282 | H _T | 14298 | — | 162114 | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | ETX | 333 | DC3 (XOFF) | 2319 | # | 4335 | 3 | 6351 | C | 10367 | S | 12383 | F _F | 14399 | — | 163115 | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | EOT | 444 | DC4 | 2420 | \$ | 4436 | 4 | 6452 | D | 10468 | T | 12484 | C _R | 144100 | ┌ | 164116 | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | ENQ | 555 | NAK | 2521 | % | 4537 | 5 | 6553 | E | 10569 | U | 12585 | L _F | 145101 | └ | 165117 | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | ACK | 666 | SYN | 2622 | & | 4638 | 6 | 6654 | F | 10670 | V | 12686 | ° | 146102 | ┘ | 166118 | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | BEL | 777 | ETB | 2723 | ' | 4739 | 7 | 6755 | G | 10771 | W | 12787 | ± | 147103 | ┐ | 167119 | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | BS | 888 | CAN | 3024 | (| 5040 | 8 | 7056 | H | 11072 | X | 13088 | N _L | 150104 | | 170120 | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | HT | 999 | EM | 3125 |) | 5141 | 9 | 7157 | I | 11173 | Y | 13189 | V _T | 151105 | ≤ | 171121 | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | LF | 10A | SUB | 3226 | * | 5242 | : | 7258 | J | 11274 | Z | 13290 | ┘ | 152106 | ≥ | 172122 | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | VT | 11B | ESC | 3327 | + | 5343 | ; | 7359 | K | 11375 | [| 13391 | ┐ | 153107 | π | 173123 | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | FF | 12C | FS | 3428 | , | 5444 | < | 7460 | L | 11476 | \ | 13492 | ┘ | 154108 | ≠ | 174124 | | | | | | | | |
| 13 | CR | 13D | GS | 3529 | - | 5545 | = | 7561 | M | 11577 |] | 13593 | L | 155109 | £ | 175125 | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | SO | 14E | RS | 3630 | . | 5646 | > | 7662 | N | 11678 | ^ | 13694 | ┘ | 156110 | . | 176126 | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | SI | 15F | US | 3731 | / | 5747 | ? | 7763 | O | 11779 | (BLANK) | 13795 | — | 157111 | DEL | 177127 | | | | | | | | |



| | |
|----|---------|
| 33 | OCTAL |
| 27 | DECIMAL |
| 1B | HEX |

9.3.4 National Replacement Character

All National Replacement Character sets are supported. Select the character set with a set mode control sequence.

Table 9-16 NRC Control Sequences

| Sequence | Function |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| C _{S_I} ? 42h | Set National |
| C _{S_I} ? 42l | Reset National (Set Multinational) |

NRC sets are available for the following languages.

| Language | NRC Set | Language | NRC Set |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|
| United Kingdom | United Kingdom | Italian | Italian |
| Danish | Norwegian/Danish | Norwegian | Norwegian/Danish |
| Dutch | Dutch | Portuguese | Portuguese |
| Finnish | Finnish | Spanish | Spanish |
| Flemish | French | Swedish | Swedish |
| French/Belgium | French | Swiss (French) | Swiss |
| French/Canadian | French Canadian | Swiss (German) | Swiss |
| German | German | | |

Each 7-bit character set. However, character set replaced.

Note: NCR mode.

Table 9-17 National Replacement Character Sets

| Character Set | 35 | 64 | 91 | 92 | 93 | 94 | 95 | 96 | 123 | 124 | 125 | 126 |
|---------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|---------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

9.3.5 Character Set Selection

To select a character set, it must first be designated as a G0, G1, G2 or G3 logical set, as in the following sequence:

E_{SC} <Intermediate> <Final>

The intermediate character is selected based on where the set is to be designated (G0, G1, etc.) and whether the set has 94 or 96 characters. 96 character sets cannot be designated as G0.

Table 9-18 Character Set Designation - Intermediate

| To Select | Use |
|-------------------------|-----|
| 94 Character Set | |
| G0 | (|
| G1 |) |
| G2 | * |
| G3 | + |

The final character is the designator for the character set.

Table 9-19 Character Set Designation - Final

| To Select | Use |
|--|-----|
| ASCII (94) | B |
| DEC Supplemental Graphic (94) | %5 |
| ISO Latin-1 Supplemental (96) | A |
| User-preferred Supplemental (94) | < |
| DEC Special Graphic (94) | 0 |
| National Replacement Character Sets (94) | |

Example: $\text{Esc} + \%5$

Designates the DEC Supplemental Graphic set as the G3 logical set.

9.3.6 Mapping Character Sets

Character sets are mapped into use with locking shift and single shift functions. Locking shift functions map a character set into GL or GR where it remains until another locking shift is used.

Table 9-20 Mapping Character Sets with Locking Shifts

| Sequence | Function |
|-------------------|---|
| S _I | Locking shift 0. Maps G0 into GL |
| S _O | Locking shift 1. Maps G1 into GL |
| E _{SC} ~ | Locking shift 1, right. Maps G1 into GR * |
| E _{SC} n | Locking shift 2. Maps G2 into GL * |
| E _{SC} } | Locking shift 2, right. Maps G2 into GR * |
| E _{SC} o | Locking shift 3. Maps G3 into GL * |
| E _{SC} | Locking shift 3, right. Maps G3 into GR * |

* Indicates VT300 mode only.

Single shift functions map the G2 or G3 set into GL for the next character only. After the next character is displayed, the previous character set is restored into GL.

Table 9-21 Mapping Character Sets with Single Shifts

| 8-Bit Character | 7-Bit Equivalent Sequence | Function |
|-----------------|---------------------------|---|
| S _{S2} | E _{SC} N | Single shift 2. Maps G2 into GL for the next character. |
| S _{S3} | E _{SC} O | Single shift 3. Maps G3 into GL for the next character. |

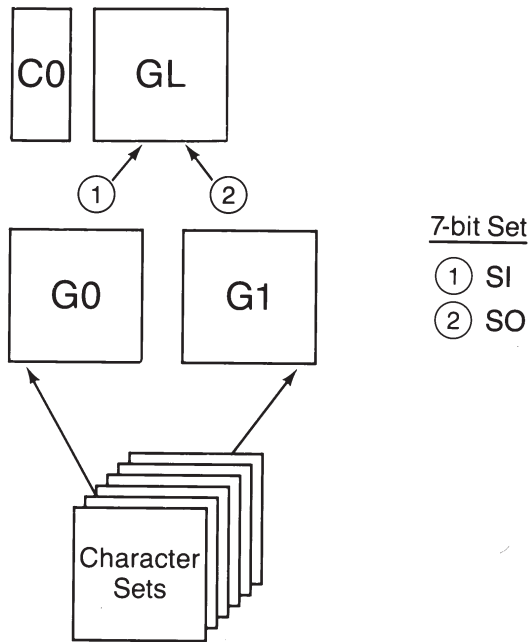


Figure 9-1 Locking Commands (VT100)

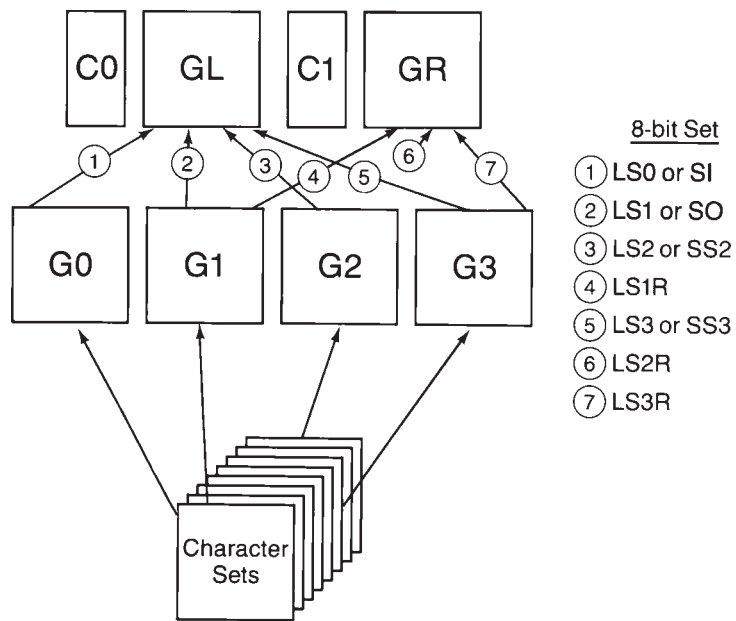


Figure 9-2 Locking and Single Shift Commands

9.4 TRANSMITTED CODES

This section describes the codes that the emulator sends to a program. Key codes generated in VT52 mode are listed if they differ from those in ANSI compatible mode (VT200 and VT100).

9.4.1 Main Keypad

The main keypad consists of standard keys (used to generate letters, numbers, and symbols) and function keys (used to generate special function codes).

9.4.1.1 Standard Keys

The standard keys generate only alphanumeric, ASCII characters. There are no DEC Supplemental characters among the standard keys. However, you can create any DEC Multinational graphics character that is not available through a standard key by typing a valid compose sequence.

Each character is represented by a unique code that is based on the character's position in the code table. Refer to the 7-Bit ASCII Codes table for more information.

9.4.2 Editing Keypad

The codes in the following table are generated by the VT320 editing keypad and cursor keys.

Table 9-22 Codes from Editing Keys

| Key | VT320 Mode |
|-------------|---------------------|
| Find | C _{S1} 1 ~ |
| Insert Here | C _{S1} 2 ~ |
| Remove | C _{S1} 3 ~ |
| Select | C _{S1} 4 ~ |
| Prev Screen | C _{S1} 5 ~ |
| Next Screen | C _{S1} 6 ~ |

Table 9-23 Codes from Cursor Control Mode

| Key | Cursor Key Mode | | VT52 Mode |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| | Reset Normal | Set Application | Normal and Application |
| C _{S1} A | | S _{S3} A | E _{SC} A |
| C _{S1} B | | S _{S3} B | E _{SC} B |
| C _{S1} C | | S _{S3} C | E _{SC} C |
| C _{S1} D | | S _{S3} D | E _{SC} D |

9.4.3 Auxiliary Keypad

The characters sent by the auxiliary keypad keys depend upon the settings of two features; the operating mode (ANSI or VT52) and the keypad mode (application or numeric).

Table 9-24 Codes from Auxiliary Keypad Keys

| Key | VT320/VT100 ANSI Mode | | VT52 Mode | |
|-------|-----------------------|-------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| | Numeric | Application | Numeric | Application |
| 0 | 0 | $S_{S_3} p$ | 0 | $E_{S_C} ? p$ |
| 1 | 1 | $S_{S_3} q$ | 1 | $E_{S_C} ? q$ |
| 2 | 2 | $S_{S_3} r$ | 2 | $E_{S_C} ? r$ |
| 3 | 3 | $S_{S_3} s$ | 3 | $E_{S_C} ? s$ |
| 4 | 4 | $S_{S_3} t$ | 4 | $E_{S_C} ? t$ |
| 5 | 5 | $S_{S_3} u$ | 5 | $E_{S_C} ? u$ |
| 6 | 6 | $S_{S_3} v$ | 6 | $E_{S_C} ? v$ |
| 7 | 7 | $S_{S_3} w$ | 7 | $E_{S_C} ? w$ |
| 8 | 8 | $S_{S_3} x$ | 8 | $E_{S_C} ? x$ |
| 9 | 9 | $S_{S_3} y$ | 9 | $E_{S_C} ? z$ |
| - | (minus) | $S_{S_3} m$ | - | $E_{S_C} ? m$ |
| , | (comma) | $S_{S_3} l$ | , | $E_{S_C} ? l$ |
| . | (period) | $S_{S_3} n$ | . | $E_{S_C} ? n$ |
| PF1 | $S_{S_3} P$ | $S_{S_3} P$ | $E_{S_C} P$ | $E_{S_C} P$ |
| PF2 | $S_{S_3} Q$ | $S_{S_3} Q$ | $E_{S_C} Q$ | $E_{S_C} Q$ |
| PF3 | $S_{S_3} R$ | $S_{S_3} R$ | $E_{S_C} R$ | $E_{S_C} R$ |
| PF4 | $S_{S_3} S$ | $S_{S_3} S$ | $E_{S_C} S$ | $E_{S_C} S$ |
| Enter | C_R or C_{R}^{LF} | $S_{S_3} M$ | C_R or C_{R}^{LF} | $E_{S_C} ? M$ |

Note: $E_{S_C} [$ is the 7-bit equivalent for C_{S_1} .
 $E_{S_C} O$ is the 7-bit equivalent for S_{S_3} .

9.4.4 Top Row Function Keys

On the VT320 keyboard there are 20 top row function keys, F1 through F20. The keys F1 - F5, labeled Hold Screen, Print Screen, Set-Up, Data/Talk, and Break, do not send codes. F6 - F20 send the codes defined below.

Table 9-25 Codes from Top Row Functions

| Function Key | Generic Name | VT320 Mode | VT100/VT52 Mode |
|--------------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| Hold Screen | F1 | * | * |
| Print Screen | F2 | * | * |
| Set-Up | F3 | * | * |
| Data/Talk | F4 | * | * |
| Break | F5 | * | * |
| F6 | F6 | C _{S1} 1 7 ~ | * |
| F7 | F7 | C _{S1} 1 8 ~ | * |
| F8 | F8 | C _{S1} 1 9 ~ | * |
| F9 | F9 | C _{S1} 2 0 ~ | * |
| F10 | F10 | C _{S1} 2 1 ~ | * |
| F11 | F11 | C _{S1} 2 3 ~ | * |
| F12 | F12 | C _{S1} 2 4 ~ | * |
| F13 | F13 | C _{S1} 2 5 ~ | * |
| F14 | F14 | C _{S1} 2 6 ~ | * |
| Help | (F15) | C _{S1} 2 8 ~ | * |
| Do | (F16) | C _{S1} 2 9 ~ | * |
| F17 | F17 | C _{S1} 3 1 ~ | * |
| F18 | F18 | C _{S1} 3 2 ~ | * |
| F19 | F19 | C _{S1} 3 3 ~ | * |
| F20 | F20 | C _{S1} 3 4 ~ | * |

* Indicates that codes are not generated.

9.4.5 Control Codes

The keys and key combinations used to send C0 7-bit control character codes are listed below.

Table 9-26 7-Bit Control Character Keys

| Ctrl Character Mnemonic | Code | Key Pressed with Ctrl |
|-------------------------|------|-----------------------|
| NUL | 0/00 | 2, space |
| SOH | 0/01 | A |
| STX | 0/02 | B |
| ETX | 0/03 | C |
| EOT | 0/04 | D |
| ENQ | 0/05 | E |
| ACK | 0/06 | F |
| BEL | 0/07 | G |
| BS | 0/08 | H |
| HT | 0/09 | I |
| LF | 0/10 | J |
| VT | 0/11 | K |
| FF | 0/12 | L |
| CR | 0/13 | M |
| SO | 0/14 | N |
| SI | 0/15 | O |
| DLE | 1/00 | P |
| DC1 | 1/01 | Q |
| DC2 | 1/02 | R |
| DC3 | 1/03 | S |
| DC4 | 1/04 | T |
| NAK | 1/05 | U |
| SYN | 1/06 | V |
| ETB | 1/07 | W |
| CAN | 1/08 | X |
| EM | 1/09 | Y |
| SUB | 1/10 | Z |
| ESC | 1/11 | 3,[|
| FS | 1/12 | 4,\ |
| GS | 1/13 | 5,] |
| RS | 1/14 | 6,~ |
| US | 1/15 | 7,? |
| DEL | 7/15 | 8 |

9.5 RECEIVED CODES

This section describes the emulator's response to codes received from an application or host system. All data received by the emulator consists of single or multiple character codes. These codes include display characters, control characters, control sequences, escape sequences and device control strings.

9.5.1 Character Rendition and Attributes

Character Rendition and Attributes are display functions that affect the way a character is displayed, without changing the character (e.g., underline, blinking, bold).

9.5.1.1 Select Graphic Rendition

One or more character renditions can be selected at a time. Multiple parameters are executed in sequence and are cumulative. If using more than one character rendition, the parameters must be separated by a delimiter; the semicolon.

Example: `cs10 ; 4 ; 5 m`

Turns all attributes off then implements a blinking underline.

The select character rendition format is:

$C_{S1} Ps ; Ps \dots m$

Where: **Ps** is one of the parameters from the following table.

Table 9-27 SGR Character Attribute Parameters

| Parameter | Action |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| 0 | All attributes off |
| 1 | Display bold |
| 4 | Display underscored |
| 5 | Display blinking |
| 7 | Display reverse video |
| 22 | Display normal intensity |
| 24 | Display not underlined |

9.5.1.2 Select Attributes

All characters can be set to erasable or non-erasable by using the following format (VT300 mode only).

$C_{S1} Ps " q$

Where: **Ps** is one of the parameters from the following table.

Table 9-28 DECSCA Attribute Parameters

| Parameter | Action |
|-----------|--|
| 0 | All attributes off |
| 1 | Designate character as not erasable by DECSEL/DECSED |
| 2 | Designate character as erasable by DECSEL/DECSED |

9.5.2 Compatibility Level

There are two levels of operation for compatibility with an application; level one (VT100 operation), and level 2 (VT320 operation).

Table 9-29 Level 1/Level 2 Compatibility

| Area | Level 1 (VT100 Mode) | Level 2 (VT320 Mode) |
|-----------------------|--|---|
| Keyboard | Sends ASCII only. UDKs cannot be loaded. Editing keypad function keys do not operate. | Permits full use of the VT320 keyboard. |
| 7 or 8 Bits | The 8th bit is set to zero. | |
| Character Sets | Only ASCII and DEC Special graphics character sets are available. | All VT320 character sets are available. |
| C1 Control Characters | All transmitted C1 controls are sent as 7-bit escape sequences (S7C1). | |

The compatibility level of the emulator can be set with the following sequences:

Table 9-30 Compatibility Level Sequences

| Sequence | Action (sets emulator to...) |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Cs _l 6 1 " p | Level 1 compatibility (VT100 mode) |
| Cs _l 6 2 " p | Level 3 compatibility (VT300/8-bit) |
| Cs _l 6 2 ; 0 " p | Level 3 compatibility (VT300/8-bit) |
| Cs _l 6 2 ; 1 " p | Level 3 compatibility (VT300/7-bit) |
| Cs _l 6 2 ; 2 " p | Level 3 compatibility (VT300/8-bit) |
| Cs _l 6 3 " p | Level 3 compatibility (VT300/8-bit) |
| Cs _l 6 3 ; 0 " p | Level 3 compatibility (VT300/8-bit) |
| Cs _l 6 3 ; 1 " p | Level 3 compatibility (VT300/7-bit) |
| Cs _l 6 3 ; 2 " p | Level 3 compatibility (VT300/8-bit) |

9.5.3 Control Characters

Tables 9-31 and 9-32 define the action taken by the emulator when it receives C0 and C1 control characters. The VT320 does not recognize all C0 and C1 characters; those not shown in either table are ignored.

Table 9-31 C0 Control Characters

| C0 | Name | Action |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---|
| N _{UL} | Null | Ignored when received. |
| E _{NQ} | Enquiry | Generates answerback message. |
| B _{EL} | Bell | Generates bell tone. |
| B _S | Backspace | Moves cursor to the left one position. |
| H _T | Horizontal Tabulation | Moves cursor to next tab stop. Does not cause auto wrap. |
| L _F | Line Feed | Causes a line feed. |
| V _T | Vertical Tabulation | Processed as L _F . |
| F _F | Form Feed | Causes a form feed. |
| C _R | Carriage Return | Moves cursor to left margin on current line. |
| S _O (LS1) | Shift Out (Lock Shift G1) | Invokes G1 character set into GL. G1 is designated by a select character set (SCS) sequence. |
| S _I (LS0) | Shift In (Lock Shift G0) | Invokes G0 character set into GL. G0 is designated by a select character set (SCS) sequence. |
| D _{C1} | Device Control 1 | Also referred to as Xon. If Xoff support is enabled, D _{C1} clears D _{C3} (Xoff); this causes the emulator to continue sending characters. |
| D _{C3} | Device Control 3 | Also referred to as Xoff. If Xoff support is enabled, D _{C3} causes the emulator to stop sending characters until a D _{C1} control character is received. |
| C _{AN} | Cancel | If received during an escape or control sequence, terminates and cancels the sequence. No error character is displayed. If received during a D _{C_S} , the D _{C_S} is terminated and no error character is displayed. |
| S _{UB} | Substitute | If received during an escape or control sequence, terminates and cancels the sequence. Also displays a reverse question mark. If received during a D _{C_S} , terminates the D _{C_S} and displays a reverse question mark. |
| E _{SC} | Escape | Processed as an escape sequence introducer. Terminates any escape control or D _{C_S} in progress. |
| D _{EL} | Delete | Ignored when received. Cannot be used as a time fill character. |

The equivalent 7-bit code extensions for each 8-bit C1 code are shown in the table below. The code extensions require one more byte than the C1 codes.

Table 9-32 C1 Control Characters

| C1 | Name | Equivalent 7-Bit | Action |
|------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|---|
| I _{ND} | Index | E _{SC} D | Moves cursor down one line in same column. |
| N _E L | Next Line | E _{SC} E | Moves cursor to first position on next line. |
| H _T S | Horizontal Tab Set | E _{SC} H | Sets one horizontal tab stop at column where the cursor is. |
| R _I | Reverse Index | E _{SC} M | Moves cursor up one line in same column. |
| S _S 2 | Single Shift G2 | E _{SC} N | Temporarily invokes G2 character set into GL for the next character. G2 is designated by an SCS sequence. |
| S _S 3 | Single Shift G3 | E _{SC} O | Temporarily invokes G3 character set into GL for the next character. G3 is designated by an SCS sequence. |
| D _C S | Device Control String | E _{SC} P | Processed as opening delimiter of a D _C S for device control use. |
| C _S 1 | Control Sequence Introducer | E _{SC} [| Processed as a control sequence introducer. |
| S _T | String Terminator | E _{SC} \ | Processed as a closing delimiter of a string opened by a D _C S. |

9.5.4 Cursor Positioning

The cursor indicates the active screen position where the next character appears. Cursor positioning can be controlled with the following sequences:

Table 9-33 Cursor Positioning

| Name | Sequence | Action |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| Cursor Up (CUU) | C _S 1 Pn A | Moves cursor up Pn lines in the same column. |
| Cursor Down (CUD) | C _S 1 Pn B | Moves cursor down Pn lines in the same column. |
| Cursor Forward (CUF) | C _S 1 Pn C | Moves cursor right Pn columns. |
| Cursor Backward (CUB) | C _S 1 Pn D | Moves cursor left Pn columns. |
| Cursor Position (CUP) | C _S 1 Pl;Pc H | Moves cursor to line Pl, column Pc. |
| Horizontal & Vertical Position (HVP) | C _S 1 Pl;Pc f | Moves cursor to line Pl, column Pc. |
| Index (IND) | E _{SC} D | Moves cursor down one line in the same column. |
| Reverse Index (RI) | E _{SC} M | Moves cursor up one line in the same column. |
| Next Line (NEL) | E _{SC} E | Moves cursor to the first position of the next line. |
| Save Cursor (DECSC) | E _{SC} 7 | The following is saved in terminal memory: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Cursor Position – Graphic Rendition – Character Set Shift State – State of Wrap Flag – State of Origin Mode – State of Selective Erase |
| Restore Cursor (DECRC) | E _{SC} 8 | Restores the states described for DECSC above. |

9.5.5 Editing

Editing sequences are used to insert or delete characters and lines at the cursor position.

Table 9-34 Editing

| Name | Sequence | Action |
|------------------------|-----------------|--|
| Insert Line (IL) | $C_{S_1} P_n L$ | Inserts P_n lines at the cursor position. |
| Delete Line (DL) | $C_{S_1} P_n M$ | Deletes P_n lines at the cursor position. |
| Insert Character (ICH) | $C_{S_1} P_n @$ | Inserts P_n blank characters at the cursor position (VT320 mode only). |
| Delete Character (DCH) | $C_{S_1} P_n P$ | Deletes P_n characters starting at the cursor position. |

9.5.6 Erasing

The erasing sequences are used to erase characters, lines, etc. from the cursor position.

Table 9-35 Erasing

| Name | Sequence | Action |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|---|
| Erase Character (ECH) | $C_{S_1} P_n X$ | Erase character at the cursor position and the next P_n-1 characters (VT320 mode only). |
| Erase In Line (EL) | $C_{S_1} K$ | Erase from cursor to end of line, inclusive. |
| | $C_{S_1} 0 K$ | Same as above. |
| | $C_{S_1} 1 K$ | Erase from beginning of line to cursor, inclusive. |
| | $C_{S_1} 2 K$ | Erase the entire line. |
| Erase In Display (ED) | $C_{S_1} J$ | Erase from cursor to end of screen, inclusive. |
| | $C_{S_1} 0 J$ | Same as above. |
| | $C_{S_1} 1 J$ | Erase from beginning of screen to cursor, inclusive. |
| | $C_{S_1} 2 J$ | Erase entire display. |
| Selective Erase In Line (DECSEL) | $C_{S_1} ? K$ | Erase all erasable characters from cursor to end of line. |
| | $C_{S_1} ? 0 K$ | Same as above. |
| | $C_{S_1} ? 1 K$ | Erase all characters from beginning of line to cursor, inclusive. |
| | $C_{S_1} ? 2 K$ | Erase all erasable characters on the line. |
| Selective Erase In Display (DECSER) | $C_{S_1} ? J$ | Erase all erasable characters from cursor to end of screen. |
| | $C_{S_1} ? 0 J$ | Same as above. |
| | $C_{S_1} ? 1 J$ | Erase all erasable characters from beginning of screen to cursor, inclusive. |
| | $C_{S_1} ? 2 J$ | Erase all characters in the display. |

9.5.7 Line Attributes

Line attributes are display features that affect a complete display line. Select line attributes by using the following sequences:

Table 9-36 Line Attribute Sequences

| Sequence | Action |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| ESC # 3 | Double height line, top half |
| ESC # 4 | Double height line, bottom half |
| ESC # 5 | Single width line |
| ESC # 6 | Double width line |

9.5.8 Printing

All print operations can be selected using control sequences. But, before you select a print operation, you should check the printer status using the Print Status Report.

Table 9-37 Printer Operations

| Operation | Sequence | Action |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Auto Print Mode | CS _I ? 5 i | Turns on Auto Print mode. The printed line ends with C _R and the character that moved the cursor off the previous line (L _F , F _F , or V _T). Auto Wrap lines end with a line feed. |
| | CS _I ? 4 i | Turns off Auto Print mode. |
| Printer Controller Mode | CS _I 5 i | Turns on Printer Controller mode. The terminal sends received characters to the printer without displaying them on the screen. |
| | CS _I 4 i | Turns off Printer Controller mode. |
| Print Cursor Line | CS _I ? 1 i | Prints the display line containing the cursor. The Print Cursor Line sequence is complete when the line prints. |
| Print Screen | CS _I i | Prints the screen display. The Print Screen sequence is complete when the screen prints. |
| | CS _I 0 i | Same as above. |

9.5.9 Scrolling Region

This sequence is affected by Origin Mode.

| Name | Sequence | Action |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Set Top & Bottom Margins | CS _I Pt;Pb r | Pt is the top margin and Pb is the bottom margin. The scrolling region must be at least two lines and Pb must be larger than Pt. The cursor is placed in the home position. |

9.5.10 Select C1 Controls

Select C1 Controls can be used to represent C1 control codes in 7-bit or 8-bit form. However, it is recommended that you use DECSCSCL sequences instead of Select C1 Controls. The advantage is DECSCSCL performs a soft reset, putting the emulator in a known state, in addition to setting the Terminal mode and the C1 control state.

9.5.10.1 Select 7-bit C1 Transmission (S7C1T)

| Name | Sequence | Action |
|-------|------------------|---|
| S7C1T | E_{SC} space F | Converts all C1 codes returned to the host to their equivalent 7-bit code extensions. |

Note: The S7C1T sequence is ignored in VT100 and VT52 modes.

9.5.10.2 Select 8-bit C1 Transmission (S8C1T)

| Name | Sequence | Action |
|-------|------------------|---|
| S8C1T | E_{SC} space G | Returns C1 codes to the application without converting them to their 7-bit code extensions. |

9.5.11 Tab Stops

Table 9-38 Tab Stops

| Name | Sequence | Action |
|-----------|--------------|--|
| Set Tab | E_{SC} H | Sets a tab stop at the current column. |
| Clear Tab | C_{S1} g | Clears a tab stop at the current column. |
| | C_{S1} 0 g | Same as above. |
| | C_{S1} 3 g | Clears all tab stops. |

9.5.12 Terminal Modes

A mode is a terminal operating state; each mode changes the way the emulator works.

Each mode has an identifying mnemonic name. You can set or reset modes individually or in strings, using set mode (SM) or reset mode (RM) control sequences.

9.5.12.1 Reset Mode (RM)

Resets the ANSI and Digital private modes, individually or in strings.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ANSI | C_{S1} Ps ;...; Ps l | Reset sequence for ANSI modes. |
| DEC Private | C_{S1} ? ;...; Ps l | Reset sequence for DEC private modes. |

9.5.12.2 Set Mode (SM)

Sets the ANSI and DEC private modes, individually or in strings.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| ANSI | C_{S1} Ps ;...; Ps h | Set sequence for ANSI mode. |
| DEC Private | C_{S1} ? ;...; Ps h | Set sequence for DEC Private mode. |

Table 9-39 Selectable Modes Summary

| Name | Code | Set Mode | Reset Mode |
|--------------------|---------------------|--|--|
| ANSI/VT52 | DECANM | N/A | VT52 C_{S1} ? 2 l |
| Auto Repeat | DECARM | On C_{S1} ? 8 h | Off C_{S1} ? 8 l |
| Auto Wrap | DECAWM | On C_{S1} ? 7 h | Off C_{S1} ? 7 l |
| Backarrow Key | DECBKM | ^{B_S} C_{S1} ? 67 h | ^{D_{E_L}} C_{S1} ? 67 l |
| Character Set | DECNRCM | National C_{S1} ? 42 h | Multinational C_{S1} ? 42 l |
| Column | DECCOLM | 132 Column C_{S1} ? 3 h | 80 Column C_{S1} ? 3 l |
| Cursor Key | DECCKM | Application C_{S1} ? 1 h | Cursor C_{S1} ? 1 l |
| Insert/Replace | IRM | Insert C_{S1} 4 h | Replace C_{S1} 4 l |
| Keyboard Action | KAM | Locked C_{S1} 2 h | Unlocked C_{S1} 2 l |
| Keypad | DECKPAM/ DECKPNM | Application E_{S_C} = | Numeric E_{S_C} > |
| Line Feed/New Line | LNM | New Line C_{S1} 20 h | Line Feed C_{S1} 20 l |
| Numeric Keypad | DECNKM | Application C_{S1} ? 66 h | Numeric C_{S1} ? 66 l |

Table 9-39 Selectable Modes Summary (cont'd)

| Name | Code | Set Mode | Reset Mode |
|-------------------------|---------|---|--|
| Origin | DECOM | Origin C _S _I ? 6 h | Absolute C _S _I ? 6 I |
| Print Extent | DECPEX | Full Screen C _S _I ? 19 h | Scroll Rgn C _S _I ? 19 I |
| Print Form Feed | DECPFF | On C _S _I ? 18 h | Off C _S _I ? 18 I |
| Screen | DECSCNM | Reverse C _S _I ? 5 h | Normal C _S _I ? 5 I |
| Scrolling | DECSCLM | Smooth C _S _I ? 4 h | Jump C _S _I ? 4 I |
| Select Status Display | DECSASD | C _S _I Ps\$} Ps=0 main display Ps=1 status line | |
| Select Status Line Type | DECSSDT | C _S _I Ps \$~ Ps=0 none Ps=1 indicator Ps=2 host-writable | |
| Send/Receive | SRM | Off C _S _I 12 h | On C _S _I 12 I |
| Text Cursor Enable | DECTCEM | On C _S _I ? 25 h | Off C _S _I ? 25 I |

9.5.12.3 ANSI/VT52 Mode (DECANM)

In ANSI mode, reset selects VT52 compatibility mode. In VT52 mode, the emulator responds to Digital private sequences like a VT52 terminal.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Reset | C _S _I ? 2 I | Sets the emulator to VT52 mode. |

Note: There is no Set mode for ANSI/VT52 mode.

9.5.12.4 Auto Repeat Mode (DECARM)

Specifies whether or not keys automatically repeat their character when held down.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Set | C _S _I ? 8 h | Keys autorepeat when pressed for more than 0.5 seconds |
| Reset | C _S _I ? 8 I | Keys do not autorepeat |

9.5.12.5 Auto Wrap Mode (DECAWM)

Selects where received characters appear when the cursor is at the right margin.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|--------------------------------|---|
| Set | $\text{C}_{S_1} ? 7 \text{ h}$ | Selects auto wrap. Characters received when the cursor is at the right margin appear on the next line at the left margin. |
| Reset | $\text{C}_{S_1} ? 7 \text{ l}$ | Turns off auto wrap. Characters received when the cursor is at the right margin are overwritten. |

9.5.12.6 Backarrow Key Mode (DECBKM)

Selects whether the emulator sends a delete or backspace for the backarrow key.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|---------------------------------|---|
| Set | $\text{C}_{S_1} ? 67 \text{ h}$ | Move cursor one position to the left (backspace). |
| Reset | $\text{C}_{S_1} ? 67 \text{ l}$ | Delete previous character. |

9.5.12.7 Character Set Mode (DECNRCM)

Determines whether the emulator uses NRCs or the DEC multinational character set.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|----------------------------------|---|
| Set | $\text{C}_{S_1} ? 4 2 \text{ h}$ | Select National mode. Generates 7-bit characters from NRC sets. |
| Reset | $\text{C}_{S_1} ? 4 2 \text{ l}$ | Selects Multinational mode. Generates 8-bit characters from the multinational character set, including 7-bit characters from the ASCII set. |

9.5.12.8 Column Mode (DECCOLM)

Column mode selects the number of columns per line; 80 or 132.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| Set | $\text{C}_{S_1} ? 3 \text{ h}$ | Selects 132 columns. |
| Reset | $\text{C}_{S_1} ? 3 \text{ l}$ | Selects 80 columns. |

9.5.12.9 Cursor Key Mode (DECCKM)

Cursor Key mode determines the character sent by the cursor keys.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|----------------|---|
| Set | $C_{S1} ? 1 h$ | Causes the cursor keys to send application control functions. |
| Reset | $C_{S1} ? 1 l$ | Causes the cursor keys to send ANSI cursor control sequences. |

9.5.12.10 Insert/Replace Mode (IRM)

Insert/Replace mode determines how the emulator adds characters to the screen.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|--------------|--|
| Set | $C_{S1} 4 h$ | Selects Insert mode. New characters move old characters to the right. |
| Reset | $C_{S1} 4 l$ | Selects Replace mode. New characters replace old characters at the cursor position. The old character is erased. |

9.5.12.11 Keyboard Action Mode (KAM)

Keyboard Action mode lets your program lock and unlock the keyboard. When the keyboard is locked it cannot send codes to the program.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|--------------|--|
| Set | $C_{S1} 2 h$ | Locks the keyboard. |
| Reset | $C_{S1} 2 l$ | Unlock the keyboard, unless it is locked by D_{C3} . |

9.5.12.12 Keypad Mode (DECKPAM/DECKPNM)

The auxiliary keypad generates either numeric characters or control functions.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-----------------------|-------------|---|
| Application (DECKPAM) | $E_{S_C} =$ | Selects Application keypad mode. Keypad keys send application control functions. |
| Numeric (DECKPNM) | $E_{S_C} >$ | Selects Numeric keypad mode. Keypad keys send numeric, comma, period, and minus sign codes. PF1 - PF4 send control functions. |

9.5.12.13 Line Feed/New Line Mode (LNM)

Line Feed/New Line mode selects the control character(s) sent to the application by the Return and Enter keys.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|----------------|---|
| Set | $C_{S1} 2 0 h$ | Causes a received L_F , F_F , or V_T code to move the cursor to the first column of the next line. Return sends C_R and L_F . |
| Reset | $C_{S1} 2 0 l$ | Causes a received L_F , F_F , or V_T code to move the cursor to the next line in the current column. Return sends C_R only. |

9.5.12.14 Numeric Keypad Mode (DECNKM)

Numeric Keypad mode selects whether the emulator sends numeric characters or application sequences for the numeric keypad.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|-----------------|---|
| Set | $C_{S1} ? 66 h$ | Numeric keypad sends application sequences. |
| Reset | $C_{S1} ? 66 l$ | Numeric keypad sends numeric characters. |

9.5.12.15 Origin Mode (DECOM)

Origin mode allows cursor addressing relative to a user-defined origin.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|----------------|--|
| Set | $C_{S1} ? 6 h$ | Selects home position as the top margin of the user-defined scrolling region. The cursor cannot move out of the scrolling region. All cursor positioning is relative to the top of the scrolling region. |
| Reset | $C_{S1} 2 0 l$ | Causes a received L_F , F_F , or V_T code to move the cursor to the next line in the current column. Return sends C_R only. |

9.5.12.16 Print Extent Mode (DECPEX)

Print Extent mode selects the full screen or the scrolling region for a print screen operation.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|------------------|--|
| Set | $C_{S1} ? 1 9 h$ | Selects full screen for a print screen operation. |
| Reset | $C_{S1} ? 1 9 l$ | Selects the scrolling region for a print screen operation. |

9.5.12.17 Print Form Feed Mode (DECPFF)

This mode determines whether the emulator sends a print termination character after a screen print. The form feed character (F_F) serves as the print termination character.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|-------------------|---|
| Set | $C_{S_1} ? 1 8 h$ | Selects F_F as the print termination character. The emulator sends this character to the printer after each print screen operation. |
| Reset | $C_{S_1} ? 1 8 l$ | Selects no termination character. The emulator does not send a F_F to the printer after each print screen operation. |

9.5.12.18 Screen Mode (DECSCNM)

Screen mode selects a normal or reverse video display on the screen.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| Set | $C_{S_1} ? 5 h$ | Select reverse video. |
| Reset | $C_{S_1} ? 5 l$ | Select normal screen. |

9.5.12.19 Scrolling Mode (DECSCLM)

There are two methods of scrolling; jump and smooth scroll.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| Set | $C_{S_1} ? 4 h$ | Select smooth scroll. |
| Reset | $C_{S_1} ? 4 l$ | Select jump scroll. |

9.5.12.20 Select Status Display (DECSASD)

Selects whether the emulator sends data to the main display (first 24 lines) or the status line (25th line). Available in VT300 mode only.

| | | |
|--------------------|----|---------------------------------------|
| $C_{S_1} Ps \$ \}$ | Ps | Display option |
| | 0 | data is sent to the main display only |
| | 1 | data is sent to the status line only |

9.5.12.21 Select Status Line Type (DECSSDT)

Enables the host to select the type of status line.

| | | |
|--|----------------------|-----------------------|
| C_SI P_s \$ ~ | P_s | Status line selection |
| | 0 | no status line |
| | 1 | indicator |
| | 2 | host-writable |

Note: If the status line is changed from indicator to host-writable, the new status line is empty.

When the host-writable status line is selected, most control functions affecting the main display affect the status line. The following table lists the exceptions.

Table 9-40 Control Function Effects on the Status Line

| Function | Effect |
|--------------------------|--|
| ANSI mode | Ignored if received in the status line. |
| C1 transmissions | Affects main display and status line. |
| Cursor position controls | Affects only the column parameters. |
| Hard terminal reset | Erases and exits status line. |
| Insert/replace mode | Affects main display and status line. |
| Screen alignment test | No effect. |
| Screen mode | Affects main display and status line. |
| Scrolling mode | Affects main display and status line. |
| Select character set | The same character set is used in both the main display and status line. |
| Set conformance test | Exits status line. |
| Soft terminal reset | Exits status line. |
| Tab stops | Affects main display and status line. |
| Text cursor enable mode | The cursor can be individually enabled in the main display or status line. |

9.5.12.22 Send/Receive Mode (SRM)

Send/Receive mode turns local echo on or off.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|-----------------------------|--|
| Set | C_SI 1 2 h | Disables local echo. When the emulator sends characters to the host, the host must echo characters back to the emulator. |
| Reset | C_SI 1 2 l | Enables local echo. When the emulator sends characters, the characters are automatically sent to the screen. |

9.5.12.23 Text Cursor Enable Mode (DECTCEM)

Text Cursor Enable mode determines if the text cursor is visible.

| Mode | Sequence | Action |
|-------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| Set | $C_{S_1} ? 2 5 h$ | Makes the cursor visible. |
| Reset | $C_{S_1} ? 2 5 l$ | Make the cursor invisible. |

9.5.13 Terminal Reset Mode

There are two terminal reset control sequences: a soft terminal reset, and a hard terminal reset.

9.5.13.1 Soft Terminal Reset

The DECSTR sequence sets the terminal to the states listed below. The DECSTR sequence is as follows:

$C_{S_1} ! p$

Table 9-41 Soft Terminal Reset States

| Sequence | State |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| Text Cursor | On |
| Insert/Replace | Replace |
| Origin Mode | Absolute |
| Auto Wrap | Off |
| Keyboard Action | Unlocked |
| Keypad Mode | Numeric |
| Cursor Key Mode | Normal |
| Top Margin | 1 |
| Bottom Margin | 24 |
| Character Sets | VT320 defaults |
| Cursor Position | Home |
| SGR Write State | Normal |
| Origin Mode | Normal (reset) |
| National/Multinational | Multinational |
| Video Character Attributes | Normal |
| Selective Erase Attributes | Normal (erasable) |

9.5.13.2 Hard Terminal Reset

A hard terminal reset is implemented by clicking **Execute - Reset**.

9.5.14 Programming User Defined Keys (UDKs)

When the terminal is in VT300 mode, you can download key sequences into the programmable function keys using DECUDK device control strings. To access the keys programmed value, press Shift and the function key.

The emulator has 512 bytes available for 20 programmable function keys. (The VT320 only has 256 bytes available for 15 function keys). Space is supplied on a first come-first serve basis. After the 512 bytes are used, you must clear space to redefine keys. There are three ways to clear space:

- 1) Redefine a key (or keys) using a DECUDK.
- 2) Clear a key (or keys) using a DECUDK.
- 3) Clear the definition by clicking **Execute - Reset**.

9.5.14.1 DECUDK DCS Format

The Device Control String (DCS) format for downloading UDKs is as follows:

$^{\text{D}_{\text{CS}}} \text{Pc;PI} | \text{Ky1/st1;ky2/st2;...kyn/stn} \text{ }^{\text{S}_{\text{T}}}$

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| D_{CS} | The Device Control String introducer, $^{\text{D}_{\text{CS}}}$ is an 8-bit character. $^{\text{E}_{\text{SC}}\text{P}$ is the 7-bit coding equivalent. |
| Pc | The Pc (clear parameter) determines which keys are cleared, and when. A value of 0 (or no value) clears all keys, and 1 clears each key to be reloaded just before reloading it. |
| PI | The PI (lock parameter) determines whether the key definitions are locked or not after you load them. A value of 0 (no value) locks the keys (non-define). A value of 1 does not lock them (define). |
| | This is the final character. It designates the control string as a DECUDK. |
| Kyn/stn | This is the key definition string. Each string consists of a key selector number (Kyn) and a string parameter (stn) separated by a slash. The Kyn specifies the key to be redefined and the stn is the encoded contents of the string. The stn consists of hex pairs. |
| S_T | The string terminator is an 8-bit control character that is expressed as $^{\text{E}_{\text{SC}}}$ \ for 7-bit coding. |

The following is a list of definable keys and their identifying values:

| Token | Value | Token | Value | Token | Value |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| UDK1 | 12 | UDK11 | 23 | UDK15 | 28 |
| UDK2 | 13 | UDK12 | 24 | UDK16 | 29 |
| UDK3 | 14 | UDK13 | 25 | UDK17 | 31 |
| UDK4 | 15 | UDK14 | 26 | UDK18 | 32 |
| UDK5 | 16 | UDK8 | 19 | UDK19 | 33 |
| UDK6 | 17 | UDK9 | 20 | UDK20 | 34 |
| UDK7 | 18 | UDK10 | 21 | | |

The tokens **UDK1 - UDK5** are not assigned in the default keyboard configuration. They must be assigned with the Keyboard Mapping feature.

9.5.14.2 Guidelines for Loading Keys

- /// Use the UDK clear parameter to reclaim key definition space.
- /// Generally, you should not leave keys unlocked.
- /// The host must keep track of the available space for definitions.
- /// If you redefine a key, the old sequence is lost.
- /// The emulator uses a special lock for the programmable keys. The lock can be turned on with a DECUDK, but can only be unlocked by the UDK unlock parameter. The lock acts globally over all programmable keys.
- /// All key definitions are stored in volatile RAM. If there is a power loss, the key definitions are lost. An invalid D_{CS} in a key definition causes an aborted load. An aborted load locks the keys, saves the successfully loaded keys, and sends the rest of the DECUDK sequence to the screen.

9.5.14.3 Examples for Using DECUDK

Example 1: $D_{CS} 0;1| S_T$

Clears all of the UDKs.

Example 2: $D_{CS} 1;0| S_T$

Locks the UDKs.

Example 3: $D_{CS} 1;1|34/5052494E54 S_T$

Clears and leaves **UDK20** unlocked. Then, defines **UDK20** as "PRINT".

P = 50 hex
R = 52 hex
I = 49 hex
N = 4E hex
T = 54 hex

Note: D_{CS} is also represented by the 7-bit equivalent of $E_{SC} P$.
 S_T is also represented by the 7-bit equivalent of $E_{SC} \setminus$.

9.5.15 DCS Private Control Sequences

DCS private sequences are control sequences supported only by a DCSi emulator. They are not available on VT320 terminals.

Table 9-42 DCS Private Control Sequences

| Name | Sequence | Action |
|--------------------------------|---|---|
| Enable User Status Line | $C_{S_I} 0;0 $ | Enables the emulator status line for the host. When the emulator receives the enable command, it displays the previous user-defined status line. If the status line was not previously downloaded, it is cleared. |
| Disable User Status Line | $C_{S_I} 0;1 $ | Disables the display of the user-defined status line and redisplay the emulator status line. The contents of the downloaded status line are not destroyed. It may be redisplayed by sending an enable sequence. |
| Erase Status Line | $C_{S_I} 0;2 $ | Erases the status line and clears the down-loaded data. |
| Write Status Line | $C_{S_I} 0;3;Pc \dots string \dots S_T$ | Writes the characters between the vertical bar and the string terminator to the status line starting at column Pc. |
| Set/Reset Local Echo | $C_{S_I} 2;n $ | Enables local echo if $n=1$. Disables local echo if $n=0$. |
| WordPerfect Mode | $C_{S_I} 3;n $ | Enables WordPerfect mode if $n=1$, disables if $n=0$. |
| Printer Port Control | $C_{S_I} 4;pl $ | Controls the assignment of the printer port. Where pl is: 0=none, 1=LPT1, 2=LPT2, 3=LPT3, 4=COM1, 5=COM2, 6=COM3 |
| Execute Emulator Command | $C_{S_I} 5 \dots command string \dots S_T$ | Sends the command string to the emulator for execution. The command string can contain any valid emulator command or reference a command file. |
| Request Product Identification | $C_{S_I} 6 $ | If this sequence is sent to a DCSi emulator, the emulator returns an identification report to the host in the format: $E_{S_C} n \text{ xxxx}$ Where: n is a single ASCII digit indicating the number of characters to follow (n not included). xxxx is the product identification string |
| Set Lines Per Screen | $C_{S_I} 7;pl $ | Where: pl is the number of lines per screen. |

Note: C_{S_I} (Hex 9B) is the C1 Control Sequence Introducer. The 7-bit equivalent of C_{S_I} is $E_{S_C} [$.
 S_T (Hex 9C) is the C1 String Terminator. The 7-bit equivalent of S_T is $E_{S_C} \backslash$.

9.5.15.1 Example - DCS Private Sequence

$C_{S_I} 7m C_{S_I} 0;3;1|User Defined Status Line S_T$

Writes "User Defined Status Line" in reverse video. The status line must have been previously enabled.

$C_{S_I} 6|$

Sent by the host to the emulator, generates the following identification report:

9.6 REPORTS

Reports are sent by the emulator in response to requests from the host computer. These new reports provide device attributes, operating status and terminal state and mode information to the host. The host uses the reports to match the computing environment and emulator.

9.6.1 Device Attributes

Device attributes are used to give the host information regarding the emulator.

9.6.1.1 Primary Device Attributes

Primary device attributes include the service class code and basic attributes. The response of the emulator to this request depends on the type of terminal selected for emulation in **Setup - Terminal**.

Table 9-43 Primary Device Attributes

| Exchange | Sequence |
|------------------|--|
| Host to Emulator | C _S ₁ c or C _S ₁ 0 c |
| Emulator to Host | C _S ₁ ? Psc ; Ps1 ; ... Psn c |
| | Psc Service class code based on operating level |
| | 1 level 1 (VT100) |
| | 6 level 1 (VT102) |
| | 62 level 2 (VT200) |
| | 63 level 3 (VT300) |
| | Ps1 Basic attributes supported by the emulator |
| | 1 132 columns |
| | 2 printer port |
| | 6 selective erase |
| | 7 soft character set |
| | 8 user-defined keys |
| | 9 national replacement character sets |

9.6.1.2 Secondary Device Attributes

The secondary device attributes include identification code, firmware version and hardware options.

Table 9-44 Secondary Device Attributes

| Exchange | Sequence | |
|------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| Host to Emulator | $C_{S_1} > c$ or $C_{S_1} > 0 c$ | |
| Emulator to Host | $C_{S_1} > Pp ; Pv ; Po c$ | |
| | Pp | Emulator identification code |
| | 24 | VT320 |
| | Pv | Firmware version level of the emulator |
| | Po | Hardware options |
| | 0 | there are no options for the VT320 |

9.6.2 Device Status Reports

The emulator uses device status reports to give the host information on cursor position, keyboard dialect, operating status, printer status and user-defined keys.

9.6.2.1 Cursor Position

| Exchange | Sequence | Function |
|------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Host to Emulator | $C_{S_1} 6 n$ | Host requests cursor position |
| Emulator to Host | $C_{S_1} P_l ; P_c R$ | The emulator specifies P_l (line) and P_c (column) as current cursor position |

9.6.2.2 Keyboard Dialect

| Exchange | Sequence | Function |
|------------------|------------------------|--|
| Host to Emulator | $C_{S_1} ? 26 n$ | Host requests keyboard |
| Emulator to Host | $C_{S_1} ? 27 ; P_d n$ | Keyboard dialect (P_d) is reported |
| | Pd | Keyboard dialect |
| | 1 | North American |

9.6.2.3 Operating Status

| Exchange | Sequence | Function |
|------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| Host to Emulator | $C_{S_1} 5 n$ | Host requests the emulator's operating status |
| Emulator to Host | $C_{S_1} 0 n$ or $C_{S_1} 3 n$ | The emulator indicates there is no malfunction The emulator indicates there is a malfunction |

9.6.2.4 Printer Status

| Exchange | Sequence | Function |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Host to Emulator | C _{S_I} ? 15 n | Host requests current printer status |
| Emulator to Host | C _{S_I} ? 13 n | No printer |
| | C _{S_I} ? 10 n | Printer ready |
| | C _{S_I} ? 11 n | Printer not ready |

9.6.2.5 User-Defined Key (UDK) Status

This control function is only valid in VT300 mode.

| Exchange | Sequence | Function |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Host to Emulator | C _{S_I} ? 25 n | Host requests if UDKs are locked or unlocked |
| Emulator to Host | C _{S_I} ? 20 n | UDKs are unlocked |
| | C _{S_I} ? 21 n | UDKs are locked |

9.6.3 Terminal State Reports

Terminal state reports include the current setting for all of the emulator's features except user-defined keys. The host can use the report information to save the current state. The host can then temporarily change the operating state and, later, restore the emulator to the saved state. This control function is valid only in VT300 mode.

Table 9-45 Terminal State Report

| Exchange | Sequence | |
|------------------|---|---|
| Host to Emulator | $C_S P_s \$ u$ | |
| | P_s | Report requested |
| | 0 | ignored, no report sent |
| | 1 | terminal state report requested |
| Emulator to Host | $D_C S_1 \$ s D_1 \dots D_{nn} \langle \text{checksum1} \rangle \langle \text{checksum2} \rangle S_T$ | |
| | $D_1 \dots D_{nn}$ | Data string indicating the status of emulator functions. There are nn bytes in the string. $D_1 \dots D_{nn}$ are each in the range of column 4 rows 0 to 15 in the code table. Bit 6 of each D_n byte is always on; bit 7 is always off. |
| | $\langle \text{checksum1} \rangle$ | 2-byte checksum of all data ($D_1 \dots D_{nn}$) in the report. Checksum is equal to the |
| | $\langle \text{checksum2} \rangle$ | 2's complement of the sum of all data elements in the report ($D_1 + D_2 + \dots + D_n$). |

Note: Software should not expect the format of the terminal state report to be the same for all VT300 terminals.

9.6.3.1 Restore Terminal State

This sequence is sent from the host to restore the emulator to the previous state specified in the terminal state report.

Table 9-46 Restore Terminal State

| Restore | Sequence | |
|------------------|--------------------------------|---|
| Host to Emulator | $D_C S P_s \$ p D \dots D S_T$ | |
| | P_s | Indicates whether or not the host succeeds in restoring the terminal state. Must be 1 for a successful restore. |
| | 0 | error, restore ignored |
| | 1 | restore to previous terminal state based on terminal state report |
| | $D \dots D$ | Data string containing the restored information. This string is identical to the data string used by the terminal state report. |

Note: If an invalid value is received, no changes are made.

9.6.4 Presentation State Reports

There are two presentation reports: cursor information and tab stop. The host can use the report information to save the current state. The host can then temporarily change the presentation state and, later, restore the emulator to the saved state. This control function is only valid in VT300 mode.

9.6.4.1 Request Presentation State Report

Table 9-47 Request Presentation State Report

| Request | Sequence |
|------------------|---|
| Host to Emulator | $C_s P_s \$ w$ |
| | Ps Indicates which report is requested |
| | 0 error, request ignored |
| | 1 cursor information report |
| | 2 tab stop report |

9.6.4.2 Cursor Information

The cursor information report gives the status of the cursor position, including visual attributes and character protection attributes.

Table 9-48 Cursor Information Report

| Report | Sequence |
|------------------|---|
| Emulator to Host | $^D C_s 1 \$ u D...D S_T$ |
| | D...D Data string of cursor information in the following format: Pr; Pc; Pp; Srend; Satt; Sflag; Pgl; Pgr; Scss; Sdesig |

The individual parameters that make up the data string are described in the following table.

Table 9-49 Cursor Information Report Data String

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------|---|---|-----------|-----------|---|--|----------------|---|--|---------------|---|---------------------|---------------------------|--|---|---|--|-----------------------------|---|---------------|-----------------------------|---|------|-----------------------------|----------|-------|-----------------------------|------|-----------------|-----------|-------|------|------|---|------|-------|--|------|
| Pr | Row number of the cursor position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Pc | Column number of the cursor position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Pp | Current page number - always 1 for VT320 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Srend | One or more characters indicating visual attributes currently in use for writing. The character converts to an 8-bit binary number. The attributes can then be found in the following list. The list is ordered from most significant bit (8) to least significant bit (1). <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit</th> <th>Attribute</th> <th>Bit Value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>8</td> <td></td> <td>Always 0 (off)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td></td> <td>Always 1 (on)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td rowspan="2">Extension indicator</td> <td>0 no more attribute data</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>1 another character of visual attribute data follows this one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td></td> <td>Always 0 (off)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td rowspan="2">Reverse video</td> <td>0 off</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>1 on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td rowspan="2">Blinking</td> <td>0 off</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>1 on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td rowspan="2">Underline</td> <td>0 off</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>1 on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td rowspan="2">Bold</td> <td>0 off</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>1 on</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Bit | Attribute | Bit Value | 8 | | Always 0 (off) | 7 | | Always 1 (on) | 6 | Extension indicator | 0 no more attribute data | | 1 another character of visual attribute data follows this one | 5 | | Always 0 (off) | 4 | Reverse video | 0 off | | 1 on | 3 | Blinking | 0 off | | 1 on | 2 | Underline | 0 off | | 1 on | 1 | Bold | 0 off | | 1 on |
| Bit | Attribute | Bit Value | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | Always 0 (off) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | Always 1 (on) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Extension indicator | 0 no more attribute data | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 another character of visual attribute data follows this one | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | Always 0 (off) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Reverse video | 0 off | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 on | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Blinking | 0 off | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 on | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Underline | 0 off | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 on | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Bold | 0 off | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 on | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Satt | One or more characters indicating selective erase attributes currently set for writing. The character converts to an 8-bit binary number. The attributes can be found in the following list. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit</th> <th>Attribute</th> <th>Bit Value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>8</td> <td></td> <td>Always 0 (off)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td></td> <td>Always 1 (on)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td rowspan="2">Extension indicator</td> <td>0 no more protection data</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>1 another character of selective erase data follows this one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td></td> <td>0 - Reserved for future use</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td></td> <td>0 - Reserved for future use</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td></td> <td>0 - Reserved for future use</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td></td> <td>0 - Reserved for future use</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td rowspan="2">Selective erase</td> <td>0 off</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>1 on</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Bit | Attribute | Bit Value | 8 | | Always 0 (off) | 7 | | Always 1 (on) | 6 | Extension indicator | 0 no more protection data | | 1 another character of selective erase data follows this one | 5 | | 0 - Reserved for future use | 4 | | 0 - Reserved for future use | 3 | | 0 - Reserved for future use | 2 | | 0 - Reserved for future use | 1 | Selective erase | 0 off | | 1 on | | | | | | |
| Bit | Attribute | Bit Value | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | Always 0 (off) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | Always 1 (on) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Extension indicator | 0 no more protection data | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 another character of selective erase data follows this one | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | 0 - Reserved for future use | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | 0 - Reserved for future use | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | 0 - Reserved for future use | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | 0 - Reserved for future use | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Selective erase | 0 off | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 1 on | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 9-49 Cursor Information Report Data String (cont'd)

| Parameter | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|---|---|------------------|------------------|---|--|----------------|---|--|---------------|---|---------------------|--|---|--|---------------------------|---|-------------|--|---|------------------------|---|---|------------------------|---|---|-------------|--|
| Sflag | Character(s) indicating flags and modes the terminal must save. The character converts to an 8-bit binary number. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit</th> <th>Attribute</th> <th>Bit Value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>8</td> <td></td> <td>Always 0 (off)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td></td> <td>Always 1 (on)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>Extension indicator</td> <td>0 no more flag data 1 another character of flag data follows this one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td></td> <td>0 Reserved for future use</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>Autowrap</td> <td>0 autowrap not pending 1 autowrap pending</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Single shift 3 setting</td> <td>0 single shift 3 is off 1 G3 is mapped into GL for the next typed character only</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Single shift 2 setting</td> <td>0 single shift 2 is off 1 G2 is mapped into GL for the next typed character only</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Origin Mode</td> <td>0 origin mode reset 1 origin mode set</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Bit | Attribute | Bit Value | 8 | | Always 0 (off) | 7 | | Always 1 (on) | 6 | Extension indicator | 0 no more flag data 1 another character of flag data follows this one | 5 | | 0 Reserved for future use | 4 | Autowrap | 0 autowrap not pending 1 autowrap pending | 3 | Single shift 3 setting | 0 single shift 3 is off 1 G3 is mapped into GL for the next typed character only | 2 | Single shift 2 setting | 0 single shift 2 is off 1 G2 is mapped into GL for the next typed character only | 1 | Origin Mode | 0 origin mode reset 1 origin mode set |
| Bit | Attribute | Bit Value | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | Always 0 (off) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | Always 1 (on) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Extension indicator | 0 no more flag data 1 another character of flag data follows this one | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | 0 Reserved for future use | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Autowrap | 0 autowrap not pending 1 autowrap pending | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Single shift 3 setting | 0 single shift 3 is off 1 G3 is mapped into GL for the next typed character only | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Single shift 2 setting | 0 single shift 2 is off 1 G2 is mapped into GL for the next typed character only | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Origin Mode | 0 origin mode reset 1 origin mode set | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Pgl | Indicates the number of the logical character set (G0 through G3) mapped into GL. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 G0 is in GL 1 G1 is in GL 2 G2 is in GL 3 G3 is in GL | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Pgr | Indicates the number of the logical character set (G0 through G3) mapped into GR. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 G0 is in GR 1 G1 is in GR 2 G2 is in GR 3 G3 is in GR | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Scss | Indicates the size of the character sets in G0 - G3. The character converts to an 8-bit binary number. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit</th> <th>Attribute</th> <th>Bit Value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>8</td> <td></td> <td>Always 0 (off)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td></td> <td>Always 1 (on)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>Extension indicator</td> <td>0 no more size data 1 another character of character size data follows this one</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td></td> <td>0 Reserved for future use</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>G3 set size</td> <td>0 94 characters 1 96 characters</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>G2 set size</td> <td>0 94 characters 1 96 characters</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>G1 set size</td> <td>0 94 characters 1 96 characters</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>G0 set size</td> <td>0 94 characters 1 96 characters</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Bit | Attribute | Bit Value | 8 | | Always 0 (off) | 7 | | Always 1 (on) | 6 | Extension indicator | 0 no more size data 1 another character of character size data follows this one | 5 | | 0 Reserved for future use | 4 | G3 set size | 0 94 characters 1 96 characters | 3 | G2 set size | 0 94 characters 1 96 characters | 2 | G1 set size | 0 94 characters 1 96 characters | 1 | G0 set size | 0 94 characters 1 96 characters |
| Bit | Attribute | Bit Value | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | Always 0 (off) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | Always 1 (on) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Extension indicator | 0 no more size data 1 another character of character size data follows this one | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | 0 Reserved for future use | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | G3 set size | 0 94 characters 1 96 characters | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | G2 set size | 0 94 characters 1 96 characters | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | G1 set size | 0 94 characters 1 96 characters | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | G0 set size | 0 94 characters 1 96 characters | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sdesig | String of intermediate and final characters indicating the character sets designated as G0 through G3. These final characters are the same as those used in select character set sequences. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

9.6.4.3 Tab Stop Report

If the presentation state report requests information on the tab stops, the emulator returns the following:

Table 9-50 Tab Stop Report

| Report | Sequence |
|------------------|---|
| Emulator to Host | $D_{CS} 2 \$ u D...D S_T$ $D...D$ Data string indicating the column number location of each tab stop. Column numbers are separated by slashes (/). |

9.6.4.4 Restore Presentation State

The restore presentation state report restores the emulator to a previous saved state based on one of the presentation state reports: cursor information or tab stop. The information from only one report at a time can be restored. This sequence is only valid in VT300 mode.

Table 9-51 Restore Presentation State

| Restore | Sequence |
|------------------|---|
| Host to Emulator | $D_{CS} P_s \$ t D...D S_T$ P_s Indicates the format of the data string, $D...D$, which corresponds to one of the presentation state report formats 0 error, restore ignored 1 cursor information report format 2 tab stop report format $D...D$ Data string containing the restored information. This string is identical to the one used in the report. |

Note: If there is an invalid value in the restore sequence, the rest of the sequence will be ignored. This may leave the emulator in a partially restored state.

9.6.5 Mode Settings

The host can request current settings of any ANSI or DEC private modes. The emulator returns a report indicating which modes are set and reset. The host uses the report information to save the current mode settings. The host then temporarily changes the modes and, later, restores the emulator to the saved modes with the set and reset mode sequences. This control function is only valid in VT300 mode.

9.6.5.1 Request Mode

The host sends the following sequence to find out if a particular mode is set or reset. There is a different sequence for ANSI and DEC private modes.

Table 9-52 Request ANSI Mode

| Request | Sequence |
|------------------|---|
| Host to Emulator | Cs_I Pa \$ p Pa Indicates the ANSI mode on which the host is requesting information. |

The ANSI modes (Pa) are listed in the following table.

Table 9-53 ANSI Modes

| Pa | Mode |
|----|--------------------------|
| 2 | Keyboard action |
| 3 | Control representation * |
| 4 | Insert/replace |
| 10 | Horizontal editing |
| 12 | Send/receive |
| 20 | Line feed/new line |

* Control representation is not supported.

Note: Control representation and horizontal editing are permanently reset.

Table 9-54 Request DEC Private Mode

| Request | Sequence |
|------------------|---|
| Host to Emulator | Cs_I ? Pd \$ p Pd Indicates the DEC private mode on which the host is requesting information |

The DEC private modes (Pd) are listed in the following table.

Table 9-55 DEC Private Modes

| Pd | Mode |
|----|--------------------|
| 1 | Cursor keys |
| 2 | ANSI |
| 3 | Column |
| 4 | Scrolling |
| 5 | Screen |
| 6 | Origin |
| 7 | Autowrap |
| 8 | Autorepeat |
| 18 | Print form feed |
| 19 | Printer extent |
| 25 | Text cursor enable |
| 42 | NRC set |
| 66 | Numeric keypad |
| 67 | Backarrow key |
| 68 | Keyboard usage * |

9.6.5.2 Report Mode

The ANSI mode and DEC private mode reports are given in the following table. The emulator can report on only one mode at a time.

Table 9-56 ANSI Mode and DEC Private Mode Report

| Report | Sequence |
|--|--|
| Emulator to Host (ANSI mode) | Cs_i Pa ; Ps \$ y |
| | Pa Indicates reported ANSI mode (see Table 9-53) |
| | Ps Indicates mode setting |
| | 0 mode not recognized |
| | 1 set |
| | 2 reset |
| | 3 permanently set |
| | 4 permanently reset |
| Emulator to Host (DEC private mode) | Cs_i ? Pd ; Ps \$ y |
| | Pd Indicates reported DEC private mode (see Table 9-55) |
| | Ps Indicates mode setting |
| | 0 mode not recognized |
| | 1 set |
| | 2 reset |
| | 3 permanently set |
| | 4 permanently reset |

9.6.5.3 Set Mode

There is a separate set sequence for the ANSI modes and DEC private modes. Some of these may be affected by soft or hard terminal resets.

Table 9-57 ANSI and DEC Private Mode Set Sequence

| Set Mode | Sequence |
|--|---|
| Host to Emulator (ANSI form) | $\text{cS}_1 \text{Pa} ; \dots ; \text{Pa h}$ Pa Indicates the ANSI mode to set. See Table 9-53 for the list of ANSI modes. More than one value can be used in the sequence. |
| Host to Emulator (DEC private form) | $\text{cS}_1 ? \text{Pd} ; \dots ; \text{Pd h}$ Pd Indicates the DEC private mode to set. See Table 9-55 for the list of DEC private modes. More than one Pd value can be used in the sequence. |

9.6.5.4 Reset Mode

There is a separate reset sequence for the ANSI modes and DEC private modes. Some of these may be affected by soft or hard terminal resets.

Table 9-58 ANSI and DEC Private Mode Reset Sequence

| Reset Mode | Sequence |
|--|---|
| Host to Emulator (ANSI form) | $\text{cS}_1 \text{Pa} ; \dots ; \text{Pa l}$ Pa Indicates the ANSI mode to reset. See Table 9-53 (ANSI Modes). More than one value can be used in the sequence. |
| Host to Emulator (DEC private form) | $\text{cS}_1 ? \text{Pd} ; \dots ; \text{Pd l}$ Pd Indicates the DEC private mode to reset. See Table 9-55 (DEC Private Modes). More than one Pd value can be used in the sequence. |

9.6.6 Save and Restore Cursor State

The save cursor sequence stores many of the emulator's selections and settings. The host can then temporarily change the settings. The restore cursor sequence restores the emulator to the saved settings.

Table 9-59 Saving and Restoring the Cursor State

| Name | Sequence | Function |
|----------------|--------------|--|
| Save cursor | ESC 7 | Saves the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Cursor position- Character attributes set by select graphic rendition sequence- Character set (G0, G1, G2, G3) currently in GL or GR- Wrap flag (autowrap or no autowrap)- State of origin mode- Selective erase attribute- Any single shift 2 or single shift 3 functions sent |
| Restore cursor | ESC 8 | Restores the emulator to the saved state. If nothing was saved with the save cursor sequence, the following occurs: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Moves cursor to home position (upper left of screen)- Resets origin mode- Turns all character attributes off- Maps ASCII set into GL, and DEC Supplemental Graphic set into GR |

Note: The emulator maintains a separate save cursor buffer for the main display and the status line. A separate operating state for the main display and the status line can be saved.

9.6.7 Control Function Settings

The host can request the current selection or setting of the following control functions: active status display, conformance level, status line type, top and bottom margins and graphic rendition.

The emulator returns a report with the requested information. The host can use the report information to save the current setting. The host can then temporarily change the control function settings and later, restore the emulator to the saved settings. This control function is only valid in VT300 mode.

Note: The control function request can only ask about one function at a time.

Table 9-60 Control Functions Setting Report

| Exchange | Sequence | |
|------------------|---------------------------------|---|
| Host to Emulator | $^D C_S \$ q D \dots D S_T$ | |
| Emulator | D...D | Indicates the control function in question. Consists of the intermediate and/or final characters of the control function requested. |
| | \$} | active status display |
| | "q | character attribute |
| | "p | conformance level |
| | \$~ | status line type |
| | r | top and bottom margins |
| | m | graphic rendition |
| Emulator to Host | $^D C_S P s \$ r D \dots D S_T$ | |
| Host | Ps | Indicates if a request from the host is valid |
| | 0 | invalid |
| | 1 | valid |
| | D...D | Indicates the current setting of the control function requested. Consists of all control function characters except the C_{S1} or E_{SC} introducer characters. |

9.6.8 User-Preferred Supplemental Set

The host can request the current user-preferred supplemental character set. This control function is only valid in VT300 mode.

Table 9-61 User-Preferred Supplemental Character Set

| Exchange | Sequence | Function |
|------------------|-------------------------|--|
| Host to Emulator | $C_{S1} \& u$ | Requests current user-preferred supplemental set |
| Emulator to Host | $^D C_S 0 ! u \% 5 S_T$ | DEC Supplemental Graphic set |
| | $^D C_S 1 ! u A S_T$ | ISO Latin-1 Supplemental set |



APPENDIX A CABLING DIAGRAMS

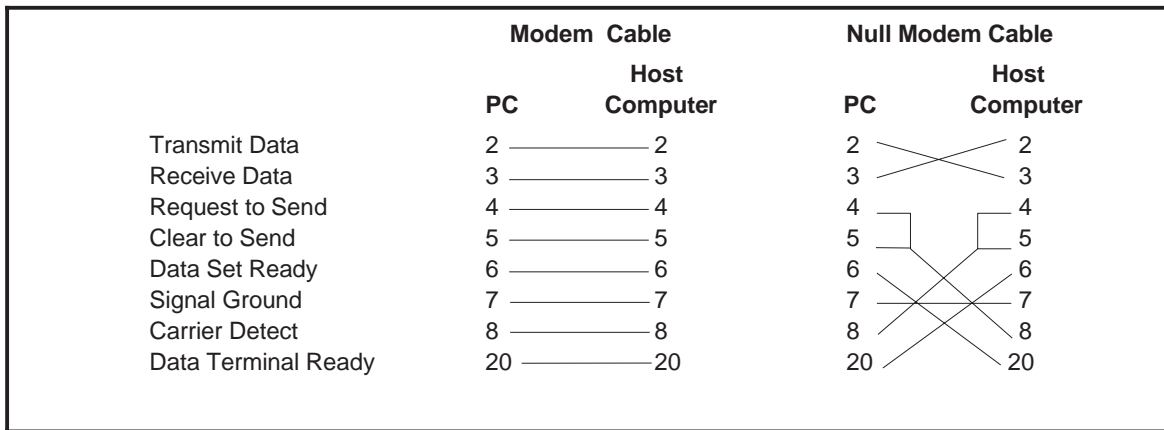


Figure A-1 Modem Cable

The modem cable is used when connecting the PC to a Modem.

The null modem cable is used when connecting the PC directly to a serial computer port.

The null modem configuration shown is a full null modem configuration. The emulator only requires pins 2, 3 and 7 for direct connection.

| 9 Pin | | 25 Pin | |
|--------------|-------|---------------|---------------------|
| 1 | ————— | 8 | Carrier Detect |
| 2 | ————— | 3 | Receive Data |
| 3 | ————— | 2 | Transmit Data |
| 4 | ————— | 20 | Data Terminal Ready |
| 5 | ————— | 7 | Ground |
| 6 | ————— | 6 | Data Set Ready |
| 7 | ————— | 4 | Request to Send |
| 8 | ————— | 5 | Clear to Send |
| 9 | ————— | 22 | Ring Indicator |

Figure A-2 Pin Adapter Cable



APPENDIX B **ASCII CONTROL CODE TABLE**

OVERVIEW

The ASCII Control Code Table can be used during Keyboard, Mouse and Toolbar mapping.

| ASCII Character | Hex Code | Decimal Code | Keystroke |
|-----------------|----------|--------------|-----------|
| NUL | 00 | 0 | Ctrl @ |
| SOH | 01 | 1 | Ctrl A |
| STX | 02 | 2 | Ctrl B |
| ETX | 03 | 3 | Ctrl C |
| EOT | 04 | 4 | Ctrl D |
| ENQ | 05 | 5 | Ctrl E |
| ACK | 06 | 6 | Ctrl F |
| BEL | 07 | 7 | Ctrl G |
| BS | 08 | 8 | Ctrl H |
| HT | 09 | 9 | Ctrl I |
| LF | 0A | 10 | Ctrl J |
| VT | 0B | 11 | Ctrl K |
| FF | 0C | 12 | Ctrl L |
| CR | 0D | 13 | Ctrl M |
| SO | 0E | 14 | Ctrl N |
| SI | 0F | 15 | Ctrl O |
| DLE | 10 | 16 | Ctrl P |
| DC1 | 11 | 17 | Ctrl Q |
| DC2 | 12 | 18 | Ctrl R |
| DC3 | 13 | 19 | Ctrl S |
| DC4 | 14 | 20 | Ctrl T |
| NAK | 15 | 21 | Ctrl U |
| SYN | 16 | 22 | Ctrl V |
| ETB | 17 | 23 | Ctrl W |
| CAN | 18 | 24 | Ctrl X |
| EM | 19 | 25 | Ctrl Y |
| SUB | 1A | 26 | Ctrl Z |
| ESC | 1B | 27 | Ctrl [|
| FS | 1C | 28 | Ctrl \ |
| GS | 1D | 29 | Ctrl] |
| RS | 1E | 30 | Ctrl ^ |
| US | 1F | 31 | Ctrl _ |



APPENDIX C **ANSI COLOR SUPPORT**

OVERVIEW

ANSI color support allows the character, character cell, and screen background colors to be selected directly by sending control sequences from the host.

ANSI colors are selected through extensions to the VT320 Set Character Attribute control sequence. The following table describes the control sequences supported.

Table C-1 Character and ANSI Color Attributes

| Escape Sequence | Function |
|---|--|
| Set Character Attributes and ANSI Colors | |
| $C_S;Ps;Ps;...m$ | Character attributes |
| Ps = 0 | Resets all colors and video attributes to defaults |
| Ps = 1 | Bold on. If the text color has been changed using an ANSI color control sequence, bold will be the intensified text color. Otherwise, bolded text will display as configured in the Setup - Terminal - Display - Color Setup... |
| Ps = 4 | Underscore on. Always uses the colors selected in the Setup - Terminal - Display - Color Setup... |
| Ps = 5 | Blink on |
| Ps = 7 | Reverse video on. Always uses the colors selected in the Setup - Terminal - Display - Color Setup... |
| Ps = 22 | Bold off, normal intensity |
| Ps = 24 | Underscore off |
| Ps = 25 | Blink off |
| Ps = 27 | Reverse video off, positive image |
| | Character Colors (low intensity unless bolded) |
| Ps = 30 | Black |
| Ps = 31 | Red |
| Ps = 32 | Green |
| Ps = 33 | Yellow (displays as brown unless bolded) |
| Ps = 34 | Blue |
| Ps = 35 | Magenta |
| Ps = 36 | Cyan |
| Ps = 37 | White |
| Ps = 39 | White |

Table C-1 Character and ANSI Color Attributes (cont'd)

| Escape Sequence | Function |
|---|---|
| Set Character Attributes and ANSI Colors | |
| $C_s;Ps;Ps;...m$ | Character Cell Color (always low intensity colors) |
| Ps = 40 | Sets the cell color to the current background color |
| Ps = 41 | Red |
| Ps = 42 | Green |
| Ps = 43 | Yellow (displays as brown) |
| Ps = 44 | Blue |
| Ps = 45 | Magenta |
| Ps = 46 | Cyan |
| Ps = 47 | White |
| Ps = 49 | Sets the cell color to the current background color |
| | Direct Index Control Using a Prefix |
| < index | Specifies the character color index |
| = index | Specifies the character cell color index |
| > index | Specifies the screen background index |
| | ANSI Color Indexes |
| | 0 = black |
| | 1 = red |
| | 2 = green |
| | 3 = yellow |
| | 4 = blue |
| | 5 = magenta |
| | 6 = cyan |
| | 7 = white |

The following examples use the emulator command DISPLAY to locally test the character attributes and colors.

Example 1: CMD>**DISPLAY" $C_{s1};35m$ BOLD magenta characters $C_{s1}0m$ "** or
 CMD>**DISPLAY" $C_{s1};m$ BOLD magenta characters $C_{s1}0m$ "**

Displays the character string in bold magenta characters at the current cursor position.

Example 2: CMD>**DISPLAY" $C_{s1};5;7m$ Reverse blink characters $C_{s1}25m$ "**

Displays the character string using the blink attribute, 5, and the reverse video attribute, 7. After the characters display, the blink is turned off, 25. Subsequent characters display in reverse video.

Example 3: CMD>**DISPLAY" $C_{s1};33;43m$ Yellow chars/brown cell $C_{s1}0m$ "**

Displays the character string using the bold attribute and character color 33 to give yellow characters. The character cell color, 43, shows as brown directly around each character.



APPENDIX D **DYNAMIC DATA EXCHANGE**

OVERVIEW

Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) is a method of exchanging information between two independent Windows applications. These applications carry on a “conversation” by posting messages to each other. The application that initiated the “conversation” is the “client”, and the responding program is the “server”.

The emulator can be used as a client, a server, or both. When used as the client, the emulator provides a complete set of DDE commands for interacting with any DDE server. In addition, as a server, the emulator supports symbol linking and remote command execution. All DDE commands are part of the Emulator Command Language (ECL). These commands can be run from a script file, the command line, or the DDE Command Builder dialog box.

Several Windows applications currently support DDE. Consult your program’s documentation for more information.

D.1 USING DDE

Data exchanges that do not require ongoing interaction from the operator can be fully automated with DDE. The emulator establishes a link to another application for the sole purpose of exchanging data — after which the emulator and the other application can exchange data without operator involvement.

DDE can be used in commands for the following purposes:

- /// Start another application.
- /// Send data to another application.
- /// Get data from another application.
- /// Carry out commands in another application.

You can also implement a broad range of local and host application features including:

- /// Establishing a link to real-time host data, then transferring the information locally to your PC immediately upon change.
- /// Performing data queries between applications, such as a spreadsheet querying the host for current numbers from its database.
- /// Creating a compound document, i.e., a Word file with a graphics chart produced by a graphics program, in which the information for the graphics program comes directly from the host. Using DDE, the chart will be updated upon change of the host data, without changing the rest of the document.

When exiting a copy of the emulator any associated links and any client or server DDE conversations are closed.

D.1.1 DDE Concepts

DDE utilizes some unique terminology which is important to understand before using DDE.

Client vs. Server

The client initiates a conversation with a server, or sends commands to the server to execute. Both the client and the server can terminate the conversation.

Conversations and Transactions

When two applications exchange DDE messages, they are engaged in a conversation. The messages that are passed back and forth are transactions.

The emulator can be engaged in several conversations at the same time, acting as the client in some and as the server in others. These conversations can be between the same application, or different applications. In addition, these conversations may be with other instances of the emulator.

DDE transactions can be one-time data transfers, continuous “links” in which applications send updates to each other as data changes, or commands that are executed by the receiving program. Not all DDE servers allow execution of commands. Consult your DDE program’s documentation.

D.1.2 Service Names, Topic Names, and Item Names

Before initiating a conversation, both applications must agree upon the service, topic, and item names. The DDE syntax of the client application determines how the emulator server recognizes these names.

Service Name

Each DDE conversation is identified by the service name (formerly known as application name) and topic; the client and server agree upon this before the conversation is initiated. The default can be overridden using either the Server Name option (in the DDE dialog box) or the command SET DDE-SERVERNAME. This can be used when multiple copies of the emulator are running simultaneously, and client applications need to distinguish between them in order to talk to the window running on the desired host with the appropriate settings.

Topic Name

The DDE topic is the way data is classified so that multiple data items can be exchanged during a conversation. The topic is typically a filename for those applications operating on file-based documents. Other applications use an application-specific name. Topic and data items are used when a client application begins a DDE conversation with the emulator as the DDE server. Supported topics include “System”, “ECL”, and “Settings”.

Item Name

All requests must reference an item name which matches a client request to the proper server response. The data item values can be passed from the server to the client and vice versa.

D.1.3 Server Topics

DDE clients can address the emulator as a server during a conversation. Topics and data items are used when a client application starts a DDE conversation with the emulator; the way these are compiled into actual DDE commands is determined by the DDE syntax of the client’s application. The emulator supports the following topics:

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| System | Provides information to the client about what topics, items, and data formats the server supports. In addition, the System topic can be used to retrieve the server’s current status. |
| ECL | Allows the client to retrieve data from variables within the emulator and execute ECL commands. |
| Settings | Provides information about the current settings of the emulator. |

D.2 SYSTEM TOPIC

Permits a DDE client to ask a server, such as the emulator, which topic names, item names, and data formats it supports. It also provides general information about the application’s DDE support and accesses the emulator’s DDE server status.

System topic items are accessed with DDE data requests. Each request returns a specific type data.

To find out which servers are present and the kinds of information they can provide, a client can request a conversation on the System topic with the service name set to NULL (“”).

D.2.1 System Topic Items

Contained within the System topic are pre-defined items that provide specific information. The emulator supports the following system topic items:

| | |
|----------------|---|
| Systems | Returns a tab-separated list of items supported under the System topic by this server (SysItems, Topics, Format, Status and StatusNum). |
| Topics | Returns a tab-separated list of topics supported by the emulator DDE server. The topics currently supported are: System, ECL, and Settings. |
| Format | Returns a tab-separated list of clipboard formats supported by the emulator DDE server. Currently, the only format supported is "TEXT". |
| Status | Returns a status string that describes the status of the prior DDE server operation. The string's format is as follows: |

"Status n : status description"

Where: **N** is a numeric status code.

A DDE client can use data requests (or establish a permanent link) to monitor the Status item, and receive continuous reports of the server's status. A second conversation can be maintained by the client for this purpose. This information is essential for a client application that runs complex ECL scripts using the DDE execute message (see Executing ECL Commands).

D.3 ECL TOPIC

The ECL (Emulator Command Language) topic allows access to EM320's command language when the emulator is acting as a DDE server. This allows development of sophisticated systems of execution control and dynamic data exchange between other applications and the emulator (and hence host computers and networks).

D.3.1 ECL Topic Items

The Emulator Command Language (ECL) allows the use of symbols (also known as variables) to hold data values. All command language symbols (variables) are valid ECL topic data items. The following sections discuss the various actions that can be performed using the ECL topic from a client application. These include:

- /// Requesting the value of an ECL variable - Global symbols only
- /// Changing the value of an ECL variable
- /// Creating an Advise Data Link to an ECL variable
- /// Executing ECL commands or command file

D.3.2 Requesting the Value of an ECL Variable

DDE request messages can be issued from a client application to obtain the value of any emulator command language variable. Even though the item requested may be a numeric symbol, all data items sent to the client are in text format. The client application must convert this text value to numeric if necessary.

The following example connects to another instance of the emulator and requests the value of the variable COUNT.

Example: **DDE CONNECT "MS320"**
"ECL" CONVS = DDE REQUEST 'CONV' "COUNT"
RESULT DDE DISCONNECT 'CONV'

The value of COUNT in the server instance of emulator is placed in the variable RESULT.

Note: This example assumes that the global variable COUNT exists in the server instance of the emulator. If the global symbol is not found or not initialized, the value returned from the DDE REQUEST will be zero.

D.3.3 Changing the Value of an ECL Variable

DDE poke messages can be issued from a client application to change the value of any emulator variable. All data items sent to the emulator must be in text format. For numeric variables, the value is translated by the emulator automatically.

The following example connects to another instance of the emulator and sets the value of the variable COUNT.

Example: **DDE CONNECT "MS320"**
"ECL" CONV
DDE POKE 'CONV' "COUNT" "200" DDE DISCONNECT 'CONV'

The value of COUNT in the server instance of the emulator would be set to 200.

Note: If the global variable COUNT does not already exist in the server instance of the emulator, it is created and assigned the passed value.

D.3.4 Creating an Advise Data Link to an ECL Variable

DDE advise messages can be issued from a client application to create an Advise Data Link to an ECL variable. Whenever the value of the ECL variable changes, the client application is automatically notified and the new value is sent. As with the DDE request messages, all data items sent to the client are in text format.

Example: You can update the value of a variable that changes frequently because of the host connection, into your Excel spreadsheet. Create an Advise Data Link from Excel to the emulator symbol. Enter the following DDE link into the desired cell of the spreadsheet :

=MS320|ECL!HOSTDATA

This command uses the service name "MS320", the topic "ECL", and links the spreadsheet cell to an ECL variable called HOSTDATA. Whenever the value of HOSTDATA changes, Excel is automatically updated with the new value.

D.3.5 Executing ECL Commands or Command Files

The DDE execute message allows the client to send commands to the emulator server for execution. The following examples illustrate the execute process.

Example 1: **"CLS"**
"STR1 := Dialing..."

Example 2: **"@LOGIN"**
Execute the command file LOGIN.ECF.

D.3.6 Settings Topic

The Settings topic provides query access to a limited number of settings within the emulator. Valid data item names in this topic include the emulator command language SET parameters. Requesting the value of a Settings parameter returns a text string containing the current value of that setting. The Settings topic supports DDE REQUEST only (DDE ADVISE or DDE POKE are not supported).

The data items currently supported include:

- /// SERVERNAME
- /// TERMINAL /WIDTH
- /// TERMINAL /LINES

Example: **DDE CONNECT "MS320"**
"SETTINGS" CONV
DDE REQUEST 'CONV' "TERMINAL /LINES"
RESULT DDE DISCONNECT CONV

The variable RESULT would contain the current number of display lines for the server instance of the emulator.

D.4 DDE COMMANDS

DDE commands appear in uppercase letters (e.g., DDE CONNECT). The standard syntax is:

DDE CONNECT "service name" "topic name" variable

Refer to Chapter 7 (command Language) for more information.

Note: When entering DDE commands from the DDE> prompt, do not precede the command with DDE.

D.4.1 DDE Server Operation

The emulator can also be used as a server that allows command execution, data retrieval, and data updates.

ECL commands used to change server operations can be entered at the emulator command line prompt or set in the DDE Setup dialog box.

Refer to Chapter 7 (Command Language) for the SET DDE... commands.

D.4.2 DDE Error Facility

Whenever a DDE command is completed, the emulator sets a status condition code in the symbol \$STATUS to indicate the reason the command terminated. The following status codes are specific to DDE.

Table D-1 DDE Error Messages and Status Codes

| L | Indent | Message |
|---|--------------|--|
| E | DDEBADCONN | DDE Bad conversation handle |
| E | DDEBADDATA | DDE Bad data handle |
| E | DDEBADDISC | DDE DISCONNECT failed |
| E | DDEINVDATAL | Invalid data link requested |
| E | DDEMAXADVISE | Maximum number of advise items reached |
| E | DDEMAXCONN | Maximum number of connections reached |
| E | DDENOCONE | DDE CONNECT failed |
| E | DDENODATA | DDE Data not available from server |

In addition to setting the status code, special DDE messages are displayed just before the \$STATUS codes on the command line. These messages often provide more information than the \$STATUS code messages.

D.4.3 Client Messages

Client messages are all prefixed with “DDE [Client]:”, followed by the message. The messages that can appear when using the DDE client commands are as follows:

Conversation already exists.

The conversation handle passes to the DDE CONNECT command is currently active. Either disconnect the conversation variable or supply a new conversation variable name.

Data not available from server.

The data requested by the client is not available on the server. The variable name may be misspelled or the symbol on the server may be local instead of global.

Disconnected DDE connection.

The DDE DISCONNECT or DDE DISCONNECTALL command removed the conversation(s).

Error creating DDE data handle.

A severe internal error message. Could be caused by low memory conditions.

Error creating DDE string handle.

A severe internal error message which could be caused by low memory conditions.

Error disconnecting from server!

An internal error indicating that DDE DISCONNECT or DDE DISCONNECTALL failed.

Invalid conversation number.

The conversation number no longer exists. This usually occurs because a DDE CONNECT was not previously complete, or the conversation has terminated already.

Invalid data link requested.

The DDE ADVISE command failed because the item could not be found.

No such data link exists.

The DDE UNADVISE command failed because there was not an active Advise Data Link for this item.

Ok establishing DDE connection.

The DDE CONNECT command succeeded. This message is informational only.

The server forced a disconnect.

The server sent a DDE terminate message during a conversation. The conversation number associated with this connection is no longer valid.

Unsuccessful connection.

The DDE CONNECT command failed. The service name or topic name may be incorrect.

D.4.4 Server Messages

Server messages are all prefixed with “DDE [Server:]”, followed by the message. The messages that can appear when the emulator is a server are as follows:

Advised client of change.

The value of an ECL symbol that has an Advise Data Link has changed, and the client was notified. This message is informational only.

Could not create data handle.

A severe internal error message. This may be a result of low memory.

The client has disconnected.

The client application sent a disconnect message to the server and therefore terminated the conversation. This message is informational only.

DDE connection confirmed.

When a client application sends a connect message and the server responds that the connection can be made, the client sends this additional message to confirm the conversation. This message is informational only.

Requested data sent to client.

The client application sent a DDE request message to the server. The message was processed and the value of the item was sent to the client. This message is informational only.

Received POKE data from client.

The client application sent a DDE poke message to change the value of an ECL variable. The message was processed and the item was updated with the new value. This message is informational only.

For more information about the emulator error handling, refer to the *Error Facility* topic in Chapter 8.

D.5 DDE COMMAND BUILDER

Click on **Execute - DDE Command Builder**. The DDE Command Builder makes it easier to perform DDE commands because you don't need to learn the format of each command. In addition, each field in the Command Builder contains a list of previously entered DDE parameters. Currently, this list holds up to 10 parameters.

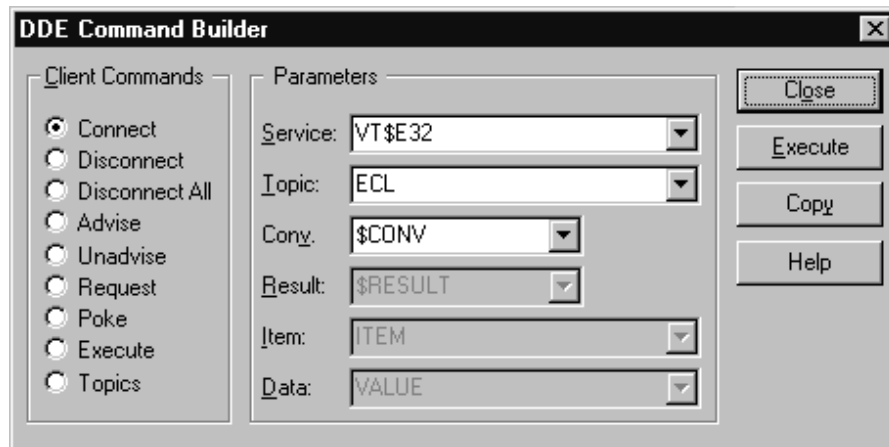


Figure D-1 DDE Command Builder

The DDE Command Builder is used in the following way:

- 1) To select the desired DDE command, click on the appropriate button under the **Client Commands** heading. Notice that as different DDE commands are selected, some of the **Parameters** may become enabled or disabled. This indicates the required parameters for the selected command.
- 2) Once the desired DDE commands are selected, enter or select the data for the Parameters
- 3) When all parameters are entered, click the Execute button. The emulator creates the DDE command string, copies the string to the command line, then executes the command string. The results display above the command line just as if the commands were entered on the command line.

D.5.1 Copying a DDE Command to the Command Line

To edit the DDE command string before executing, click on the Copy button. The emulator creates the DDE command string with the entered parameters, then copies the string to the DDE command line. You can then edit the string by positioning the typing cursor in the string. When you have finished editing the string, click **OK** to execute the command or **Cancel** to cancel the command. The Cancel button also closes the dialog box.

D.6 DDE DEMO

The DDE demo demonstrates some of the Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) capabilities of the emulator. Look at the commands in the command (.ECF) file for examples of how to write your own DDE scripts.

To run the 30 second DDE Demo:

- 1) Start the emulator, if not already running.
- 2) Run the Command File DDEDEMO.ECF using the **File - Run Command File** dialog box.

The DDE demo displays a screen that indicates the current time and US population. This information is provided by the DDE server.



APPENDIX E

SCO ANSI PROGRAMMING

E.1 SCO ANSI PROGRAMMING SEQUENCES

E.1.1 Character Attributes

Table E-1 Character Attributes

| Sequence | Function |
|-----------------|--|
| $C_{S1} 0 m$ | Reset attributes |
| $C_{S1} 1 m$ | Bold on |
| $C_{S1} 4 m$ | Underline on |
| $C_{S1} 5 m$ | Blink on |
| $C_{S1} 7 m$ | Reverse video on |
| $C_{S1} = Pn E$ | Set or clear the blink bit ($Pn = 0$ or 1). Same as $C_{S1} 5 m$ * |
| $C_{S1} = Cn F$ | Set normal foreground color to Cn * |
| $C_{S1} = Cn G$ | Set normal background color to Cn * |
| $C_{S1} = Cn H$ | Set reverse foreground color to Cn - Ignored * |
| $C_{S1} = Cn I$ | Set reverse background color to Cn - Ignored * |

* Specific to SCO 2.3 and above (Non-ANSI)

E.1.2 Character Sets

Table E-2 Character Sets

| Sequence | Function |
|-----------------|--|
| $C_{S_1} 10 m$ | Select primary font. Causes 8-bit PC character set to be used as the font. PC characters in the control character range are not displayed. |
| $C_{S_1} 11 m$ | Select first alternate font. Same as above except all characters other than the Escape character are displayed. |
| $C_{S_1} 12 m$ | Select second alternate font. Displays PC character set in the 80h and above range to be displayed as the lower character set. |
| $C_{S_1} P_n g$ | Display the character from cell P_n . |

E.1.3 Color Attributes

E.1.3.1 ANSI Color Attributes

Table E-3 ANSI ISO Color Sequences

| Sequence | Function |
|-------------------|---|
| $C_{S_1} 3 P_c m$ | Set foreground color from ISO color table |
| $C_{S_1} 4 P_c m$ | Set background color from ISO color table |
| $C_{S_1} 8 m$ | Set blank - invisible characters |

Table E-4 ANSI ISO Color Table

| Pc | Color |
|----|---------|
| 0 | Black |
| 1 | Red |
| 2 | Green |
| 3 | Yellow |
| 4 | Blue |
| 5 | Magenta |
| 6 | Cyan |

E.1.3.2 SCO Xenix Color Attributes

Table E-5 SCO Xenix Color Sequences

| Sequence | Function |
|-------------------------|--|
| $C_{S_1} 2 ; Pf ; Pb m$ | Set foreground (Pf) and background colors (Pb) |

Table E-6 SCO Xenix Color

| Cn | Color | Cn | Color |
|----|---------|----|---------------|
| 0 | Black | 8 | Dark Grey |
| 1 | Blue | 9 | Light Blue |
| 2 | Green | 10 | Light Green |
| 3 | Cyan | 11 | Light Cyan |
| 4 | Red | 12 | Light Red |
| 5 | Magenta | 13 | Light Magenta |
| 6 | Brown | 14 | Yellow |

E.1.4 Columns

Table E-7 Columns

| Sequence | Function |
|-----------------|----------------|
| $C_{S_1} ? 3 l$ | Set 80 columns |

E.1.5 Cursor Positioning

Table E-8 Cursor Positioning

| Sequence | Function |
|---|--|
| C _{S_I} P _n Z | Move cursor backwards P _n stops |
| C _{S_I} P _n S | Scroll up P _n lines |
| C _{S_I} P _n T | Scroll down P _n lines |
| C _{S_I} P1; P2 H | Direct cursor position |
| C _{S_I} P1; P2 f | Same as above |
| C _{S_I} P _n A | Move cursor up P _n lines |
| C _{S_I} P _n B | Move cursor down P _n lines |
| C _{S_I} P _n C | Move cursor right P _n columns |
| C _{S_I} P _n D | Move cursor left P _n columns |
| C _{S_I} P _n ‘ | Position cursor to column P _n |
| C _{S_I} P _n a | Move cursor P _n positions to the right relative. Does not wrap. |
| C _{S_I} P _n d | Move cursor to row P _n |
| C _{S_I} P _n e | Move cursor down P _n rows |
| C _{S_I} P _n F | Move cursor to beginning of line P _n lines up |
| C _{S_I} P _n E | Move cursor to beginning of line P _n lines down |

E.1.6 Inserting

Table E-9 Inserting

| Sequence | Function |
|---|---|
| C _{S_I} P _n J | Erase display |
| P _n = 0 | From cursor to end of display |
| P _n = 1 | From cursor to beginning of display |
| P _n = 2 | Entire display |
| C _{S_I} P _n K | Erase in line |
| P _n = 0 | From cursor to end of line |
| P _n = 1 | From beginning of line to cursor |
| P _n = 2 | Entire line |
| C _{S_I} P _n X | Erase P _n number of characters |

E.1.7 Key Assignments

SCO ANSI uses function keys F1-F12, Ctrl F1-F12, Shift F1-F12, and Ctrl-Shift F1-F12. Although the emulator has tokens for these keys, they are not currently available through the Keyboard Mapper.

Table E-10 Key Assignments

| Key | Code |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| F1 -F12 | ESC [M...ESC [V+ |
| Shift F1-F12 | ESC [Y...ESC [Z ESC [a...ESC [j |
| Ctrl F1-F12 | ESC [k...ESC [v |
| Ctrl-Shift F1-F12 | ESC [w...ESC [z ESC [@...ESC [} |
| Up Arrow | ESC [A |
| Dn Arrow | ESC [B |
| Right Arrow | ESC [C |
| Left Arrow | ESC [D |
| Keypad 0-9 | 0...9 (NUMLOCK in numeric mode) |
| Home | ESC [H |
| PgUp | ESC [I |
| End | ESC [F |
| PgDn | ESC [G |
| Ins | ESC [L |
| Del | 0x7F |
| Shift Tab | ESC [Z |
| Ctrl Enter | 0x81 |
| Ctrl Home | 0x82 |
| Ctrl PgUp | 0x83 |
| Ctrl BS | 0x84 |
| Ctrl End | 0x85 |
| Ctrl PgDn | 0x86 |
| Ctrl KP - | 0x87 |
| Ctrl KP + | 0x88 |
| Ctrl Left Arrow | 0x89 |
| Ctrl Right Arrow | 0x8a |

E.1.8 Keyboard Control

Table E-11 Keyboard Control

| Sequence | Function |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| C _S _I 2 h | Lock keyboard |
| C _S _I 2 l | Unlock keyboard |

E.1.9 Report

Table E-12 Report

| Sequence | Function |
|---------------------|---|
| C _{S1} 2 i | Send screen to host with a line feed after each line. |



GLOSSARY

ACK A Kermit file transfer term meaning acknowledged. An ACK is sent by Kermit when it successfully receives file information.

Address The coded representation of a specific point on the display screen.

Alphanumeric Letters of the alphabet, numerals, and other symbols.

ANSI American National Standards Institution.

ASCII Code American Standard Code for Information Interchange. Standard code consists of 7-bit coded characters (8 bits including parity check). Used for information interchange between systems.

Asynchronous A communications mode that uses variable time intervals between characters in a message.

Baud A unit of data communication rate. Used to signify the speed of transmitted data. One bit of data per second equals one baud.

Binary A method of representing numbers in base two.

Byte A sequence of eight adjacent bits operated upon as a unit.

Cursor A bar of light that indicates where the next character will appear on the screen.

Default The standard setting used if insufficient or optional parameters are not supplied.

Default Directory This is the current DOS directory. It is the directory used for file operations if no other directory path is specified.

Dialog Box A rectangular box that either requests or provides information. Many dialog boxes present options to choose among before an option is carried out. Some present warnings or explain why a command can't be completed.

Echo A character sent by the computer to the terminal to indicate that the computer has received and processed the data sent to it.

Full-Duplex A data link which is capable of carrying data in both directions simultaneously.

Half-Duplex A data link which is capable of carrying data in only one direction at a time.

Hardcopy A permanent copy of the displayed data.

K Byte (KB) Kilobyte. A kilobyte equals 1024 bytes of information.

Kermit A public file transfer protocol, developed by Columbia University.

Local Echo Online response of a character within the terminal that is indicated on the display. Local Echo is required in lieu of computer response echo.

Mode The operating state of the terminal.

Modem A contraction of the words modulator - demodulator. It modulates and demodulates signals transmitted and received over a communications media. Used at the computer and terminal end of a connecting telephone line.

NAK A Kermit file transfer term meaning not acknowledged. A NAK is sent by Kermit when file information is not received successfully, and must be transmitted again.

Online Operation The operation by which data is transferred between terminal and computer, and vice versa.

Packet A Kermit file transfer term defined as a piece of file or document. Kermit will take a file and break it into groups of information. When all of the groups have been received, the file will be complete.

Parity Bit The eighth-bit in a byte that is used for error detection. A parity bit is added to the end of a byte so that the total number of 1's is either always even (even parity) or odd (odd parity).

Port The portion of the computer that is used for transmission or reception of data.

Protocol A set of rules governing orderly communications between several devices.

Remote Host The terminal or mainframe the emulator is talking to.

Remote Server A remote host in server mode.

Root Directory This is the directory that the PC starts in immediately after booting.

Server Mode A state of readiness for unlimited file transfer. Without Server mode, only one file transaction can take place. Server mode must be exited when file transfer is completed.

Strapable Options Standard options that involve a simple wired plug that can be easily changed.

XMODEM Communications protocol that allows for file transfer. This is a public domain protocol that was written by Ward Christensen.



INDEX

!

\$SEVERITY 177
\$STATUS 177, 201
\$STATUSID 177
132 Column
 mode 251
132 Column Mode 53
7-Bit
 ASCII codes 223
 C0 codes 224
 control sequence introducer (E_S_C) 226
 environment 222
 select C1 transmission 248
8-Bit
 ASCII codes 224
 C1 codes 224
 control sequence introducer (C_S_I) 226
 environment 222
 select C1 transmission 248
80 Column Mode 53

A

Abort 43
 command files 131
 emulator commands 131
 in command files 155
 Kermit file transfer 126
 set in command files 165
Accelerator Keys 63
ANSI/VT52 Mode 250
Answerback 69
 send 44
Application Window 15
ASCII File Transfer
 setup 111
ASCII File Transfer Setup
 additional information 112
 echo check 111
 end of file string 111
 end of line delay 111
 host cancel character 112
 host prompt string 112
 outgoing character delay 111
 pad null lines 111

- receive file 115
- send file 114
- strip line feed 111
- turnaround character 111
- AT Keyboard 66
- Attributes 240
- Auto Command Mode Setup 113
- Auto Print Mode 52
- Auto Wrap 60, 251
- Auxiliary Keypad 237

B

- Backspace/Delete 63
- Baud Rate 33
- BBS ANSI Mode 68
- Bells
 - (see keyboard setup) 63
- Binary File Transfer 119, 122
- Break
 - long 43
 - short 43
- BREAK Command 134
- BYE Command 151

C

- C0 Control Characters 224
- C1 Control Characters 224
- Capture Text to File 47
 - append 47
 - filename 47
 - overwrite protection 47
 - save (capture) 47
- Centered Window 71
- Character Attributes 240
 - 8-bit ASCII codes 224
 - select 241
- Character Encoding 222
 - 7-bit ASCII codes 223
 - control functions 226
- Character Rendition 240
 - select 240

- Character Sets 36, 70, 227
 - 7-bit national 69
 - 8-bit international 69
 - DEC multinational 36
 - DEC special graphics 36
 - default 228
 - ISO latin 36
 - mapping, locking shifts 234
 - mapping, single shifts 234
 - mode 251
 - national character set 69
 - national replacement 36, 232
 - PC 36, 69
 - quick reference 208
 - selection 232
 - supplemental set report 272

- Characters
 - compose sequence 37
 - special 186

- Clear Communications 43

- CLOSE Command 135

- CLS Command 136

- CMD Prompt 43

- Color Palette 61

- Color Selection 61

- Color Setup 35, 61

- attribute control 61

- color palette 61

- factory colors 61

- saved colors 62

- selecting colors 61

- working colors 62

- Columns 59

- Command File

- edit 45

- execution from menu bar 46

- Command Files

- aborting 131

- commenting 131

- default 130

- documenting 176

- executing at CMD prompt 130

- executing from host 130

- execution of, 129

- nested 130

- nesting 177

- parameter passing 176
- status symbols 177
- Command Line
 - CMD prompt 13, 43
 - editing and recall 16
- Communications
 - problems 39
- Compose Characters 37
- Connect
 - Modem (TAPI) 29
 - node name 26
 - polyLAT/32 31
 - serial 32
 - Windows Sockets 27
 - WINSOCK setup 27
- CONNECT Command 151
- Connecting to Host
 - problems 39
- CONTINUE Command 136
- Control Codes 239
- Control Function Reports 271
- Control Functions 226
 - control sequences 226
 - device control string 227
 - escape sequences 226
- Control Menu Icon
 - maximize workspace 35
- Control Sequence Debug 69
- Control Sequence Introducer 226
- Controller
 - print mode 53
- Copy 42
- Cursor 59
 - type 59
- Cursor Key Mode 252
- Cursor Position Sequence 245
- Cursor State Reports 271

D

- Data Bits 33
- DCS Private Control Sequence 259
- DCS Private Sequence 260
- DDE 281
 - client 282

- client messages 287
- conversations 282
- ECL topic 284
- error facility 287
- item name 283
- server 282
- server messages 288
- server name 283
- topic name 283
- transactions 282
- DDE ADVISE 136
- DDE Command Builder 289
- DDE DISCONNECT 137
- DDE DISCONNECTALL 137
- DDE EXECUTE 138
- DDE POKE 138
- DDE REQUEST 138
- DDE Setup 56
 - append unique identifier 57
 - server enable 57
 - server name 57
 - timeout 57
- DDE TOPICS 139
- DDE UNADVISE 139
- DEC Emulation 68
- DEC Multinational Character Set 228
- DEC Special Graphics 231
- DELAY Command 140
- DELETE SYMBOL Command 140
- Device Attributes 260
 - primary 260
 - secondary 261
- Device Control String
 - with user defined keys 257
- Device Control Strings 227
 - device control character 227
 - string terminator 227
- Device Status Reports 261
 - cursor position 261
 - keyboard dialect 261
 - operating status 261
 - printer status 262
 - UDK status 262
- Directories Setup
 - command files 57
 - file transfer directory 57

- picture files 57
- DISPLAY Command 141
- Display Control Mode 69
- Display Lexicals 192
- Display Lines 60
- Display Setup 59
 - auto wrap 60
 - color (see color setup) 61
 - color setup 35
 - columns 59
 - cursor 59
 - cursor type 59
 - display lines 34, 60
 - jump scrolling 60
 - scrollback lines 60
 - smooth scroll 60
 - tab settings 60
- Documentation
 - layout 12
 - notation 13
- DOS Command 142, 151
- Drop Down Menus 41
 - edit 42
 - execute 43
 - file 44
 - help 54
 - setup 55
 - view 71
- Drop DTR 43
- DROPDTR Command 143
- Dynamic Data Exchange
 - (see DDE) 56, 281

E

- Edit Command File 45
 - filename 45
 - open 45
- Edit Menu 42
 - copy 42
 - paste 42
 - select all 42
 - select screen 42
 - send 42
- Edit Node List 28

- Edit Phone List 29 - 30
- Editing Keypad 236
- Editing Sequence 246
- EMULATE Command 143
- Emulation Lines
 - (see Display setup) 34
- Emulator Commands
 - aborting 131
 - at CMD prompt 128
 - descriptions 134, 140 - 148, 150, 154 - 158, 160, 162 - 163, 166, 169 - 170, 172 - 174
 - executing from host 129
 - execution 128
 - foreign commands 188
 - list of, 132
 - notation 13
 - syntax 128
- Emulator Functions
 - vs. VT320 functions 14
- Emulator Tokens 64
- END Command 152
- END INTERACTIVE Command 144
- Enhanced Keyboard 64
- EOF
 - Kermit file transfer 152
 - set character 166
- ERASE SCREEN Command 144
- Erasing 246
- Error Facility 200
 - DOS ERRORLEVEL 201
- Error Messages 203
- Errors
 - see Problems 39
- Examples
 - notation 13
- Execute Menu 43
 - abort 43
 - break, long 43
 - break, short 43
 - clear communications 43
 - command line 43
 - DDE command builder 43
 - drop DTR 43
 - reset 44
 - send answerback 44
 - WordPerfect 5.x mode 44

EXIT Command 145, 152
Exit Emulator 53
Expression Evaluation 180
 integer 181
 string 180
 string to integer 180
 substitution 181

F

File
 capture 47
 replay 49
File Menu 44
 capture text to file 47
 edit command file 45
 exit 53
 page setup 51
 print 50
 receive 49
 record log file 48
 replay log file 49
 run command file 46
 send 49
File Transfer 105
 ASCII 105
 auto command mode setup 113
 binary 119, 122
 Kermit 105
 receive 49
 send 49
 XMODEM 105
 YMODEM 105
 ZMODEM 105
File Transfer Messages 71
File Transfer Setup 56
FINISH Command 152
Flow Control 34
 RTS/CTS 34
 Xon/Xoff 34
FLUSH Command 146
Foreign Commands
 in command files 188
Framed Window 71

Function Keys
 top row codes 238

G

General Settings 56
 DDE (see DDE setup) 56
 directories (see directories setup) 57
 log file replay (see log file replay setup) 58
GET Command 152
GOSUB Command 146
GOTO Command 146

H

Hangup Modem 29
Hardware Requirements 18
Help 54, 103
 about EM320 103
HELP Command 147
Help Menu 54
 about 54
 index 54
 using help 54
Host Writable Status Line 69

I

IBM Keypad 63
IF Command 147
INQUIRE Command 148
Insert/Replace Mode 252
Installation 18
 creating an icon 19
 registration number 18
INTERACTIVE Command 150
International Character Sets
 character set mode 69
International Setup
 character set mode 69
ISO Latin-1 Character Set 230

J

Jump Scrolling 60

K

Kermit 126
KERMIT Command 123
Kermit File Transfer 105, 108
 command 123 - 124
 commands 123, 153
 file formats 119, 122
 get file 125
 send 117
 send file 124
 setup 107
Kermit File Transfer 108
Kermit File Transfer Setup
 packet 108
 pad 108
Key Codes
 7-bit 70
 8-bit 70
Key Mapping 76
 changing a key definition 81
 configuring 78
 creating a new keymap 77
 defining key 78
 deleting a key definition 81
Keyboard
 type 62
Keyboard Action Mode 252
Keyboard Mapping 56
Keyboard Setup 62
 accelerator keys 63
 backspace key 63
 IBM keypad 63
 key behavior 63
 margin bell 63
 return key 63
 type 62
 warning bell 63
Keyboards 62

 AT 66
 Enhanced 64
Keycodes 70
Keypad 252
 application mode 70
 IBM 63
 numeric mode 63
Keys
 vs. tokens 14

L

Labels 179
Lexical Substitution 195
 phases of, 197
 using ampersands 196
 using apostrophes 195
 automatic 195
 iterative in expressions 199
 iterative using apostrophes 198
 iterative using command synonyms 198
 undefined symbols 199
Lexicals 189
 D\$BLOCK 192
 D\$BOX 193
 display 192
 F\$EXTRACT 189
 F\$GETINFO 189
 F\$LENGTH 190
 F\$LOCATE 190
 F\$MESSAGE 191
Line Attribute Sequence 247
Line Editing
 command line 16
 keys for, 16
Line Feed/New Line Mode 253
Local Echo 69
Local Mode 69
LOG Command 134, 154
Log File 100
 append to existing 48
 record 48, 100
 replay 101
 replay options 101
 replay pauses 102

- replay programming 102
- replay rate 102
- replay setup 58
- Log File Replay Setup 58
 - clear screen 58
 - every page 58
 - replay rate 58
 - text 58
- Log Telnet Mode 27
- LOGOUT Command 153

M

- Maximize Workspace 35, 71
- Menu Bar 71
- Menu Bar Accelerator Keys 63
- Menus
 - notation 13
- Message History 72
- Modem
 - cable diagrams 274
 - connect status 34
 - control 34
- Modem (TAPI)
 - edit phone list 29 - 30
 - hangup 29
 - phone number 29
 - port 29
- Modem (TAPI) Setup 29
- Mouse Mapping 56, 82
 - changing a mouse button definition 88, 97
 - configuring 84, 94
 - creating a new mouse map 83, 89
 - defining a mouse button 84
 - deleting a mouse button definition 88, 97

N

- National Character Set 69
- Negotiate Transmit Binary 27
- Normal Print Mode 52

O

- ON Command
 - ABORT 155
 - DEVICE_ERROR 156
 - DISCONNECT 156
 - error_severity 157
- Online Help 103
 - see Help 54
- Online Mode 69
- OPEN Command 157
- Operators 182
 - arithmetic 183
 - arithmetic comparisons 185
 - logical 184
 - precedence 182
 - radix 185
 - string 183
 - string comparisons 184
- Origin Mode 253
- Overwrite Protection
 - capture text to file 47
 - log file 48

P

- Package Contents 18
- Page Setup 51
 - lines per page 51
 - margins 51
 - options (see page setup options) 51 - 52
 - orientation 51
 - paper 51
- Page Setup Options 52
 - 132 column 53
 - 80 column 53
 - automatic close on print screen 52
 - finalize 53
 - force black on white 52
 - idle time before close 52
 - initialize 53
 - print controller 53
 - print mode 52

- print to file 52
- Parity 33
- Paste 42
- PC Fonts 69
- Permanent Symbols 177
- Phone List 29 - 30
- polyLAT/32 Setup 31
 - node name 31
- Presentation State Reports 264
 - cursor information 264
 - restore state 267
 - tab stops 267
- Print 50
 - auto 36
 - controller mode 36
 - copies 50
 - device 50
 - extent mode 36
 - graphics 50
 - print to file 50
 - properties 50
 - range 50
 - screen 36, 50
 - scrollback 50
 - selected text 50
- PRINT Command
 - EJECT 159
 - ON/OFF 159
 - SCREEN 159
- Printer
 - support 36
- Printing
 - screen 50
- Printing Sequence 247
- Private Control Sequences
 - DCS 259
- Problems 39
 - dropping characters 40
 - garbage characters 39

Q

- QUIT Command 160

R

- READ Command 160
- Receive Codes 240
 - character set selection 232
 - compatibility level 241
 - control characters 244
 - cursor position 245
 - editing 246
 - erasing 246
 - line attributes 247
 - printing 247
 - quick reference, VT100 215
 - quick reference, VT320 211
 - quick reference, VT52 217
 - select C1 controls 248
 - tab stops 248
 - terminal modes 248
 - terminal reset 256
 - user defined keys 257
 - VT320 control sequences 212
- RECEIVE Command 153
- Record Log File 48
 - append 48
 - filename 48
 - overwrite protection 48
 - save (record) 48
- Registration Card 18
- Registration Number 18, 40
- Rendition 240
- Replay
 - (see also Log File Replay) 101
- REPLAY Command 162
- Replay Log File 49
 - filename 49
 - open 49
- Reports
 - quick reference 218
 - scrolling region 247
- Reset Mode 249
- Reset Terminal 44
- RETURN Command 163
- Return Key 63
- RTS/CTS 34

RTS/CTS Protocol 34
Run Command File
 filename 46
 open 46
 run 46

S

SCAN Command 163
SCO ANSI Mode 68
SCO ANSI Programming Sequences 291
 ANSI color attributes 292
 character attributes 291
 character sets 292
 color attributes 292
 columns 293
 cursor positioning 294
 inserting 294
 key assignments 295
 keyboard control 295
 report 296
 SCO Xenix color attributes 293
Screen Mode 254
Screen Scrollback 35
Scrollback 35
Scrollback Lines 60
Scrollbar 71
Scrolling
 mode 254
Select All 42
Select Screen 42
Send 42
SEND Command 163
Send File Commands
 symbols 114
Send/Receive Mode 255
Serial Setup 32 - 33
 baud rate 33
 data bits 33
 flow control 34
 limited transmit 34
 modem control 34
 node name 32
 parity 33
 setup 33

 stop bits 33
SET Command
 ABORT 165
 CHARACTER DELAY 166
 DEVICE_ERROR 166
 DISCONNECT 166
 EOF CHARACTER 166
 HOST 167
 LINE DELAY 168
 MESSAGE 168
 ON 168
 TERMINAL 169
 TURNAROUND character 171
 VERIFY 171
SET DDEAPPENDINSTANCE 164
SET DDEAUTOINITIALIZE 164
SET DDECLIENTTIMEOUT 164
Set Mode 249
Settings File
 save 55
Setup Menu 55
 file transfer setup 56
 general 56 - 57
 keyboard mapper 56
 mouse mapper 56
 terminal 68
SHOW Command
 SYMBOL 171
Smooth Scroll 60
Special Characters 186
 output conversion 187
Status Symbols
 \$STATUS, \$STATUSID, \$SEVERITY 177
Stop Bits 33
STOP Command 172
Strings
 syntax 186
Supplemental Character Set Report 272
Symbols 177
 substitution using apostrophes 195
 assigning values 178
 examples 178
 purpose of, 177
 substitution 195
 substitution using ampersands 196
 substitution, phases of, 197

types 177
Symlex 193
definition 193
examples 194

T

Tab Settings 60
clear all button 60
set every button 60
Tab Stops 248
TAPI 29
Technical Support 40
Terminal Modes 248
ANSI/VT52 250
auto repeat 250
auto wrap 251
backarrow key 251
BBS ANSI 68
character set 251
column 251
cursor key 252
insert/replace 252
keyboard action 252
keypad 252
line feed/new line 253
numeric keypad 253
origin 253
print extent 253
print form feed 254
reset 249
SCO ANSI 68
screen 254
scrolling 254
select status display 254
send/receive 255
set 249
status line type 255
terminal reset 256
text cursor enable 256
VT100 68
VT102 68
VT220 68
VT320 68
VT52 68

Terminal Modes Reports 267
reset 270
set 270
Terminal Reset 44, 256
hard 256
soft 256
Terminal Setup 68
answerback 69
answerback message 69
auto answerback 69
character sets 69 - 70
color setup (see color setup) 61
conceal message 69
control sequence debug 69
cursor pad 70
DEC keypad 70
display (see display setup) 59
host variable status line 69
key codes 70
keyboard (see keyboard setup) 62
local echo 69
new line 69
options 69
PC fonts 69
status 69
type 68
user defined keys 70
user features 70
Terminal State Reports 263
restore state 263
Text
copy 42
paste 42
select all 42
select screen 42
send 42
Text Cursor Enable Mode 256
Tokens
default key assignments 64
emulator functions 64
notation 13
vs. keys 14
vt tokens 64
Toolbars 72
Transmit Limited 34
Transmitted Key Codes 236

- auxiliary keypad 237
- control codes 239
- editing keypad 236
- quick reference 209
- standard keys 236
- top row function keys 238

U

- User Defined Keys 257
 - clear space for, 257
 - examples 258
 - format 257
 - loading keys 258
 - lock/unlock 70
- User Features 70

V

- Video Attributes 61
- View Menu 71
 - centered window 71
 - file transfer messages 71
 - framed window 71
 - maximize workspace 71
 - menu bar 71
 - message history 72
 - scrollbar 35, 60, 71
 - status line 71
 - toolbars 72
 - window size and location 34
- VT Tokens 64
- VT100 Escape Sequences
 - quick reference 215
- VT100 Line Drawing Character Set 231
- VT100 Mode 68
 - compatibility 241
- VT100 Reports
 - quick reference 221
- VT102 Mode 68
- VT220 Mode 68
- VT320 Control Sequences 214
 - quick reference 211 - 214

- VT320 Functions
 - vs. emulator functions 14
- VT320 Mode 68
- VT320 Reports 260
 - control function settings 271
 - cursor settings 271
 - device attributes 260
 - device status 261
 - modes 267
 - presentation state 264
 - quick reference 218
 - supplemental character set 272
 - terminal state 263
- VT52 Escape Sequences
 - quick reference 217
- VT52 Mode 68

W

- WAIT Command 172
- Warning Bell 63
- Window
 - size and location 34
- Windows Sockets
 - (see WINSOCK) 27
- WINSOCK
 - (see Windows Sockets) 27
- WINSOCK Setup
 - edit node list 28
 - log telnet data 27
 - negotiate transmit binary 27
- WordPerfect 5.x Mode 44
- WordPerfect Mode 103
 - entering 103
 - operation of, 103
 - terminating 103
 - transmit codes 104
- WP (WordPerfect) Command 173
- WRITE Command 173

X

XMODEM File Transfer 105
 setup 109
XModem File Transfer 113
Xon/Xoff 34

Y

YMODEM File Transfer 105
 setup 109

Z

ZMODEM File Transfer 105
 automatic download start 110
 setup 110